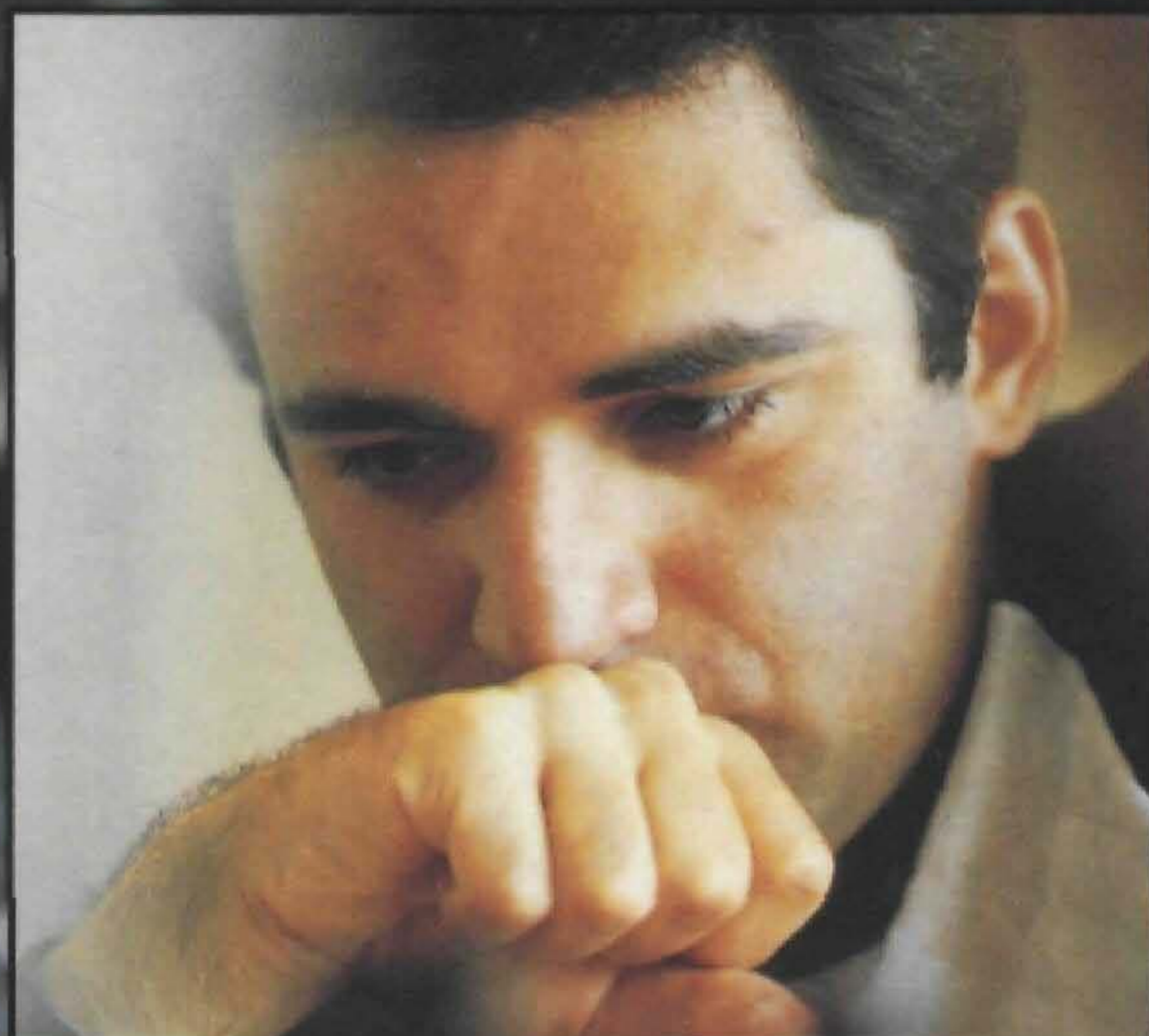


KASPAROV'S

Chess Openings



A World Champion's Repertoire

OTTO BORIK

KASPAROV'S Chess Openings

KASPAROV'S

Chess Openings

A World Champion's Repertoire

OTTO BORIK



Trafalgar Square Publishing

NORTH POMFRET, VERMONT

First published in German in 1989 as *Kasparows Schacheröffnungen* by Falken-Verlag GmbH, 6272 Niedernhausen/Ts.

© Falken-Verlag GmbH, 6272 Niedernhausen/Ts., 1989

First published in Great Britain in 1991 by
The Crowood Press Ltd

English translation © The Crowood Press Ltd 1991

First published in the United States of America in 1991 by
Trafalgar Square Publishing, North Pomfret, Vermont 05053

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system without permission in writing from the publishers.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 90-71397

ISBN 0-943955-39-4

English translation by John Littlewood

Printed in Great Britain by
Redwood Press Ltd, Melksham, Wilts.

Contents

About This Book	7
1. The Queen's Gambit	9
1. The Orthodox Defence (2. . . . e6)	9
A The Exchange Variation with Bg5	9
B The Exchange Variation with Bf4	15
2. The Slav Defence (2. . . c6)	19
3. The Semi-Slav Defence (. . . e6/ . . . c6)	26
4. The Queen's Gambit Accepted (1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4) _	32
A The System with 4. . . . a6	32
B The System with 4. . . . c5	33
C The System with 4. . . . e6	35
2. The Nimzo-Indian Defence	36
A The System with . . . b6	36
B The System with . . . d5	43
C Alternatives on Black's Fourth Move	46
3. The Modern Benoni	49
4. The Grünfeld Defence	55
5. King's Indian and Old Indian	61
A King's Indian	61
B Old Indian	69
6. The Sicilian Defence	73
A The Scheveningen System	73
B The Keres Attack	80
C The English Attack	85
D Other White Systems	90
7. The King's Indian as Black	96
A The Exchange System	96
B The Blockade System	100
C The Gligoric System	103
D The Sämisch System	107
8. Black against other systems	113
A Bird's Opening	113
B Queen's Pawn Opening	117
C The Double Fianchetto Opening	119
D The King's Indian Attack	122
Index	126

About This Book

We have based our material on two new learning criteria, so would like the reader to peruse the following before plunging into the games analyses. In this way, he will save himself a lot of unnecessary opening preparation in the future. We can define our main aims as follows:

To provide a suitable opening repertoire

Which is the correct opening for you? To play chess well, you must learn, understand and enjoy playing certain types of position. For this reason, a selected opening must fit in with your style of play. One player who likes endings will be happy to exchange pieces. Another who enjoys active play may wish to keep pieces on the board but at the same time only launch an attack after thorough preparation. Yet another player will attack whatever the cost. If we offer these three distinct kinds of player the position in the Caro-Kann after 1. e4 c6 2. d4 d5 and ask them to continue with White, the end-game player might opt for a peaceful existence with 3. exd5 cxd5 4. Bd3 Nc6 5. c3, the moderately active player go in for 3. Nc3 on the basis of 'Let's wait and see what happens' and the hot-head choose 3. e5 Bf5 4. Nc3 e6 5. g4 with an inward cry of 'Let me get at his king'...

Of course, there are many intermediate styles between these three and we might be justified in placing Kasparov in the middle category with a modicum of spice added for good measure! In building up a repertoire it is worthwhile

selecting from recognised openings a number of lines which suit our particular style, but such a task is greatly time-consuming. However, since leading professionals with time and expert help at their disposal have already carried out such a task for their style of play, why shouldn't we adopt the repertoire of one of these players? That is in fact precisely what we have done in this volume. By using as our model the best chess-player in the world, we have presented an opening repertoire for any player who prefers an active, tactically-oriented game without excessive risk, or who simply wishes to learn more about Kasparov's style as evinced in such a repertoire. This could be done for different styles of play by using other leading players as our model, but that is another story and another day.

To establish a basic chess openings 'vocabulary'

One of the aims of any training method is to achieve optimum use from a minimum expenditure of time and effort. Why not then use a scientific approach when learning chess openings? Any language contains a vast number of words (around 100,000) which can hardly be mastered by one individual. However, research has shown that a basic vocabulary of about 2,000 words and idioms is sufficient to understand up to eighty-five per cent of a non-specialised text and to carry on an everyday conversation. These statistics encouraged me to imagine a corresponding basic 'vocabulary'

of the most useful chess openings variations, despite the immense time and effort such a task would entail. It was not until I acquired the Chess-Base Data-Bank computer program that I was in a position to carry out the equivalent of a word-frequency count using around 15,000 games (i.e. find out how often specific variations occurred). In this way, I was finally able to reduce the vast amount of chess opening theory to palatable proportions (which an average club-player could handle without being overburdened by too much detail), a method that has already proved its worth on my chess-training courses. In the present volume, although the reader is presented with only a small part of the huge store of opening knowledge, he

can use the material in about seventy to eighty per cent of his games, thus drastically cutting down his work-load and giving him time to explore the inevitable problems which remain.

Otto Borik

[I have taken the liberty of adding the occasional comment and a few recent games to bring the material as up-to-date as is humanly possible.

The keen reader is advised to continue this up-dating process for his personal use; he will find the experience most rewarding in terms of both results and enjoyment. John Littlewood]

1 The Queen's Gambit

Just like any other chess professional, the reigning World Champion is occasionally prepared to surprise a particular opponent – for reasons known only to himself – by playing 1. e4 or 1. c4. However, in the vast majority of games (over ninety per cent) Kasparov relies on the advance of his 'd' pawn. Most of the world's leading players are also advocates of 1. d4. Ex-World Champion Anatoly Karpov, who until his World Championship matches against Kasparov was an 1. e4 player, changed his repertoire from 1965 and now invariably opens with 1. d4. In the top group of leading grandmasters with an Elo rating of 2,600 and over, more than seventy per cent prefer to open with 1. d4.

Does this mean that the advance of the QP offers more advantages than the advance of the KP? Not really; it is a matter of personal style and preference. The great Viktor Korchnoi once made the following wise observation: 'I consider both moves of equal worth but prefer the closed positions arising after 1. c4 and 1. d4 because they offer more scope for the strategic player. 1. e4 produces many forced sequences of moves and thus compels a player to learn far more variations.'

Although this may well be a valid argument for most players, it hardly applies to Kasparov who is renowned for his phenomenal memory. Perhaps Kasparov's choice of 1. d4 stems from his preference for wing attacks with pawns, which require a secure or even static central set-up. It is worth noting

that his play with the black pieces evinces the directly opposite method of ripping open the centre at the first opportunity, a point we shall come back to later in the relevant chapters.

The most common reply to 1. d4 is 1. . . . d5, with the Indian systems (1. . . . Nf6) close behind. That is why we devote this first chapter to the Queen's Gambit (1. d4 d5 2. c4) and the following defensive systems given in order of popularity:

1. The Orthodox Defence (2. . . . e6)
2. The Slav Defence (2. . . . c6)
3. The Semi-Slav Defence (2. . . . c6 combined with . . . e6)
4. The Queen's Gambit Accepted (2. . . . dxc4)

1. The Orthodox Defence (2. . . . e6)

A The Exchange Variation with Bg5

Exchanging pawns is not always a drawing device. One of the most important basic principles in chess is that a successful wing attack necessitates a secure centre. In this particular variation, the cxd5 exchange stabilises the centre, thus allowing attacking chances on the wings, especially when the players have castled on opposite sides. With a stable centre, pawn advances can be made against the enemy king. The following game from the

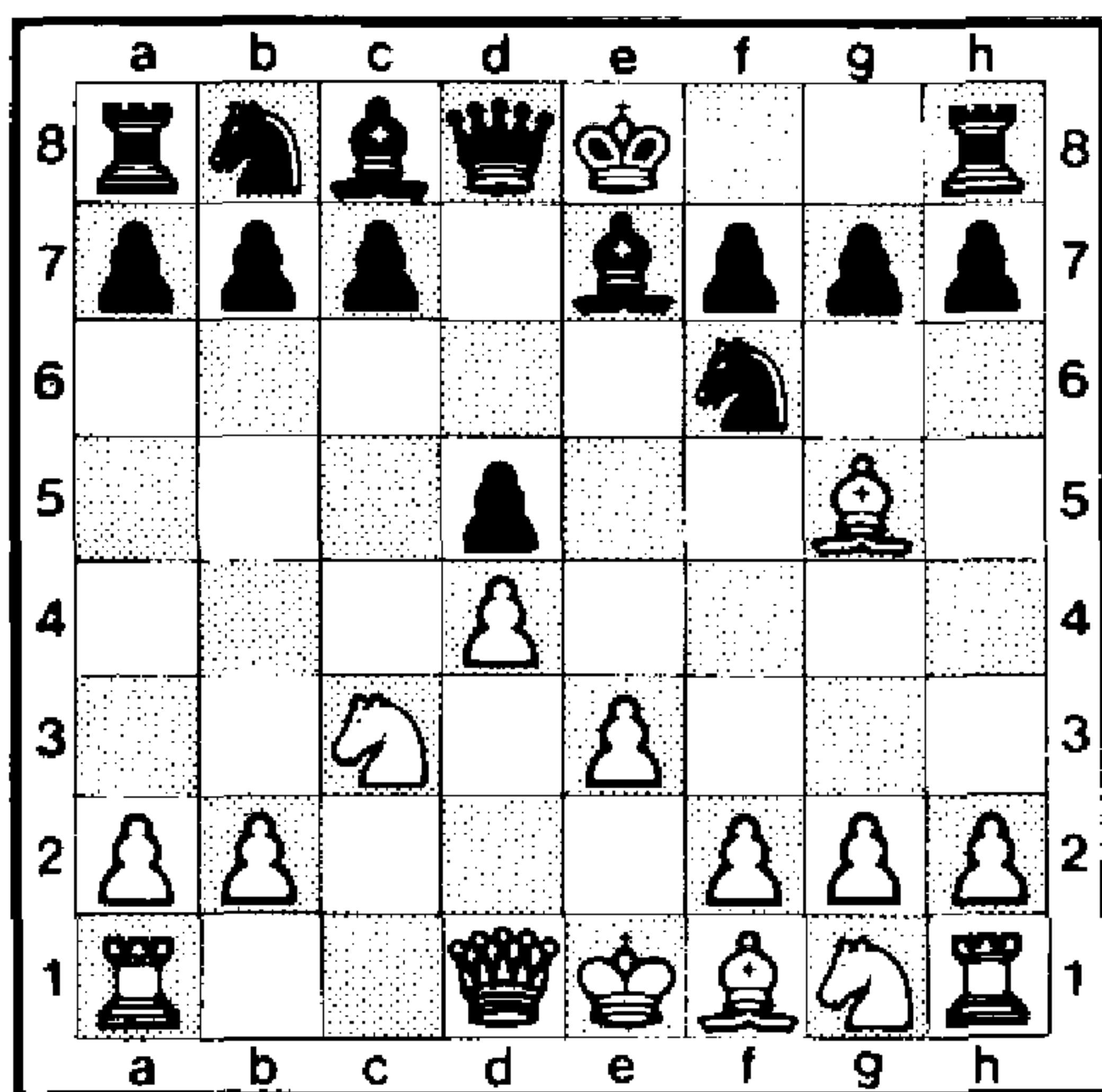
Olympiad is an excellent illustration of such strategy:

G Kasparov – D Campora

(USSR v Argentina, Thessaloniki, 1988)

- 1. **c4** **Nf6**
- 2. **d4** **e6**
- 3. **Nc3** **d5**
- 4. **cxd5** **exd5**
- 5. **Bg5** **Be7**
- 6. **e3**

The standard position of the Exchange Variation.



6. . . . **0-0**

The most common reply.

In the Supplementary Material section, the reader will find practical examples of the alternative continuations:

- (i) 6. . . . h6 and a later . . . b6 (his game against Beliavsky)
- (ii) 6. . . . c6. This can transpose to the present game or else can be part of a plan to exchange black-squared bishops by . . . Nh5 e.g. 7. Qc2 Nbd7 8. Bd3 Nh5

9. Bxe7 Qxe7 10. Nge2 g6 11 0-0-0. In Portisch – Orr from the same Olympiad, Black castled short and was successfully attacked by h3, g4 and Ng3, whilst in Kasparov's game against Andersson (World Cup, Reykjavik, 1988) Black castled long, only to be attacked down the c file after Kbl and Rcl.

7. **Bd3** **Nbd7**

I am often asked why experts block in their QB like this instead of first playing 7. . . . Be6. The point is that the bishop is thus exposed to a possible attack by f4–5 after 8. Qc2 (threatening 9. Bxf6 and 10. Bxh7+) Nbd7 9. f4 threatening 10. f5. As 9. . . . Nb6 allows 10. Bxf6 winning the h pawn, Black must play . . . g6 or . . . h6 weakening his kingside pawns and thus making it easier for White to open up attacking lines by advancing his wing pawns. For this reason, Black would have to play 8. . . . g6 or 8. . . . h6 at once, with similar consequences: (i) 8. . . . g6 9. Nge2 followed by 10. Nf4 when White would already be threatening 11. Bh6 Re8 12. Nxe6 fxe6 13. Bxg6 winning.

(ii) 8. . . . h6. This is also possible earlier, but masters are not keen on such a weakness. White's plan is to play Bf4, f3, g4, h4 and g5 utilising the h6 weakness to open lines much more quickly than would be possible with a black pawn on h7.

8. **Nge2**

The key move in this system. Of course, the natural 8. Nf3 is often played and is also good, but the text move is strategically more flexible, planning f3 when White has the choice of aiming for play in the centre with e4 or else launching a direct attack on the enemy king with g4. Often both ideas are combined.

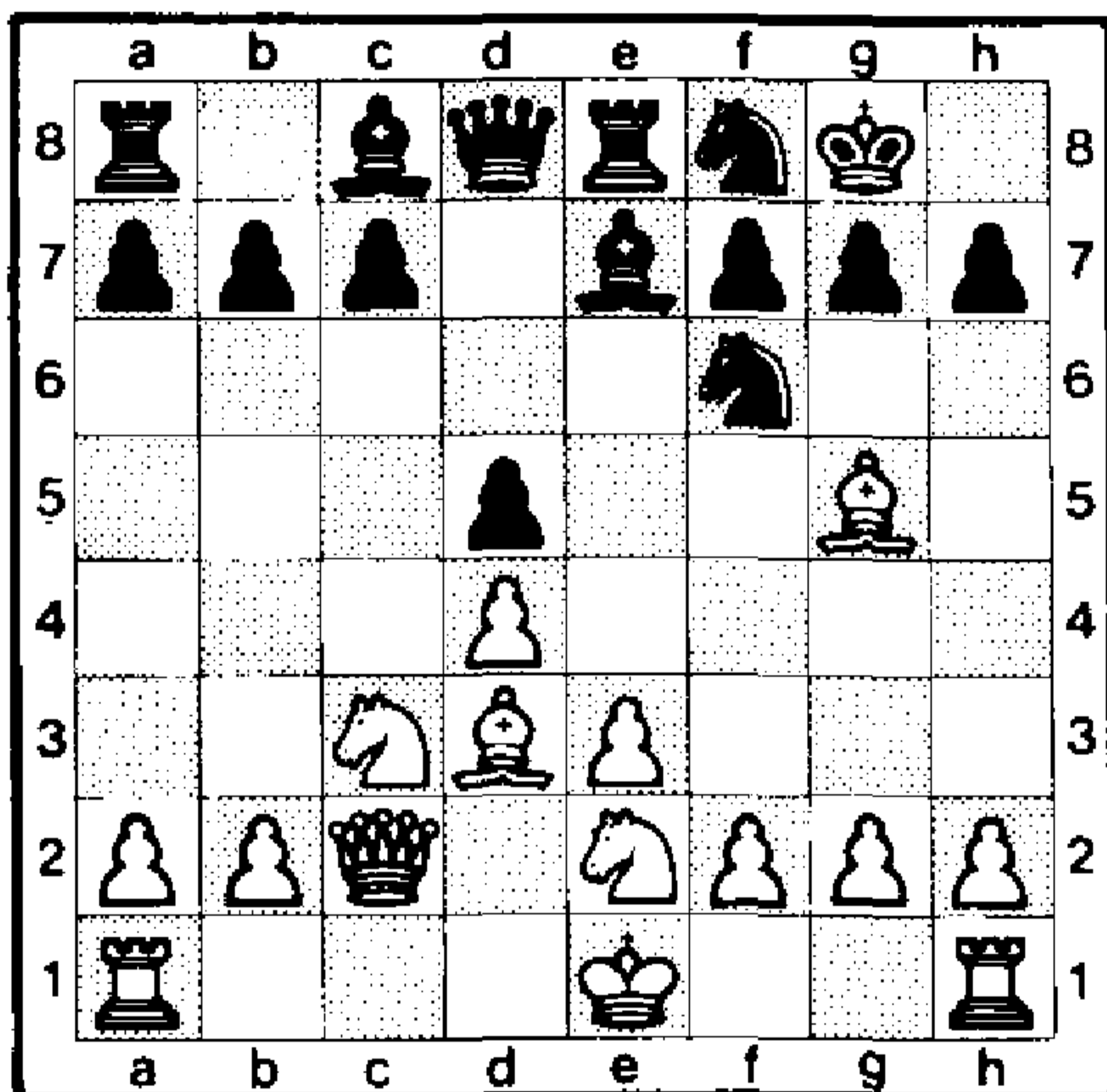
8. . . . **Re8**

9. **Qc2**

Keeping an eye on h7, thus preventing ... Nb6 and forcing Black onto the defensive if he wishes to develop his QB.

9. . . . Nf8

A well-known basic position. Black protects his Achilles' heel on h7 and clears the way for his QB. White could now attempt the quiet plan of castling king-side followed by f3, Bh4-f2 and e4, but Kasparov opts for the sharpest line of play.



10. 0-0-0

Castling on opposite sides is usually a prelude to mutual attacks on the king, when the eternal question is: 'Who will strike first?' The maestro demonstrates how the attack should be played after 10. . . . Be6, so let us consider what happens if Black launches an immediate attack with his queen's side pawns. In this concrete example, such an attack is hardly to be feared, but it is relevant in other positions. For White's king to be seriously threatened, Black requires five tempi: . . . c6, b5, a5, a4 (the immediate

. . . b4 allows White to blockade by Na4) and . . . Qa5 (to protect the a4 pawn and then play . . . b4 and . . . b3). However, in the meantime White's attack is proceeding apace, as the following analysis reveals: 10. . . . c6 11. f3 b5 12. g4 a5 13. Ng3 a4 14. Nf5 and now:

- (i) 14. . . . Bxf5 15. gxf5 Qa5 16. Rdg1 b4 17. Nb1! b3 18 axb3 axb3 19. Qg2 when Black has no dangerous threats to compensate for White's attack down the g file.
- (ii) 14. . . . Qa5 15. Nxe7+ Rxe7 16. e4! (better than 16 Bxf6 gxf6 when the e3 pawn is in the way) 16. . . . b4 (16. . . . dxe4 17. Nxe4 with a clear advantage) 17. e5 bxc3 18. exf6 cxb2+ 19 Kb1! and White has clear attacking chances. Of course, Kasparov's opponent, the Argentinian Daniel Campora, knows this very well, so develops his remaining minor piece.

10. . . . Be6

Keeping open the thematic possibility of . . . Rc8 and . . . c5 without wasting a vital tempo on . . . c6.

11. Kbl

Anticipating the above-mentioned manoeuvre by moving the king from the firing line. If Black now tries to free his game with 11. . . . Ne4 White has the advantage after 12 Bxe7 Qxe7? (12. . . . Nxc3+ 13. Nxc3 Qxe7 14. f4 f6 15. e4 gives White the initiative, according to Kasparov) 13. Bxe4 dxe4 14. Ng3! (but not 14. Nxe4 Bxa2+ 15. Kxa2 Qxe4 with equal chances) 14. . . . f5 15. d5 Bc8 (15. . . . Bd7 16. Qb3 threatening d6+ and also Qxb7) 16. Nb5.

11. . . . Ng4?!

Campora did not relish 11. . . . Rc8 12. f3 c5 13. Bb5 followed by e4, but Kasparov feels that it was the lesser evil.

12. Bxe7 Qxe7
13. Nf4 Nf6

After 13. . . . c6 14. Nxe6 fxe6 (not 14. . . . Qxe6 15. Bf5 or 14. . . . Nxe6 15. Bxh7+) 15. e4 with active play for White.

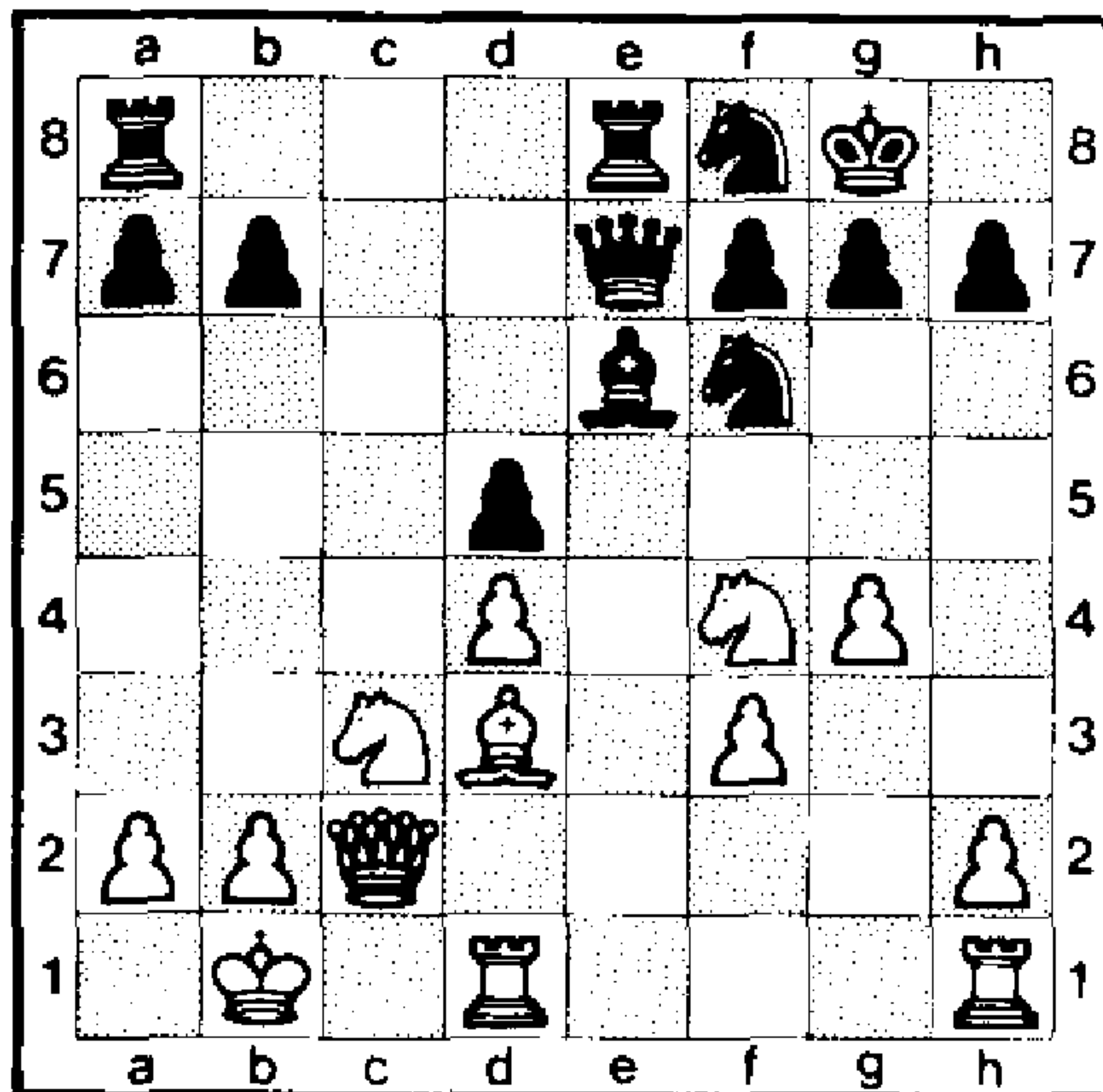
14. f3 c5

In 'Informant 46' Kasparov gives 14. . . . Ng6 15. g4 Nxf4 16. exf4 as clearly better for him; in fact, f5 g5 (all with gain of time), followed by g6 smashing open the position, is already in the air.

15. g4 cxd4

Or 15. . . . c4 16. Bf1 Qd7 (intending . . . b5) 17. e4! dxe4 18. d5 Bxg4 19. fxc4 Qxc4 20. Qf2 winning for White (Kasparov).

16. exd4



The opening stage is over and already White has the better prospects, since the centre is blocked, he has no queen-side weaknesses and his kingside attack is under way.

16. . . . Qd6
17. Qd2 a6
18. Nce2 Re7
19. Ng3 Ng6

Or 19. . . . Rae8 20. Nxe6 Rxe6 (20. . . . fxe6 21. g5 N6d7 22. f4) Nf5 with the attack (Kasparov).

20. Ng2

White plans 21. g5 Nd7 22. f4 threatening f5.

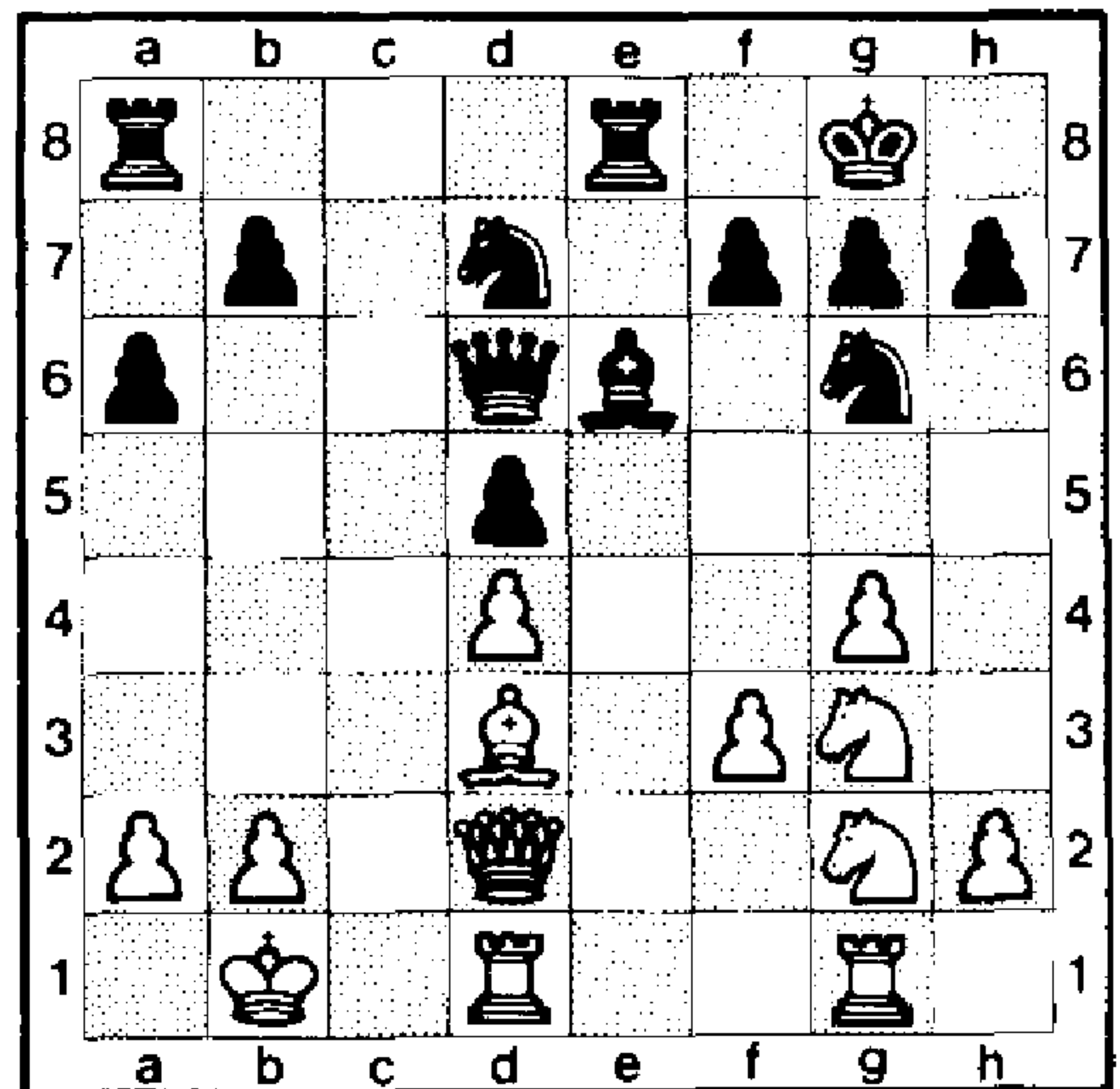
20. . . . Nd7

Countering the above idea, since now 21. g5 would allow 21. . . . Bh3! maintaining control of the important f4 square.

21. Rhg1!

With the idea of attacking down the g file not only after the threatened 22. Nf5 Bxf5 23. gxf5 (which explains Black's next move) but also after a subsequent knight sacrifice, as we shall see.

21. . . . Ree8



How can White now make progress on the kingside? He has to find a way of advancing his pawns.

22. Rdf1!

Since 22. f4 Bxg4 and 22. h4?? Qxc3 are not possible, the rook moves away from a possible attack by Black's bishop when it reaches g4, thus allowing the possible

variation 22. . . . Nb6 23. f4 Bxg4 24. f5 Nf8 25. Qg5 Bh3 26. Nf4! Bxf1 27. Ne4 winning the queen or mating on g7. Note that, if the black knight had retreated to h8 instead of f8, we would finish with the amusing 27. . . . Qf8 28. Nf6 mate!

22. . . . Ngf8

Carefully anticipating the above line but unfortunately relinquishing control of f4, thus allowing White's next move.

23. Ne3 Kh8

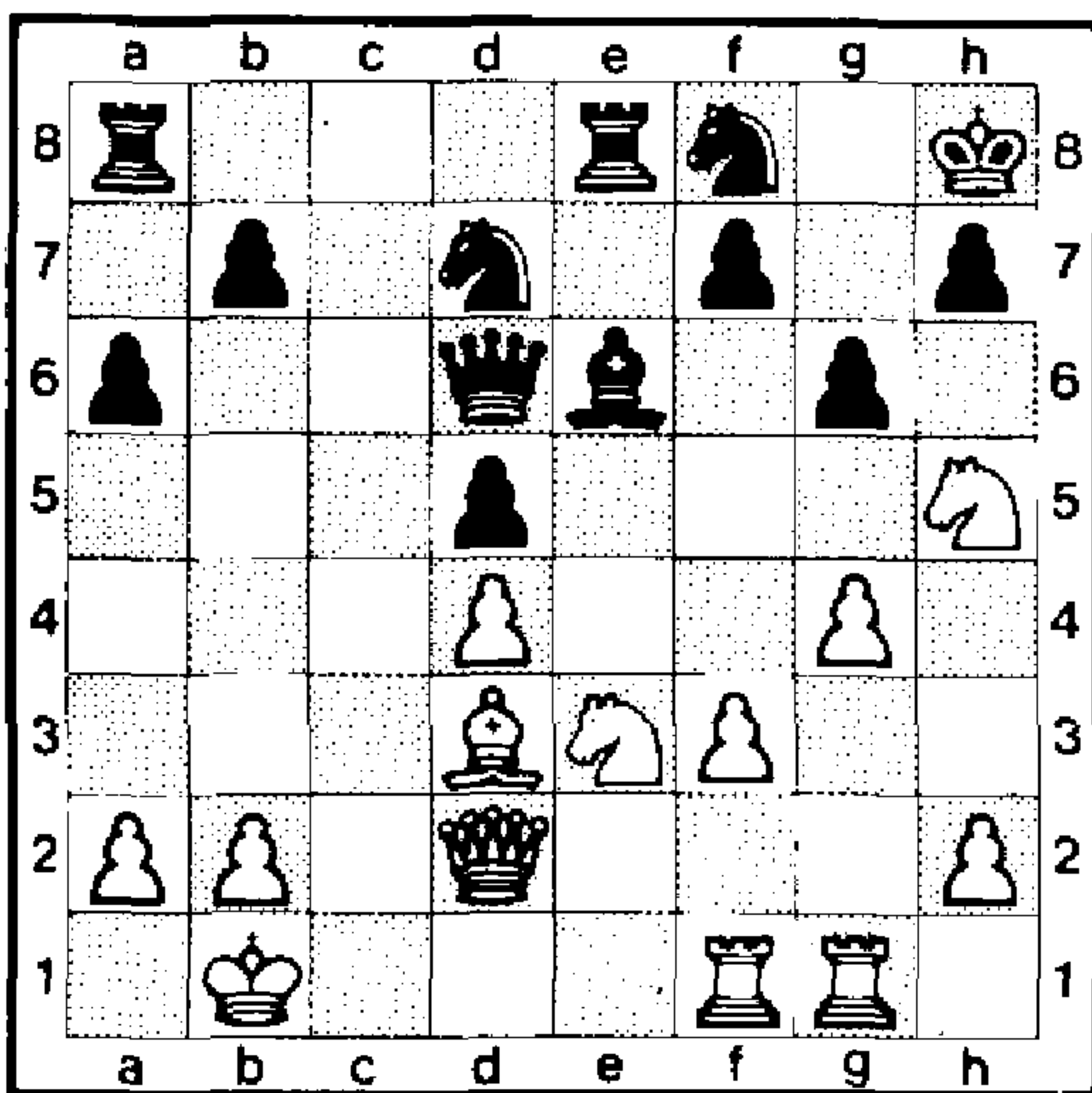
The f pawn cannot be stopped, since 23. . . . Qf4 24. Nh5 Qh6 25. f4 is even worse than the game continuation. Black is now hoping to move the bishop to g8 after . . . f6, but he is given no more time for such an idea.

24. Nh5!

A fine move, threatening either to win the pawn on g7 or else open the g file after 25. Nf5 Bxf5 26. gxf5 followed by Qg2.

24. . . . g6

Trying in vain to stem the tide of advance by protecting f5 and attacking the knight on h5, but the latter threat turns out to be illusory.



25. f4!! gxh5

26. f5 h4

Since 26. . . . hxg4 27. Nxg4 opens the g file, allowing threats of Qg5, Qh6 or Nh6 (intending Rg8 mate), Black hastens to keep the file closed.

27. fxe6 fxe6

28. g5 Re7

Or 28. . . . Ng6 29. Bxg6 hxg6 30. Qf2 Re7 31. Ng4 Rh7 32. Nh6 Rf8 33. Qxh4 with a clear advantage (Kasparov).

29. Ng4 Rg7

30. Nh6 Qb6

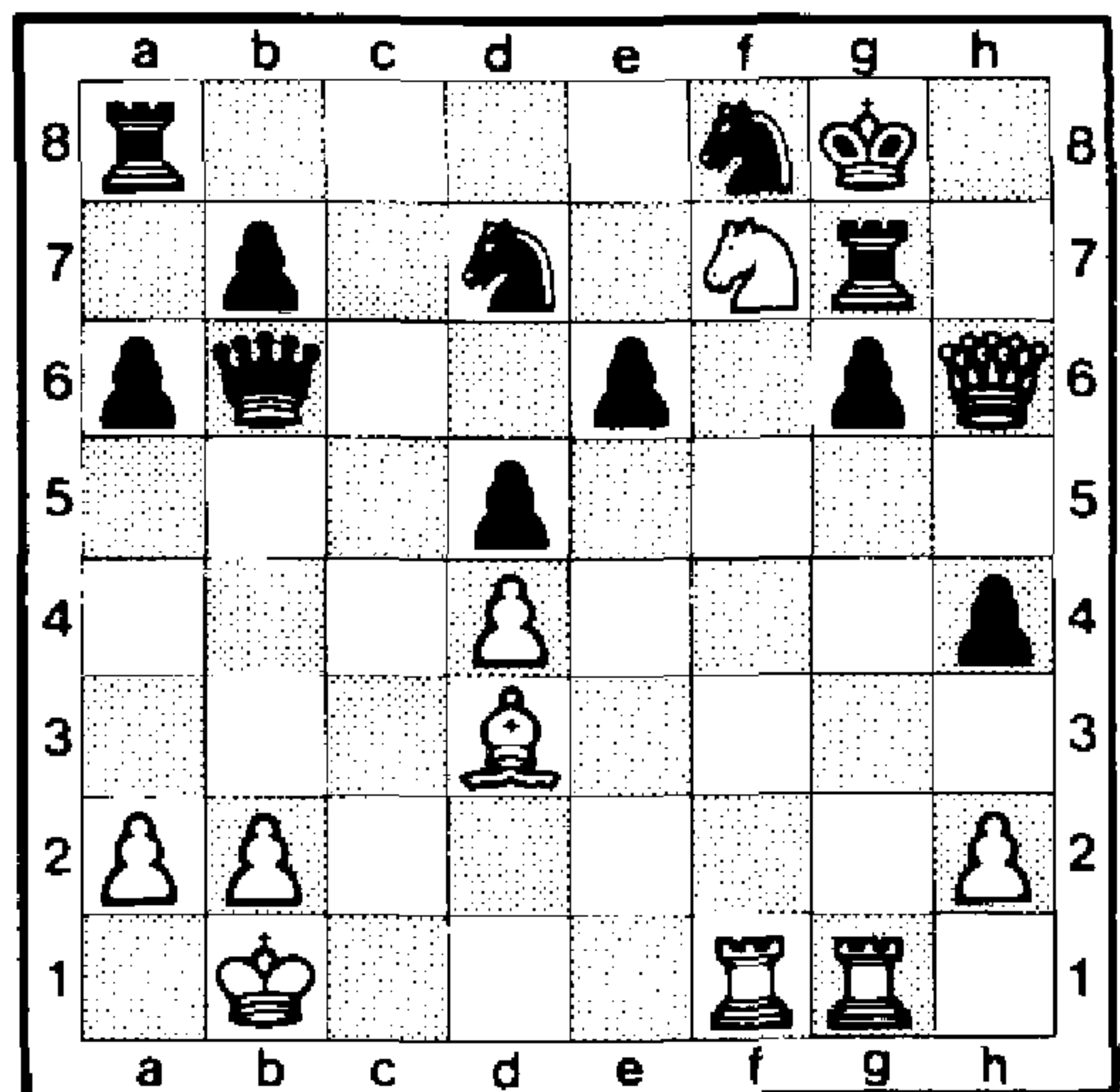
Wrongly hoping to gain a breather by his attack on the d pawn, but even the defence of his second rank by 30. . . . Qe7 would have failed to 31. Rg4 followed by Rgf4 and Qf2.

31. g6! hxg6

Or 31. . . . Nxg6 32. Bxg6 followed by Nf7+ and Qh6.

32. Nf7+ Kg8

33. Qh6!



The decisive move. If now 33. . . . Rxf7 White wins by 34. Bxg6 Rxf1+ 35. Rxf1 Nf6 (35. . . . Nxg6 36. Qxg6+ Kh8 37.

Rf7) 36. Bf7+! (better than 36. Rxf6 Qc7 37. Bf7+ Qxf7) 36. . . . Kxf7 37. Qxf6+ winning (Kasparov). White either mates on g7 or wins the rook on a8.

33. . . Rh7
34. Rxc6+ Nxc6
35. Qxc6+ Rg7
36. Qh6 1:0

Rien ne va plus!

Supplementary Material
G Kasparov – A Beliavsky

(Fifth Matchgame, 1983)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Nf6 4. cxd5 exd5 5. Bg5 Be7 6. e3 h6 7. Bh4 0-0 8. Bd3 b6 9. Nf3 Bb7 10. 0-0 c5 (in the seventh game, Beliavsky played 10. . . . Ne4 which is probably better) 11. Ne5 Nbd7 12. Bf5 Nxe5 13. dxe5 Ne8 14. Bg3 Nc7 15. Qg4 Qe8 16. Bd7 Qd8 17. Rad1 h5 18. Qh3 h4 19. Bf4 Bg5 20. Bf5 g6 21. Ne4 Bxf4 22. exf4 gxf5 23. Qxf5 dxe4 24. Qg4+ Kh7 25. Rxd8 Rfxd8 26. Qxh4+ Kg8 27. Qe7 e3 28. Re1 exf2+ 29. Kxf2 Rd2+ 30. Re2 Rxe2+ 31. Kxe2 Ba6+ 32. Kf2 Ne6 33. f5 Nd4 34. e6 Rf8 35. Qg5+ Kh7 36. e7 Re8 37. f6 Ne6 38. Qh5+ Kg8 **1-0**

L Portisch – K Orr

(Thessaloniki Olympiad, 1988)

1. c4 e6 2. Nc3 d5 3. d4 Nf6 4. cxd5 exd5 5. Bg5 Be7 6. e3 c6 7. Qc2 Nbd7 8. Bd3 Nh5 9. Bxe7 Qxe7 10. Nge2 g6 11. 0-0-0 Ndf6 12. h3 Ng7 13. g4 0-0 14. Ng3 Nfe8 15. e4 dxe4 16. Ncxe4 Ne6 17. Qc3 Nf4 18. Bc2 Nd5 19. Qd2 Qc7 20. Kb1 Qf4 21. Qe1 Ng7 22. Ne2 Qc7 23. Qd2 f5 24. Ng5 Ne6 25. Nxe6 Bxe6 26. g5 f4 27. h4 Bf5 28. h5 Qf7 29. hxg6 Qxg6 30. Rh6 Bxc2+ 31. Qxc2 Qxc2+ 32. Kxc2 Rae8 33. Nc1 Re7 34. Rdh1 Rg7 35. Nd3 Rf5 36. Nc5 Nc7 37. Ne4 Nb5 38. Kd3 Kf8 39. a4 Nc7 40. Rxh7 Ne6 41. Rxc7 Kxc7 42.

Rh6 Nf8 43. Rd6 Rf7 44. a5 Rd7 45. Rxd7+ Nxd7 46. Nc5 Nf8 47. Nxb7 Ne6 48. Ke4 **1-0**

G Kasparov – U Andersson

(World Cup, Reykjavik 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 d5 4. cxd5 exd5 5. Bg5 c6 6. Qc2 Be7 7. e3 Nbd7 8. Bd3 Nh5 9. Bxe7 Qxe7 10. Nge2 g6 11. 0-0-0 Nb6 12. Ng3 Ng7 13. Kb1 Bd7 14. Rc1 0-0-0 15. Na4 Nxa4 16. Qxa4 Kb8 17. Rc3 b6 18. Ba6 Ne6 19. Rhc1 Rhe8 20. Qb3 Qd6 21. Nf1 Ka8 22. Nd2 Nc7 23. Bf1 Ne6 24. g3 Rc8 25. Bg2 Rc7 26. h4 Rd8 27. Nf3 Bc8 28. Qa4 c5 29. Ng5 Nxc5 30. hxg5 Bb7 31. dxc5 bxc5 32. Qf4 Qxf4 33. gxf4 d4 34. Rxc5 Rxc5 35. Bxb7+ Kxb7 36. Rxc5 dxe3 37. fxe3 Re8 38. Re5 Rxe5 39. fxe5 Kc6 40. Kc2 Kd5 41. b4 Kxe5 42. a4 f6 43. gxf6 Kxf6 44. b5 **1-0**



The Hungarian grandmaster Lajos Portisch has long been in the leading group of chess-players.

J Nogueiras – D Barlov

(Zagreb Interzonal, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 d5 4. cxd5 exd5
5. Bg5 Bb4 6. e3 c5 7. Bd3 cxd4 8. exd4
h6 9. Bh4 Bxc3+ 10. bxc3 0-0 11. Ne2
Nbd7 12. 0-0 Qa5 13. a4 Ne4 14. Qc2
Re8 15. Rfb1 a6 16. Rb4 Nf8 17. f3 Nd6
18. Bg3 Nc4 19. Nf4 Ne3 20. Qb3 Qd8
21. Re1 a5 22. Rb5 Bd7 23. Rxb7 Bc6 24.
Bb5 Rc8 25. Bxc6 Rxc6 26. Qb5 Qc8 27.
Nd3 Nc4 28. Rxe8 Qxe8 29. Ne5 Nxe5
30. Bxe5 Qe6 31. Qd3 Ng6 32. Rb8+Rc8
33. Rxc8+ Qxc8 34. h3 Qc6 35. Qb5
Qxc3 36. Qxd5 Qa1+ 37. Kh2 Qxa4 38.
Bc7 Qc2 39. Qxa5 f5 40. Qc5 **1-0**

A Saily – P Clemance

(Saint-John Open, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 d5 4. cxd5 exd5
5. Bg5 Be7 6. e3 0-0 7. Bd3 c6 8. Qc2
Nbd7 9. Nge2 Re8 10. 0-0 Nf8 11. f3 h6
12. Bh4 c5 13. Rad1 Be6 14. Bb5 N8d7
15. Bxf6 Bxf6 16. dxc5 a6 17. Ba4 b5 18.
cxb6 Qxb6 19. Bxd7 Qxe3+ 20. Rf2
Bxd7 21. Nxd5 Qa7 22. Nxf6+ gxf6 23.
Nc3 Bc6 24. Qd2 Rab8 25. b3 Bb5 26.
Qxh6 Rbd8 27. Rxd8 Rxd8 28. h3 Qc7
29. Rd2 Re8 30. Ne4 Re6 31. Rd1
Qb6+32. Kh1 a5 33. Rd5 f5 34. Qg5+
Rg6 35. Qxf5 Bf1 36. Ng5 **1-0**

A Huzman – A Petrosian

(Lvov, 1988)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Nf6 4. cxd5 exd5
5. Bg5 Be7 6. e3 0-0 7. Bd3 Nbd7 8. Qc2
Re8 9. Nge2 Nf8 10. 0-0 c6 11. f3 Ng6
12. e4 dxe4 13. fxe4 Be6 14. h3 c5 15.
Bxf6 Bxf6 16. e5 cxd4 17. exf6 dxc3 18.
Nxc3 gxf6 19. Kh1 Rc8 20. Rad1 Qe7 21.
Qf2 a6 22. Rde1 Red8 23. Bf5 Rc6 24.
Re3 Qc5 25. Be4 Rc7 26. Qxf6 Rcd7 27.
Qf3 Qc7 28. Bf5 Bxf5 29. Qxf5 Qb6 30.
Nd5 Qd4 (30. . . . Rxd5 31. Qxf7+ Kh8
32. Re8+ Rxe8 33. Qxe8+ Kg7 34.

Qf7+Kh6 35. Qxd5) 31. Nf6+ Kg7 32.
Nxd7 Rxd7 33. Re4 Qd6 **1-0**

**B The Exchange Variation
with Bf4**

However beautiful the attacking system in our first model game may be, Black can in fact avoid it by answering **3 Nc3** with **3. . . . Be7**, a move the reader may well have seen before and perhaps wondered at the reasoning behind it. Let us see how it avoids the Nge2 system.

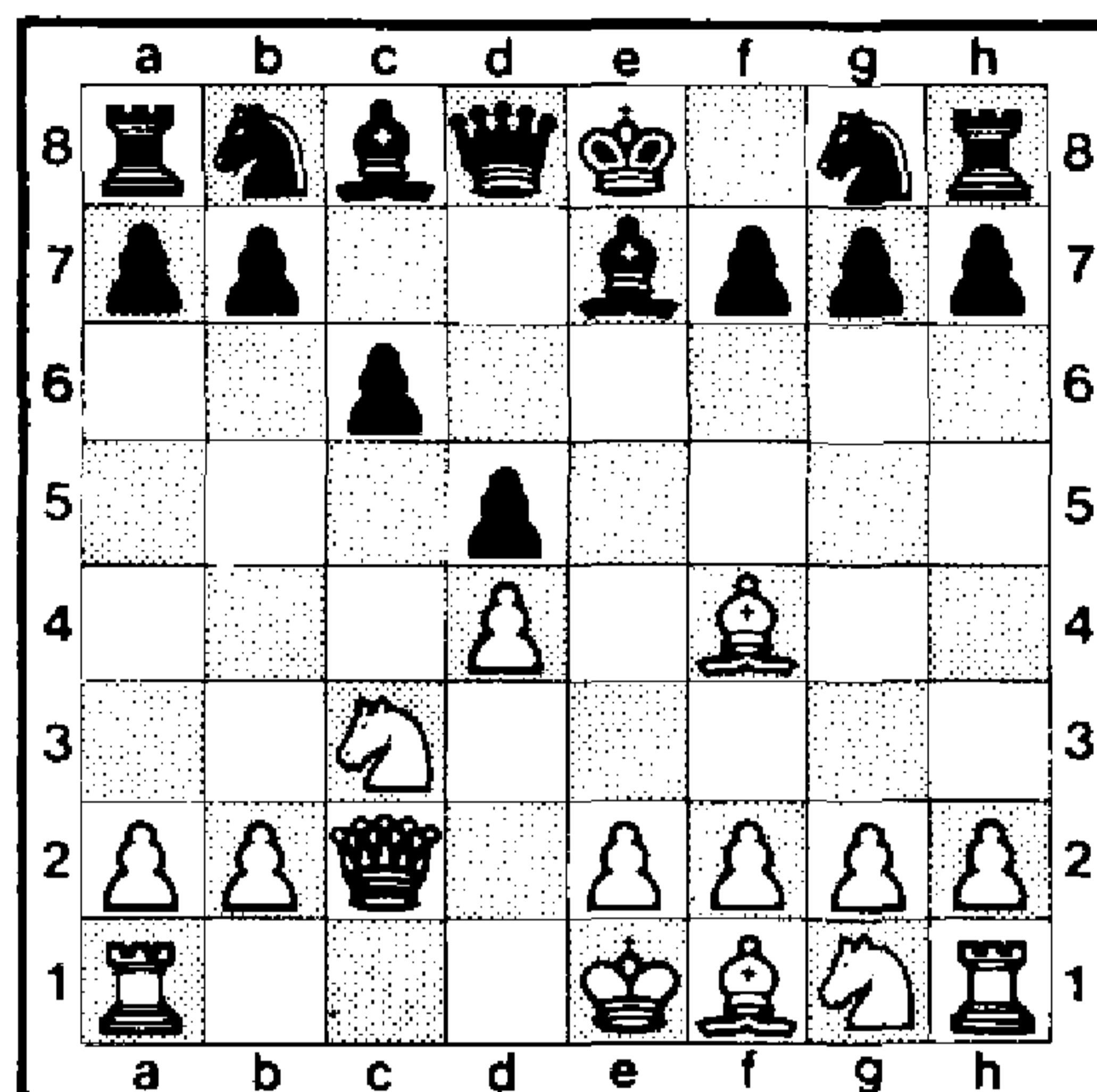
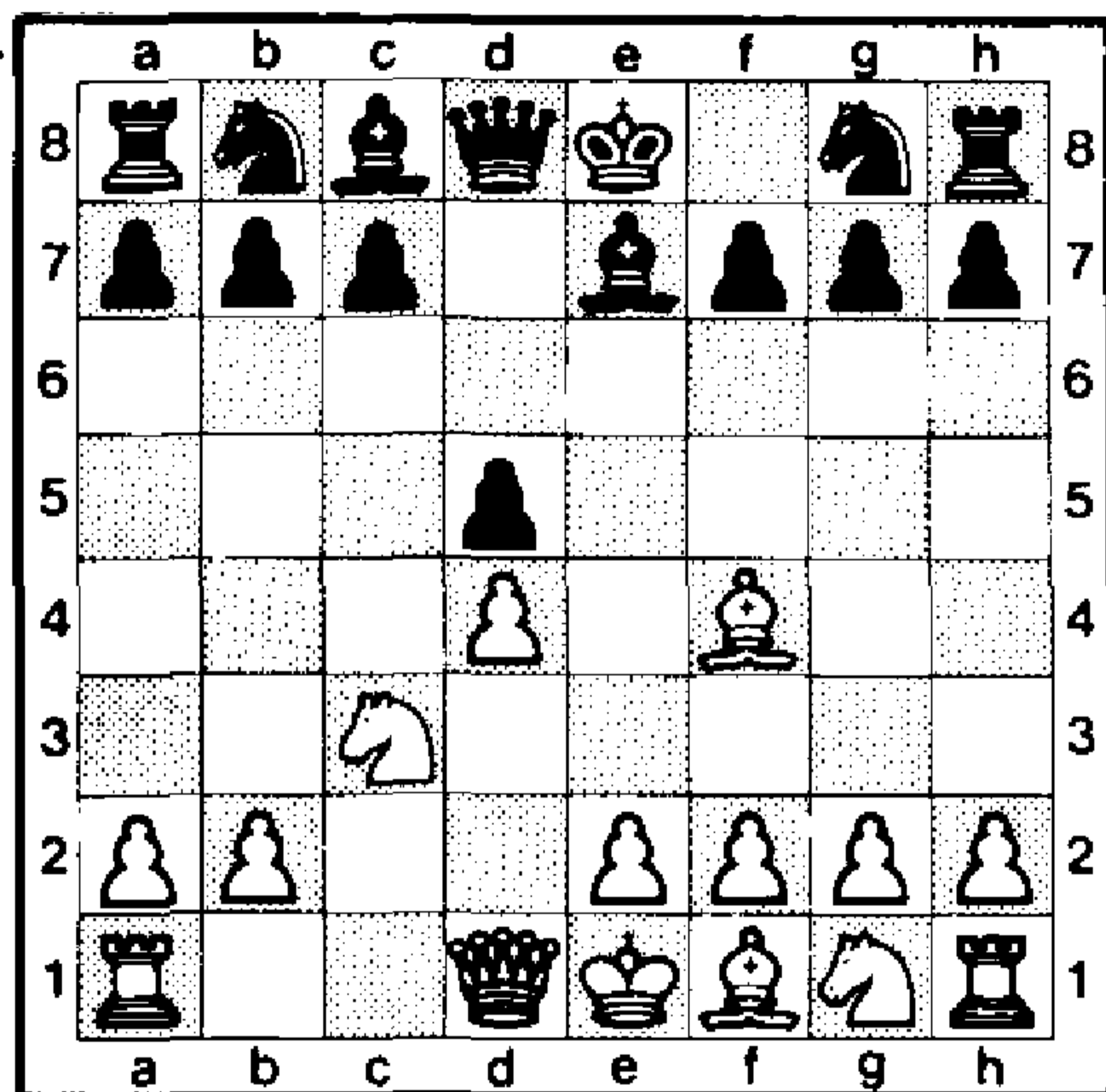
The point is that White cannot play an immediate Bg5 but must find another continuation. 4. e3 would block in his QB, and 4. cxd5 exd5 merely postpones the decision for one move.

There remains 4. Qc2 but this move leaves the d4 pawn exposed after 4. . . . dxc4, allowing 5. Nf3 (4. e3 again shuts in the QB and brings about a Queen's Gambit Accepted in which White's queen is misplaced on c2) 5. . . . Nc6 6. e3 Nb4 7. Qd1 (7. Qa4+Bd7 only loses time) 7. . . . Nd3+ 8. Bxd3 cxd3 9. Qxd3 Nf6 10. 0-0 0-0 11. e4 c5 and Black continues with . . . b6 and . . . Bb7, when his two bishops guarantee him a comfortable game.

So he should perhaps first exchange pawns before playing Qc2, but Black does not oblige with 4. . . . Nf6 allowing 5. Bg5 and plays instead 4. . . . c6. Of course, White can play 4. Nf3 but this excludes the possibility of going into the Nge2 line. This means that 3. . . . Be7 has indeed prevented the Bg5 and Nge2 system, but only to allow another active system of exchanging pawns then posting the QB on f4. Our model game was played in the last Chess Olympiad at Thessaloniki.

G Kasparov – N Short

- 1. c4 e6
- 2. Nc3 d5
- 3. d4 Be7
- 4. cxd5 exd5
- 5. Bf4



The basic position of this system. Here or later (after . . . Nf6 and . . . 0-0 for example) Black can also play . . . c5, but this would immediately reveal one disadvantage of 3. . . . Be7, since Black would lose a tempo recapturing on c5 after dxc5 (see the famous eighth game from the Kasparov – Karpov match in the Supplementary Games).

5. . . . c6

Aiming to develop his QB to f5, since the immediate 5. . . . Bf5? fails to 6 Qb3! attacking the d5 and b7 pawns simultaneously. Once . . . c6 has been played, Qb3 can be answered with . . . Qb6.

6. Qc2

The most exact continuation. Admittedly, White cannot prevent . . . Bf5 in the long run, but this will involve 6. . . . g6 weakening the dark squares, a factor

which Kasparov skilfully exploits in the present game. The move 6. . . . Bd6 is an interesting alternative tried out in the game Lerner – Lobron (see later) when White obtained some advantage in the opening. Note that the win of a pawn by 7. Nxd5 Bxf4 (not 7. . . . cxd5? 8. Bxd6 winning a piece) 8 Qe4+ (8. Nxf4 Qxd4) Ne7 9. Nxf4 is bad in view of 9. . . . Qa5+ 10. Kd1 Bf5 etc.

6. . . . g6

Black intends to achieve . . . Bf5 but is there no other way to do this? In the same Olympiad, the imaginative Norwegian grandmaster Agdestein tried out the bizarre-looking 6. . . . h5 against Seirawan. The point is two-fold. Firstly, he wants to prepare . . . Bf5 by playing his knight to h6 without allowing his pawn position to be shattered by Bxh6. Secondly, if White plays the natural 7. e3 (intending 8. Bd3 to prevent . . . Bf5), Black has the cunning 7. . . . g5 8. Be5 (8. Bg3 h4) f6 9. Qg6+ Kf8 10. Bxb8 Rxb8 when the white queen, threatened by . . . f5 and . . . Rh6, must retreat; after 11. Qc2 Kg7 12. Bd3 Nh6 13. Nge2 Be6 followed by . . . Qd7, Black's bishop pair



Grandmaster Nigel Short is one of the great hopes of English chess.

ensures him a good game. However, after 7. h3! (reserving h2 as a retreat square for his bishop) Seirawan demonstrated that the inclusion of h3 and ... h5 was more beneficial to White than Black (see later).

What happens if Black gives up the idea of playing ... Bf5 and plays a routine developing move such as 6. ... Nf6 instead? Play might go 7. h3 (safeguarding the bishop against ... Nh5) 7. ... 0-0 8. e3 Nbd7 9. Bd3 (aiming to expose the h7 pawn to attack after g4-g5) 9. ... Re8 10. g4 Nf8 11. Nge2 Be6 12. Ng3 planning Nf5, and we are strongly reminded of our first game Kasparov – Campora. Now back to our model game.

7. e3 Bf5

8. Qd2

An idea used by Karpov against Kasparov (!) and preferable to exchanging bishops

by 8. Bd3. The loss of a tempo is compensated by the fact that Black's exposed bishop on f5 will be driven back with gain of time after f3 and g4 or e4.

8. ... Nf6

In the seventh game from the Kasparov – Kasparov 1986 match in London, play went 8. ... Nd7 9. f3 Nb6 10. e4 Be6 11. e5 with advantage to White (see later).

9. f3 c5

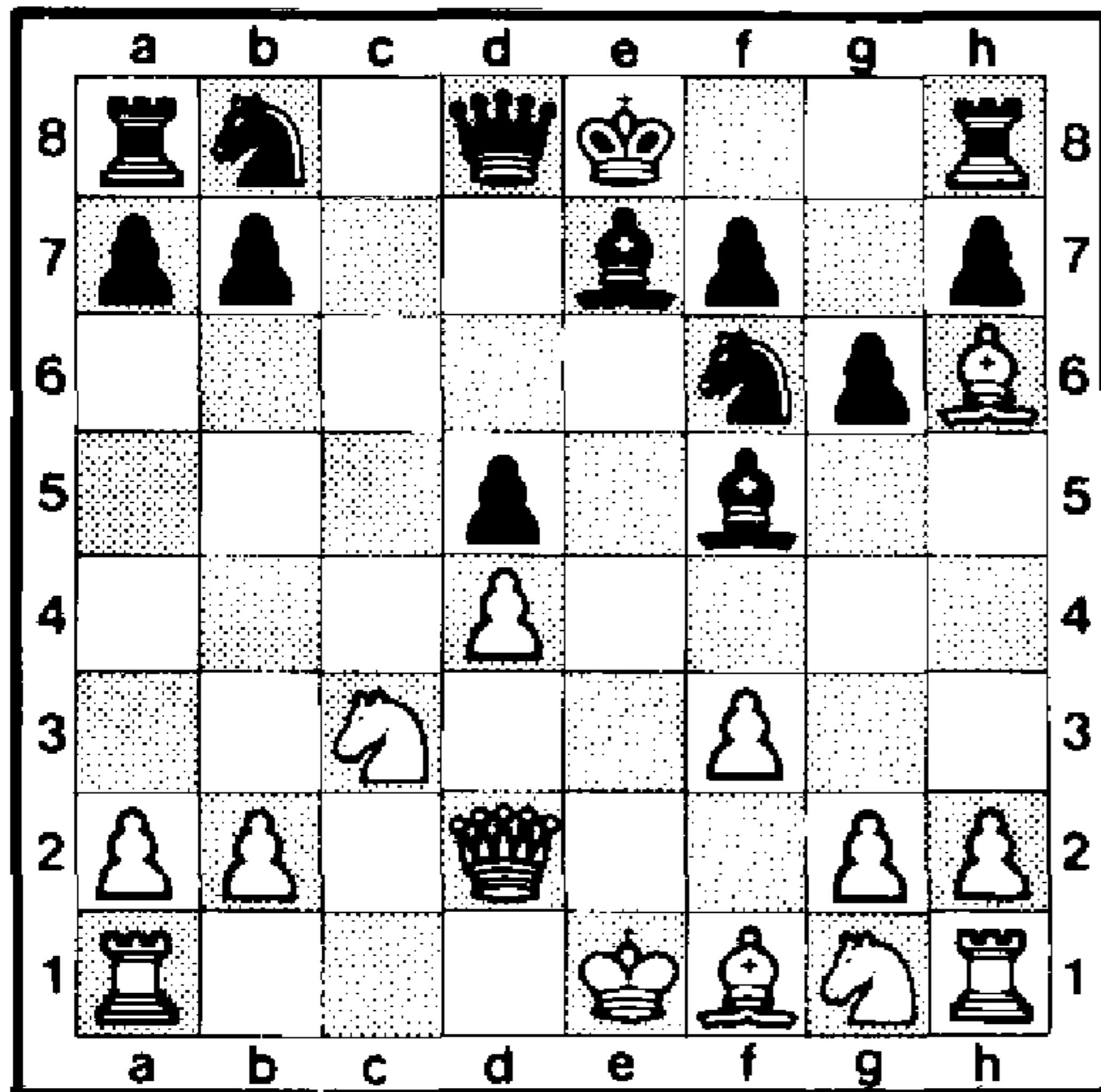
Putting pressure on d4 before White smothers him by pawn advances.

10. Bh6

Not only preventing castling but also forcing Black to clarify the position in the centre, since both 10. ... Bf8? 11. Bxf8 Kxf8 12. dxc5 and 10. ... Nc6 11. dxc5 Bxc5 12. Bg7 Rg8 13. Bxf6 Qxf6 14. Nxd5 lose Black a pawn.

10. ... cxd4

11. exd4



We note again the strong resemblance between the two Exchange Variation systems.

As in the Campora game, the centre is static, the f3 pawn guards e4 and the g4 advance is prepared. Kasparov's games frequently contain this kind of set-up.

11. . . . a6

After 11. . . . Nc6 Kasparov laconically states that '12. Bb5 gives White the advantage'.

Doubtless, the World Champion had the following ideas in mind: he drives the bishop away from f5 by Nge2 and g4 (it is vital to be able to play the king to b1 later); should Black then castle K side, the attack proceeds with h4-h5, and if Black chooses the Q side for his king, the b5 bishop is excellently placed to support the attacking plan of Kb1, Rc1 and Na4.

12. g4 Be6
13. Nge2 Nbd7?!

In Informant 46, Kasparov also places White better after 13. . . . Nfd7 14. Bg2 Bh4+ 15. Ng3 g5 16. f4! and prefers instead 13. . . . Nc6 14. Bg2 Bf8 (14. . . .

Qc7 15. 0-0 0-0-0 16. Rac1+-) 15. 0-0 Bxh6 16. Qxh6 Qb6 17. Rad1 (17. Qg7 Ke7) 17. . . . 0-0-0 (17. . . . Qxb2 18. Rb1 Qa3 19. Rxb7+=) 18. Rd2 when White stands a little better.

14. Bg2 Nb6
15. b3 Rc8
16. 0-0 Rc6
17. h3

Securing g4 in preparation for the advance of the f pawn.

17. . . . Nfd7

An attempted trek by the King to the Q side would fail to 17. . . . Kd7 18. a4 Kc8 19. a5 Nbd7 20. Na4 with an attack (Kasparov); White continues with Rfc1, Nf4 and Bf1.

18. Nd1 Rg8

After 18. . . . f6 planning . . . Bf8, White's advantage is clear.

19. Nf2 f5?

Black tries in vain to break out of his passive position. After 19. . . . g5 Kasparov intended to exploit his advantage as follows: 20. f4 f6 21. Ng3 Rg6 22. f5 Rxh6 23. fxe6 Rxe6 24. Rfe1 Nf8 25. Nf5 Rg6 26. Rxe6 Nxe6 27. Re1 Qd7 28. Nd3 (28. Qe3 Kf7) Kf7 29. Nxe7 Qxe7 30. Nc5 +- . Perhaps 19. . . . f6 was the least evil.

20. Rae1 g5
21. gxf5 Bf7

Or 21. . . . Bxf5 22. Ng3 Be6 (22. . . . Bg6 23. Bxg5) 23. Nh5 Rg6 (23. . . . Bxh3 24. Bxh3 Rxh6 25. Ng7+) 24. Ng4 Qc7 (24. . . . Bxg4 25. fxc4 Rxh6 26. Ng7 mate) 25. Ng7+ Kd8 26. Nxe6+ Rxe6 27. Rxe6 Rxe6 28. Bxg5 +- (Kasparov).

22. Ng4 Bh5
23. Ng3 1-0

The finish might be 23. . . . Bxg4 24. Bxg5 Rxg5 25. Qxg5 Kf8 26. f6 Bxf6 27. fxc4 followed by Nh5 threatening Qg7 mate.

Supplementary Material**G Kasparov – A Karpov**

(Eighth game, London Match 1986)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Be7 4. cxd5 exd5
 5. Bf4 Nf6 6. e3 0-0 7. Bd3 c5 8. Nf3 Nc6
 9. 0-0 Bg4 10. dxc5 Bxc5 11. h3 Bxf3
 12. Qxf3 d4 13. Ne4 Be7 14. Rad1 Qa5
 15. Ng3 dxe3 16. fxe3 Qxa2 17. Nf5 Qe6
 18. Bh6 Ne8 19. Qh5 g6 20. Qg4 Ne5
 21. Qg3 Bf6 22. Bb5 Ng7 23. Bxg7 Bxg7
 24. Rd6 Qb3 25. Nxg7 Qxb5 26. Nf5
 Rad8 27. Rf6 Rd2 28. Qg5 Qxb2 29. Kh1
 Kh8 30. Nd4 Rxd4 31. Qxe5 **1-0**

K Lerner – E Lobron

(Amsterdam, OHRA B, 1988)

1. c4 e6 2. Nc3 d5 3. d4 Be7 4. cxd5 exd5
 5. Bf4 c6 6. e3 (in our model game White
 played 6. Qc2 here, but 6. . . . Bd6 7.
 Bxd6 Qxd6 8. e3 Ne7 9. Bd3 would
 merely transpose into the present game)
 6. . . . Bd6 7. Bxd6 Qxd6 8. Bd3 Ne7 9.
 Qc2 (preventing . . . Bf5) 9. . . . Bg4 10. f3
 Bh5 11. Nge2 Bg6 12. e4 (again avoiding
 the exchange of bishops and gaining the
 upperhand in the centre) 12. . . . dxe4 13
 fxe4 Nd7 (White now stands better and
 should have played 14 0-0 0-0 15. Rad1
 c5 16. e5 Bxd3 17. Rxd3 Qh6 18. Nf4
 with good attacking chances according
 to Grandmaster Lerner) 14. 0-0-0?! 0-0
 15. g4 c5 16. h4 h5 17. e5 Qe6 18. Bxg6
 fxc6 (White's pawn centre collapses but
 he has compensating tactical chances)
 19. d5 Qxe5 20. d6 Nc6 21. Qxg6 Rae8
 22. gxh5 Nd4 23. h6 Nxe2+ 24. Nxe2
 Qe3+ 25. Rd2 Qxh6 26. Qxh6 gxh6 27.
 Nc3 Re6 28. Rh3 Kh7 29. Nb5 a6 30. Nc7
 Rf1+ 31. Kc2 Ree1 32. Kb3 Rd1 33.
 Rhh2 Rf3+ 34. Kc2 Rxd2+ 35. Rxd2 Rf6
 36. Kc3 Kg6 37. Rd5 Rf3+ 38. Kc2 Rf5
 39. Rd2 Rf6 40. Nd5 Rf7 (40. . . . Rxd6??
 41. Ne7+) 41. Re2 Rf8 42. Re7 Rd8
 43. Nf4+ Kf6 44. Ne6 Rg8 45. Nc7 Rd8

46. Kc3 b5 47. Nxa6 Nb6 48. Rb7 Nd5+
 49. Kc2 Ne3+ 50. Kb3 c4+ 51. Kb4 Rxd6
 52. Kxb5 Rd2 53. Kc5 c3 54. bxc3 Rxa2
 55. Rb6+ Ke5 56. Nb4 (56 Rxh6 Rc2 with
 a fairly safe draw e.g. 57. Kb4 Nd5+)
 56. . . . Ra5+ 57. Kc6 Ke4 58. Rb5 Rxb5
 59. Kxb5 h5 60. c4 Nxc4 **½-½**

Y Seirawan – S Agdestein

(Thessaloniki Olympiad, 1988)

1. d4 e6 2. c4 d5 3. Nc3 Be7 4. cxd5 exd5
 5. Bf4 c6 6. Qc2 h5 7. h3 g6 8. e3 Bf5 9.
 Bd3 Bxd3 10. Qxd3 Nd7 11. Nge2 Nf8 12
 0-0-0 h4 13. f3 b5 14. Kb1 Ne6 15. Be5
 Bf6 16. e4 a6 17. f4 b4 18. Na4 Rh5
 19. exd5 cxd5 10. g4 hxg3 21. Nxg3 Rh4
 22. f5 Bxe5 23. dxe5 Nf4 24. Qb3 Qg5
 25. Nb6 Rd8 26. Nxd5 Kf8 27. Nxf4 Rxf4
 28. Rxd8+ Qxd8 29. Rd1 Qb6 30. Qd5
 Qe3 31. Qd8+ Kg7 32. Nh5+ gxh5 33.
 Qg5+Kh7 34. f6 Qe4+ 35. Ka1 Rxf6 36.
 exf6 Qg6 37. Qxg6+ Kxg6 38. Rg1+ **1-0**

A Karpov – G Kasparov

(Seventh game, London Match 1986)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Be7 4. cxd5 exd5
 5. Bf4 c6 6. Qc2 g6 7. e3 Bf5 8. Qd2 Nd7
 9. f3 Nb6 10. e4 Be6 11. e5 h5 12. Bd3
 Qd7 13. b3 Bh4+ 14. g3 Be7 15. Kf2 Bf5
 16. Bf1 Kf8 17. Kg2 a5 18. a3 Qd8 19.
 Nh3 Bxh3+ 20. Kxh3 Kg7 21. Kg2 Nd7
 22. Bd3 Nf8 23. Be3 Ne6 24. Ne2 Nh6
 25. b4 Qb6 26. b5 c5 27. Nc3 cxd4 28.
 Bxh6+ Rxh6 29. Nxd5 Qd8 30. Be4 h4
 31. Rhf1 hxg3 32. hxg3 Rc8 33. Rh1
 Rxh1 34. Rxh1 Bg5 35. f4 Rc5 36. fxg5
 Rxd5 37. Bxd5 Qxd5+ 38. Kh2 Qxe5 39.
 Rf1 Qxb5 40. Qf2 Nxg5 41. Qxd4+ **1-0**

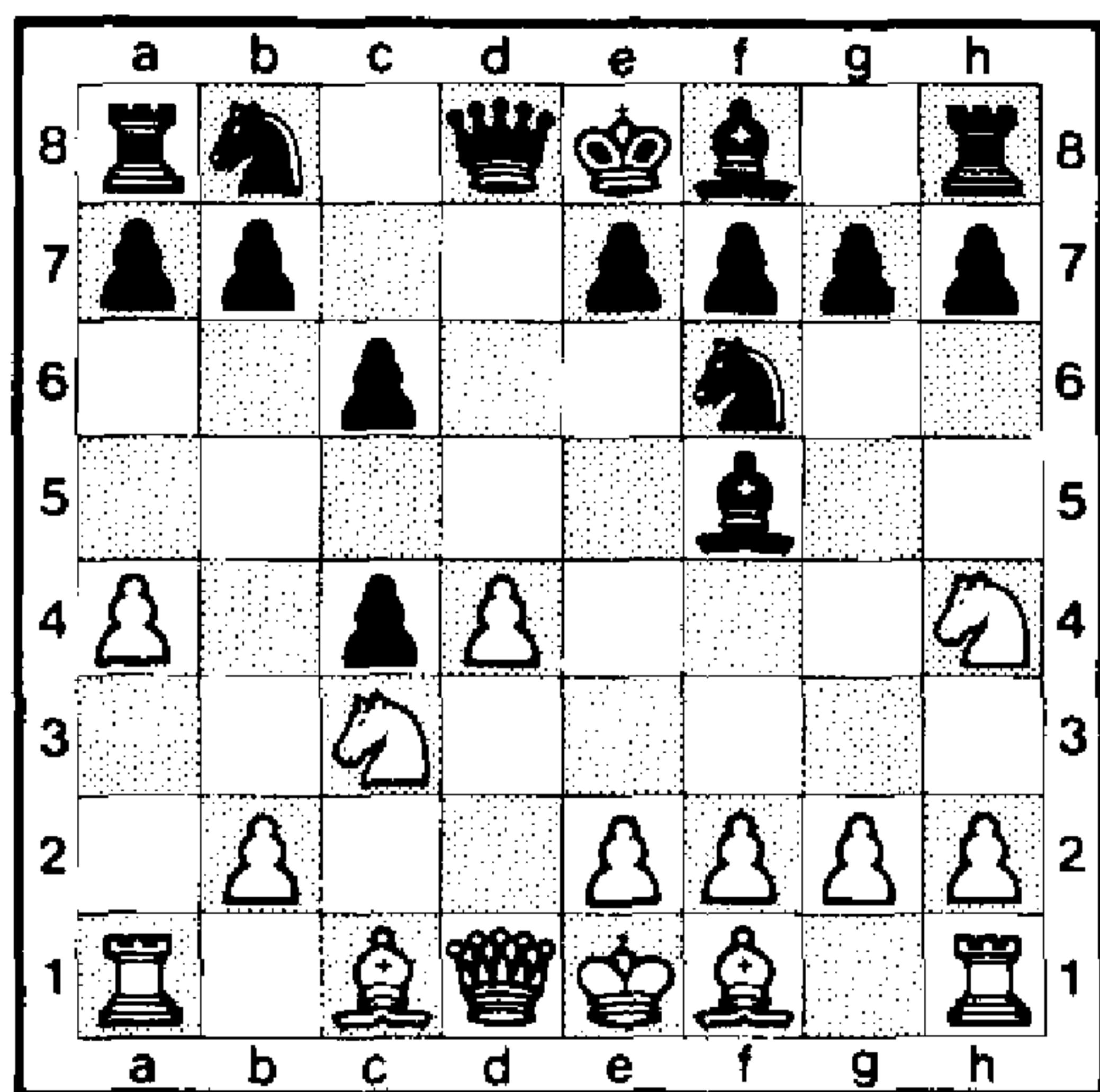
2. The Slav Defence (2. . . . c6)**G Kasparov – J Timman**

(Optibeurs Tournament, Netherlands 1988)

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. d4 | d5 |
| 2. c4 | c6 |
| 3. Nf3 | Nf6 |
| 4. Nc3 | dxc4 |
| 5. a4 | Bf5 |

The Main Variation of the Slav Defence. The alternative 5. . . . Bg4 is rarely seen; we give an example in the supplementary game Kasparov – Conquest (see page 25).

6. Nh4



As you will soon see, this move either gains a little time on the clock by transposing to the same position with two moves extra, or else – if Black varies – it gives White some good attacking chances.

If the reader wants to avoid the complications given in the next note, he can simply play 6. e3 here, as does Kasparov two moves later.

6. . . . Bc8

This retreat became the most common reply, once it was realized that White has nothing better than to play his knight

back to f3. 6. . . . Bd7 7. e4 is advantageous to White and 6. . . . Bg6 7. Nxc6 hxc6 8. e3 e6 is similar to the game.

Let us now examine two other possibilities:

- (i) 6. . . . Be6 7. e4 Na6 8. Be2 Nb4 9. 0-0 g6 10. Be3 Bg7 11. f4 h5 12. h3 Qd7 13. Nf3 Nh7 14. a5 f5 15. Nh4 Nd3 16. e5 and White stood better in Tolush – Bagirov, USSR 1960.
- (ii) 6. . . . Bg4 7. h3 Bh5 8. g4 Bg6 9. Nxc6 hxc6 10. Bg2 (after 10. e3 Black has 10. . . . e5 11. dxe5 Qxd1+ 12. Nxd1 Nxc4) 10. . . . e6 11. 0-0 Na6 12. e3 Nb4 13. Qe2 with better prospects for White once he has regained the c4 pawn e.g. 13. . . . Nd3?! 14. Bd2 (aiming to remove the knight's support by b3) 14. . . . Nxb2 15. Rfb1 Nd3 16. Rxb7 Nd5 17. Nxd5 cxd5 18. e4 dxe4 (18. . . . Be7 19. exd5 exd5 20. Bxd5) 19. Qxe4 Rc8 20. Rxa7 Be7 21. Qb7 with a clear advantage to White.

This is not the last word in the 6. . . . variation but the top players distrust it and Timman is no exception.

7. Nf3

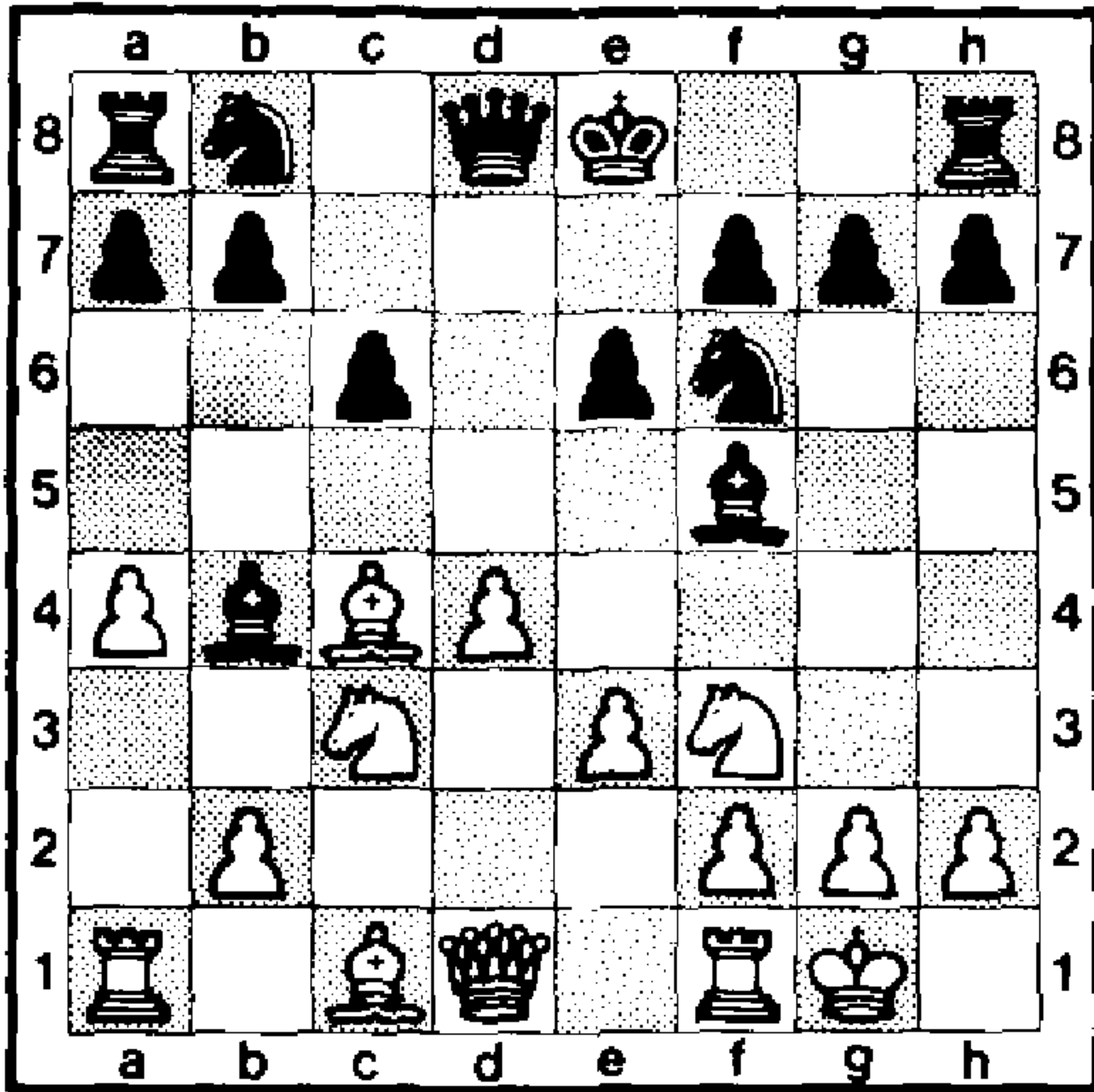
In the game Kasparov – Tal (World Cup, Reykjavik 1988), White tried instead 7. e3 but after 7. . . . e5 8. Bxc4 exd4 9. exd4 Be7 10. 0-0 Nd5 11. Re1 0-0 12. Nf3 Be6 13. Qb3 Na6 14. Bxd5 cxd5 15. Bd2 Nb4 16. Ne2 a5 17. Nf4 Bg4 18. Re3 Rc8 19. Bxb4 Bxb4 20. Qxd5 Qc7 Black had enough counterplay and drew in forty-two moves (see later).

7. . . . Bf5

Offering a tacit draw by repetition. However, Kasparov now reverts to the normal line.

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 8. e3 | e6 |
| 9. Bxc4 | Bb4 |

THE QUEEN'S GAMBIT



10. 0-0 Nbd7

The most usual move. Castling has lost popularity among the leading players, because after: 10. . . . 0-0 11. Nh4 Bg4 12. f3 Bh5 13. g4 Bg6 14. e4 Nbd7 15. g5

Ne8 16. Nxc6 hxc6 17. Be3 White's two bishops and spatial advantage make it difficult for Black to equalize.

A recent game **Tukmakov - Torre** (Biel 1988) went: 17. . . . Nc7 18. Qb3 Qe7 19. Kh1 c5 20. d5! Bxc3 (after 20. . . . exd5 21. Nxd5 Black's bishop on b4 is shut in behind its own pawns) 21. dxe6! Bd4 (21. . . . Nxe6 22. bxc3 Nxc3 23. Qxb7 is also very good for White) 22. exd7 Qxd7 23. Rad1 b6 24. Bxd4 cxd4 25. f4 Rad8 26. f5 Qc6 27. Qc2 Rd6 (not 27. . . . gxf5?? 28. Bxf7+ Rxf7 29. Qxc6) 28. Rxd4 gxf5 29. Rxf5 Ne6 30. Rxd6 Qxd6 (White is clearly better but the final moves were played in mutual time-trouble) 31. Qf2 Qd1+ 32. Qg1 Qc2 33. Bd5 g6 34. Rf6 Rd8 35. Qf1 Rxd5 36. exd5 Nxc3 37. Qg2 Qc1+ 38. Rf1 Qe3 39. d6 Ne6 40. Qf3 1-0

11. Qb3 a5

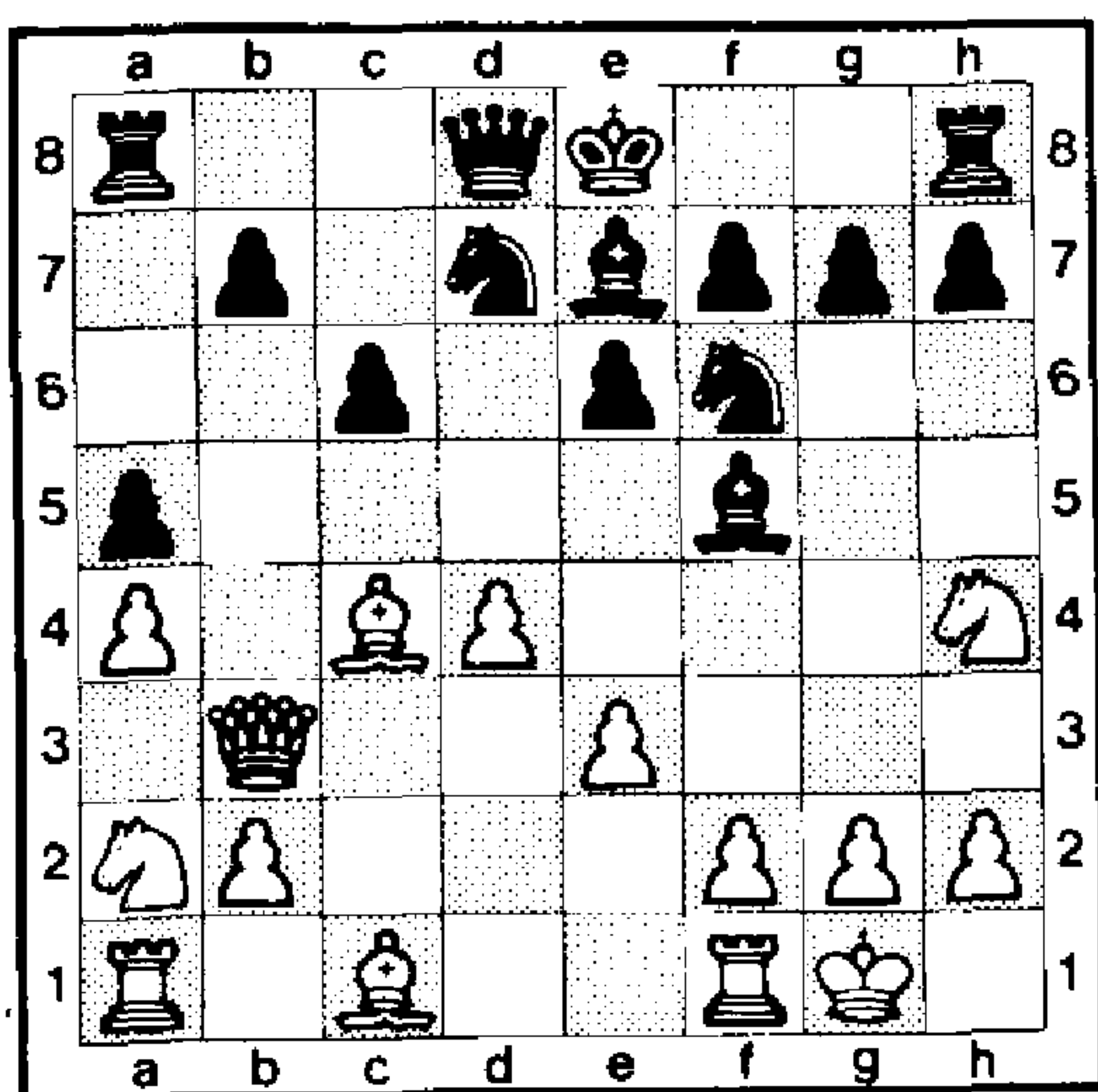


Kasparov and Timman analysing after the game.

12. Na2 Be7

13. Nh4

The pawn snatch by 13. Qxb7 allows Black to draw after 13. . . . Rb8 14. Qa6 Ra8 15. Qxc6 Rc8 16. Qb7 Rb8 17. Qa6 Ra8 18. Qc6 Rc8 (Smyslov – Flohr, USSR 1947).



13. . . . Bg6

The most commonly played move. The two alternatives are:

- (i) 13. . . . Bg4 14. f3 Nd5 15. fxg4 Bxh4 16. e4 N5b6 (the bishop is lost after both 16. . . . N5f6 17. g3 and 16. . . . Ne7 17. g3 Bf6 18. e5) 17. Bd3 Bf6 18. Be3 and the black knights have no good squares. A game Ivanov – Rjumin (USSR 1971) continued: 18. . . . 0-0 (18. . . . e5?? 19. g5 wins the bishop) 19. Nc3 Rb8 20. e5 Be7 21. Qc2 h6 (21. . . . g6 22. Bh6 Re8 23. Qf2) 22. Qd2 Nd5 23. Bxh6 and White's attack won for him.
- (ii) 13. . . . Be4 drew for Black in the game Kasparov – Nikolic (World Cup, Reykjavik 1988) but White could perhaps improve on this (see later).

14. g3

Kasparov always plays this move here, as the supplementary games reveal. The two ideas are to anticipate counter-play by Black down the h file in conjunction with . . . Qc7 and to vacate g2 for the regrouping manoeuvre Rd1 and Bf1-g2 in answer to a later . . . e5. We shall examine this in more detail in our notes to the next diagram.

14. . . . Qc7

See the supplementary games for 14. . . . Qc8 (Kasparov – Beliavsky) and 14. . . . Qb6 (Kasparov – Dolmatov, or, with Q side castling for Black, the instructive game Karolyi – Franke).

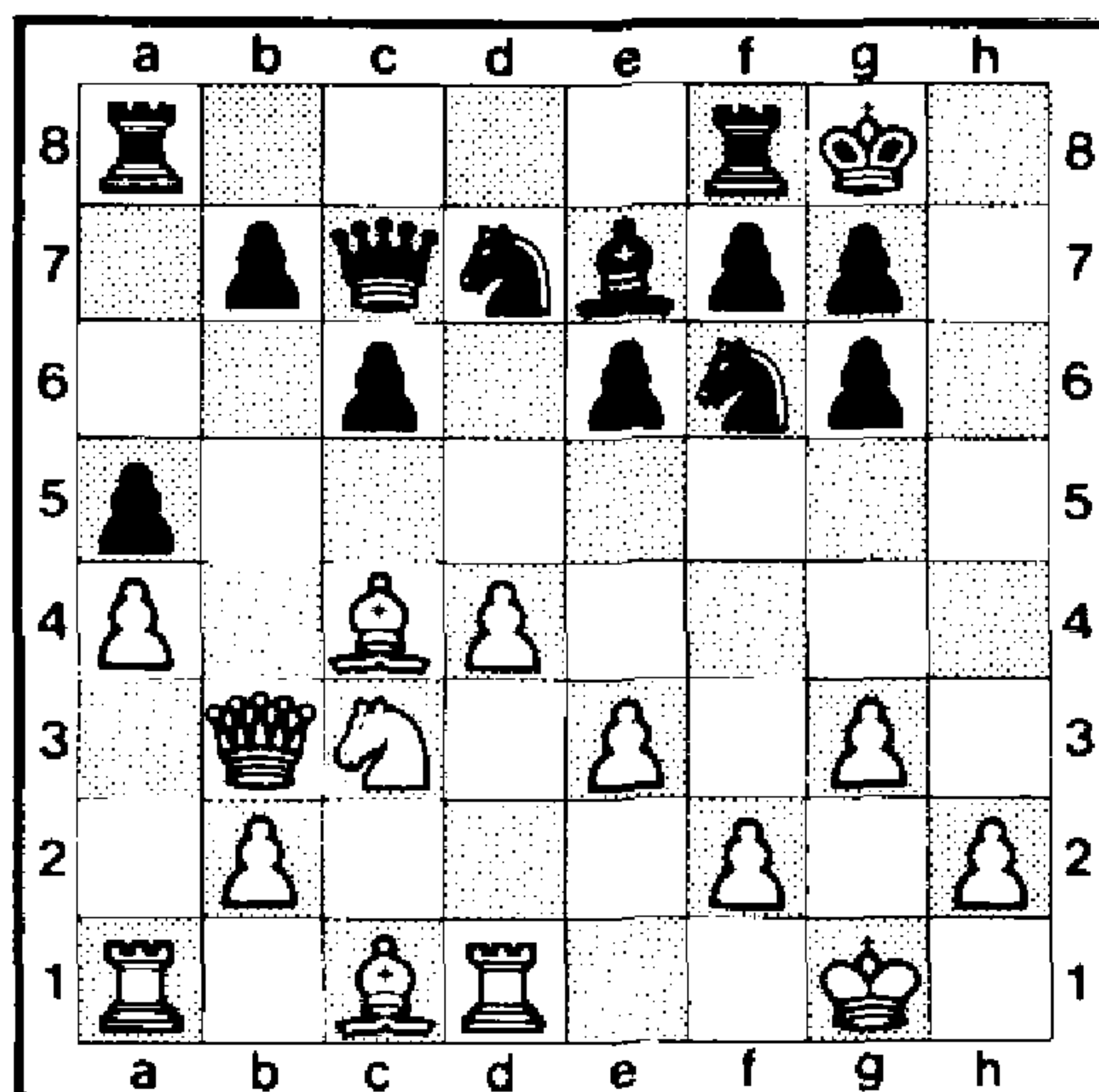
15. Nc3 0-0

16. Nxg6 hxg6

17. Rd1!

The immediate question is why White does not play the obvious 17. e4? In fact, the move would be premature, allowing 17. . . . Qb6! 18. Qxb6 (18. Be3 Ng4! or 18. Rd1 e5 19. dxe5 Ng4! are both satisfactory for Black) 18. . . . Nxb6 19. Bd3 Rfd8 20. Ne2 e5 or here 20. Be3?! Ng4.

17. Rd1 not only protects d4 but also



prepares to counter the freeing move 17. . . . e5 by playing 18. Bf1! exd4 19. exd4 with advantage to White according to Miles. Let us consider why this is so:

(i) 19. . . . Nb6 (before White can play Bg2 followed by d5) 20. Bf4! Qd8 (20. . . . Bd6?? would lose a piece) 21. d5!! Nfxd5 (21. . . . cxd5 22. Be3 Nbd7 23. Qxb7) 22. Nxd5 Nxd5 23. Qxb7 Qc8 (23. . . . Rc8 24. Bh3 or 23. . . . Qb6 24. Qxb6 Nxb6 25. Bg2 Rfc8 26. b3 and Rac1 +-) 24. Qxc8 Rfxc8 25. Be5 with the better ending after Bg2 and Rac1.

(ii) 19. . . . Rad8 20. Bf4 Bd6 (not 20. . . . Qb6? 21. Qxb6 Nxb6 22. Bc7) 21. Bg5 Nb6 22. Rac1 with advantage, since d4-d5 can no longer be prevented and 22. . . . Be7? allows White to win material by 23. Bf4 Bd6 24. Nb5.

Both of these are interesting examples of how to exploit the superior mobility of one's pieces. Now back to the game.

17. . . . Bb4

Still trying for . . . e5 by removing a guard from d5 after exchanging his bishop for the c3 knight.

18. Qc2 Rad8

The immediate 18. . . . e5 fails to 19. Qxg6.

19. Na2 Be7

20. Bd2

Kasparov is not interested in the bloodless draw by repetition after 20. Nc3 Bb4 21. Na2 etc.

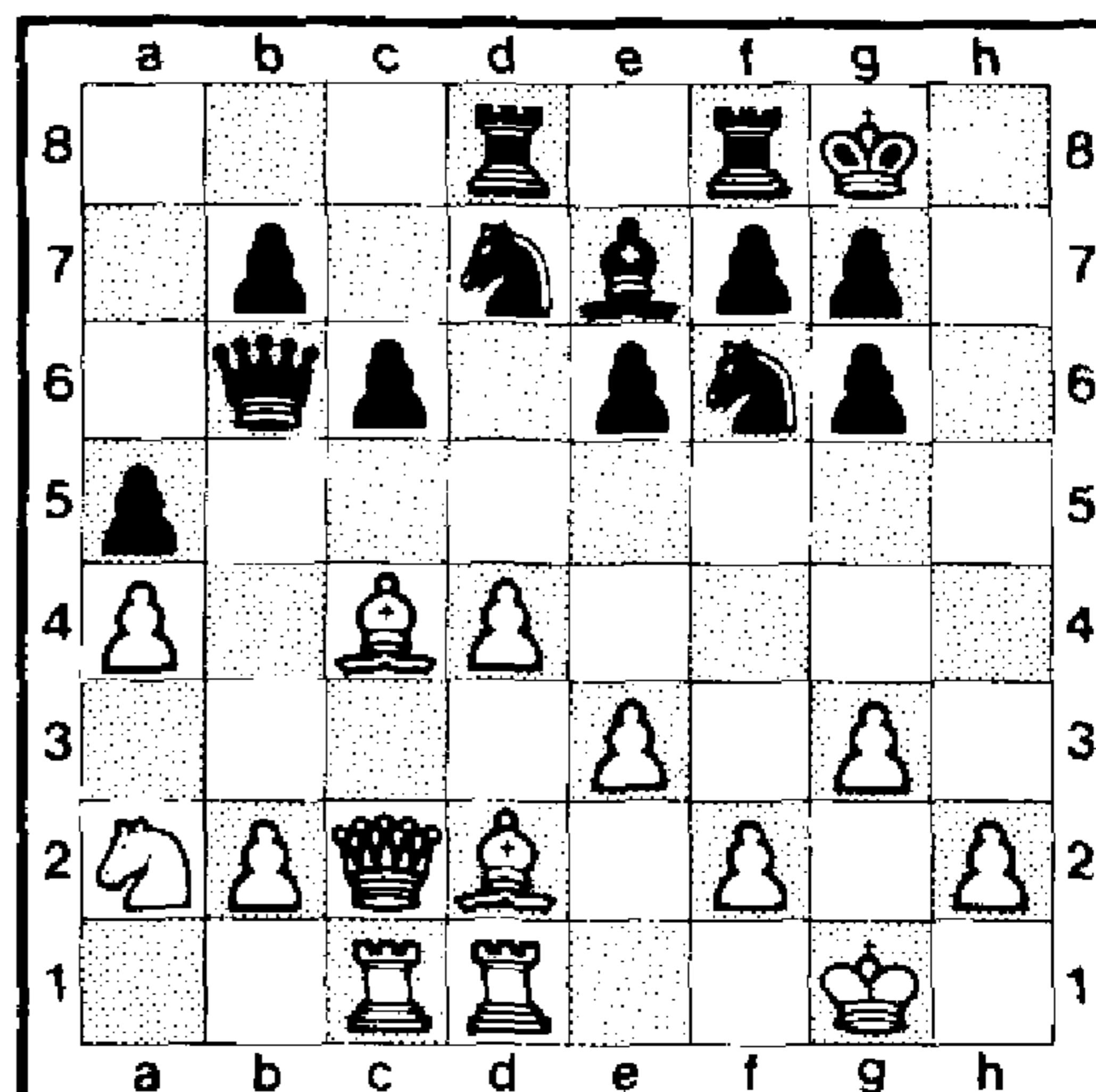
20. . . . Qb6

White's position is also more pleasant after 20. c5 21. Bb5.

21. Rac1 (see diagram above)

21. . . . Nd5

Black has no joy with this manoeuvre but 21. . . . c5 22. Bb5 leaves his knight on d7 badly placed and his KR out of play. Note



that 22. . . . cxd4 23. exd4 Qxd4? loses to 24. Bxa5.

22. e4 N5f6

Perhaps Black originally intended 22. . . . Nb4 but after 23. Nxb4 Bxb4 24. Be3 (threatening d5) he is in trouble. If then 24. . . . Qc7 White can either quietly strengthen his position by f4 and Bf3 or else immediately open up the centre with 25. d5 exd5 26. exd5 cxd5 27. Bxd5 Qxc2 28. Rxc2 Nf6 29. Bf3 Rxd1+ 30. Bxd1 Nd5 31. Bg5! and 32. Bf3.

23. Be2

So that Be3 cannot be answered by . . . Ng4. The d4 pawn still cannot be captured because of Bxa5.

23. . . . e5

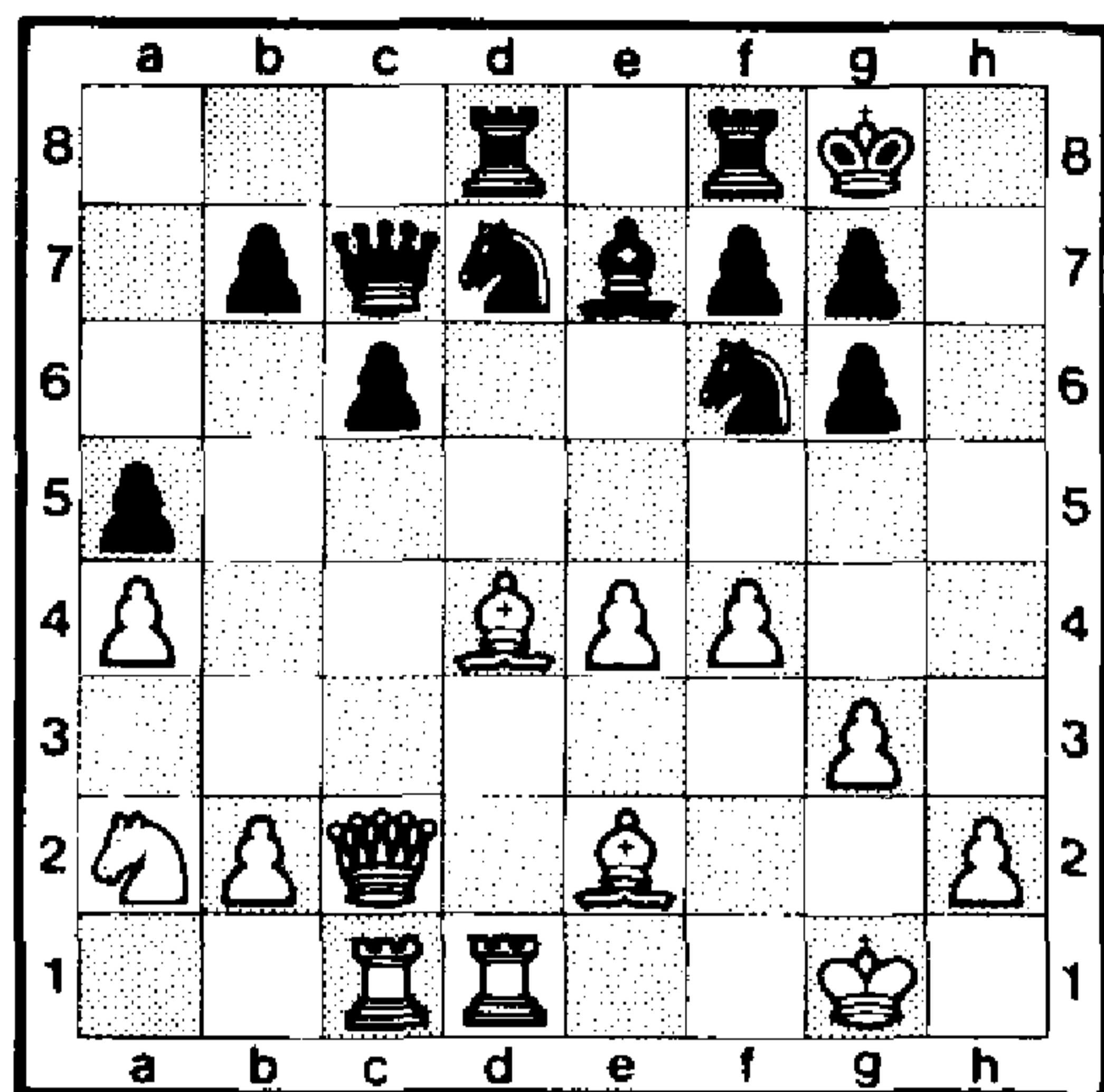
Nor would 23. . . . c5 24. Be3 bring Black any relief; the threat of dxc5 forces 24. . . . Rc8 (24. . . . cxd4?? 25. Bxd4 wins at once) 25. d5 exd5 26. exd5 when the plan of Nc3 followed by Nb5 is very powerful.

24. Be3 exd4

25. Bxd4 Qc7

26. f4

The opening phase is over and White's bishop pair combined with his spatial



advantage give him a clear plus. Nor is Black's king safe e.g. 26. . . . Rfe8 27. Bc4 Bf8 (27. . . . Nb6 28. Bxf7+ Kxf7 29. Qb3+ wins at least a pawn) 28. e5 Nh7 (28. . . . Nd5?? 29. Bxd5) 29. e6 fxe6 30. Qxg6 with a strong attack.

26. . . . g5?

This bold attempt at counter-play is energetically refuted.

27. e5

Much better than 27. fxg5 Nh7.

27. . . . Nd5

28. Qe4

Threatening both Qxd5 and also 29. Bd3 g6 30. f5.

28. . . . N7b6

29. Bd3 g6

30. f5 f6

Otherwise White breaks through with fxg6.

31. fxg6 f5

32. Qe2 Kg7

33. Qh5

According to Kasparov, 33 Bb1 (preventing Black's thirty-fourth move, was even stronger.

33. . . . Rh8

34. Qf3 Nf4!?

35. Bxf5

Naturally avoiding 35. gxf4 Rxd4.

35. . . . Rxd4

Or 35. . . . Nxg6 36. Qe4 winning for White.

36. Rxd4 Qxe5

37. Re4 Bc5+

38. Kh1 Qxf5

39. gxf4 Bd6

40. Qc3+ Kxg6

41. Qd3

Threatening 42. Re6+

41. . . . Be7

42. fxg5

Better than 42. Re6+ Bf6.

42. . . . Qd5

42. . . . Bxg5 fails to 43 Re6+ Bf6 44. Rg1+

43. Qe2

Rather than exchanging queens into an end-game, White launches a strong attack on the exposed enemy king.

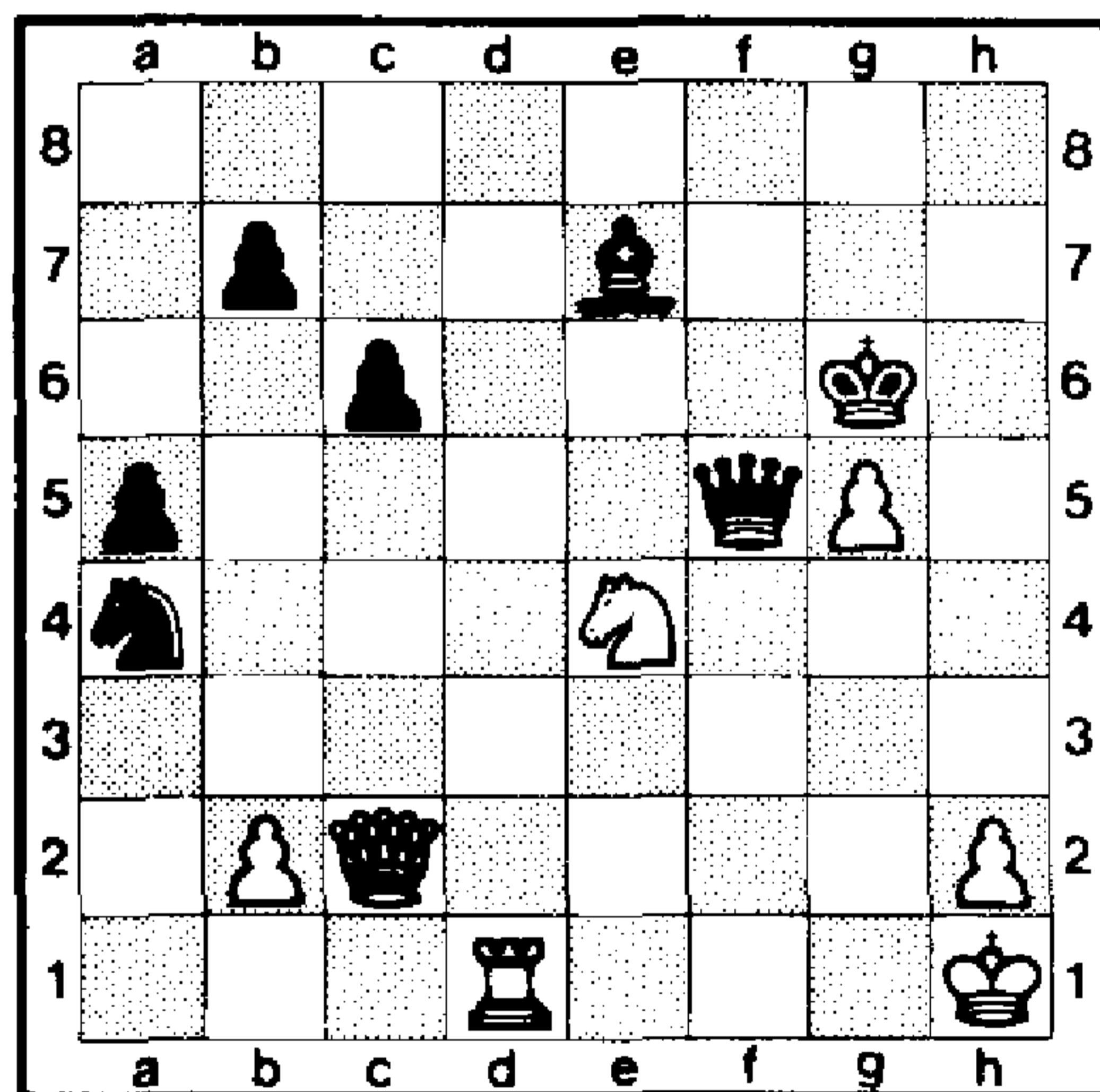
43. . . . Rh4

44. Nc3 Rxe4

45. Nxe4 Nxa4

46. Rd1 Qe6

47. Qc2 Qf5



The last trick, but Black only has a few spite checks as a reward. If instead he plays 47. . . . Nb6 48. Nc5+ Qf5 the ending is easily won after 49. Qxf5+ Kxf5 50. Nxb7 a4 51. Rc1 Bxg5 52. Rxc6 Be3 53. Nc5 etc. **48. Qxa4 Qf3+ 49. Kg1 Qg4+ 50. Kf2 Qf4+ 51. Ke2 Qg4+ 52. Kd3 Bb4 53. Qc2 Qf3+ 54. Kd4 Kg7 55. Ke5** **1-0**

Supplementary Material

G Kasparov – S Conquest

(Simultaneous, London 1984)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nf3 Nf6 4. Nc3 dxc4 5. a4 Bg4 6. Ne5 Bh5 7. f3 Nfd7 8. Nxc4 e5 9. Ne4 Bb4+ 10. Bd2 Qe7 11. Bxb4 Qxb4+ 12. Qd2 Qxd2+ 13. Kxd2 exd4 14. Ned6+ Ke7 15. Nxb7 Na6 16. Nba5 Nb4 17. Ra3 Nc5 18. e3 dxe3+ 19. Rxe3+ Kf6 20. g4 Rad8+ 21. Ke2 Bg6 22. h4 h5 23. g5+ Kf5 24. Nb7 Rd4 25. Kf2 Rxc4 26. Kg3 Rxh4 27. Rxh4 Nxb7 28. Rxb4 **1-0**

G Kasparov – S Dolmatov

(USSR Championship 1981)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nf3 Nf6 4. Nc3 dxc4 5. a4 Bf5 6. e3 e6 7. Bxc4 Bb4 8. 0-0 Nbd7 9. Qb3 a5 10. Na2 Be7 11. Nh4 Bg6 12. g3 Qb6 13. Nc3 Qxb3 14. Bxb3 Bd3 15. Rd1 Be4 16. Nxe4 Nxe4 17. f3 Nd6 18. e4 g5 19. Ng2 h5 20. Ne3 c5 21. dxc5 Nxc5 22. Bc2 Nd7 23. b3 f6 24. Kg2 Ne5 25. Bb2 Kf7 26. Rd2 Rad8 27. Rad1 b6 28. Bd4 Nc8 29. f4 gxf4 30. gxf4 Rhg8+ 31. Kf2 Ng4+ 32. Nxc4 Rxc4 33. Kf3 Rdg8 34. Bf2 e5 35. fxe5 fxe5 36. Bg3 Rf8 37. Kg2 h4 38. Rf1+ Ke8 39. Rxf8+ Kxf8 40. Kf3 Rg5 41. Bxh4 Rh5 42. Bg3 Na7 43. Rf2 Kg7 44. h4 Nc6 45. Kg4 Rh8 46. Bd3 **1-0**

G Kasparov – P Nikolic

(World Cup, Reykjavik 1988)

1. d4 d5 2. Nf3 Nf6 3. c4 dxc4 4. Nc3 c6 5. a4 Bf5 6. e3 e6 7. Bxc4 Bb4 8. 0-0

Nbd7 9. Qb3 a5 10. Na2 Be7 11. Nh4 Be4 12. Nc3 Nb6 13. Be2 0-0 14. Nxe4 Nxe4 15. Nf3 Nd5 16. Qxb7 Nb4 17. Ne5 Rc8 (there is no draw to be had after 17. . . . Rb8 18. Qd7) 18. Bf3 (this eventually leads to a draw, so 18. Qd7!? is worth considering) 18. . . . Ng5 19. Bd2 (not 19. Bxc6? f6 or 19. Nxc6?? Nxf3+) 19. . . . Nxf3+ 20. gxf3 Bd6 21. Bxb4 Qg5+ 22. Kh1 Bxe5! 23. dxe5 (or 23. Bxf8 Qh5 as in the game) 23. . . . Qh5 24. Bxf8 Qxf3+ **1/2-1/2**

G Kasparov – A Beliavsky

(Team Championship, Moscow 1981)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nf3 Nf6 4. Nc3 dxc4 5. a4 Bf5 6. e3 e6 7. Bxc4 Bb4 8. 0-0 Nbd7 9. Qb3 a5 10. Na2 Be7 11. Nh4 Bg6 12. g3 Qc8 13. Nc3 0-0 14. Nxc4 hxg6 15. Rd1 e5 16. Bf1 Bb4 17. Bg2 Re8 (17. . . . exd4 18. exd4 Nb6 19. Bg5) 18. Na2 Bf8 19. Bd2 g5?! (19. . . . Qc7! gave better equalising chances) 20. Rac1 g4 21. Nc3 Qb8 22. Qc2 Qa7 23. d5 cxd5 24. Nxd5 Nxd5 25. Bxd5 Nf6 26. Ba2 b6 27. Qf5 Qb7 28. Bc3 Qf3 29. Qxf3 gxf3 30. g4 Nxc4 31. Rd7 Nh6 32. Bd5 Rac8 33. Bxf3 Bb4 34. Bd5 Red8 35. Rxd8+ Rxd8 36. e4 Rc8 37. f3 Bd6 38. Kf2 Kf8 39. Ke2 f6 40. h4 Nf7 41. Kd3 Ke8 42. Rg1 Kf8 43. Rb1 Nh8 44. h5 Nf7 45. b4 axb4 46. Bxb4 Rd8 47. Bxd6+?! (even stronger is 47. Kc4! Ng5 48. Kb5 Nxf3 49. Kxb6 Rb8+ 50. Bb7) 47. . . . Rxd6 48. Kc4 Ng5 49. Rb3 f5 50. Kb5 f4 51. Ka6 Ke7 52. Kb7 Rh6 53. Rxb6 Rxb6+ 54. Kxb6 Nxf3 55. a5 Nd2 56. a6 f3 57. a7 f2 58. a8(Q) f1(Q) 59. Kc7 Qc1+ 60. Bc6 Nxe4 61. Qe8+ Kf6 62. Qg6+ Ke7 63. Qxg7+ Ke6 64. Qg4+ Kf7 65. Qg6+ Kf8 66. h6 **1-0**

T Karolyi – H Franke

(Budapest 1988)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nf3 Nf6 4. Nc3 dxc4

5. a4 Bf5 6. e3 e6 7. Bxc4 Bb4 8. 0-0 Nbd7 9. Nh4 Bg6 10. Qb3 Qb6 11. g3 a5 12. Nxg6 hxg6 13. Rd1 0-0-0 14. h4 Qc7 15. e4 Bxc3 16. bxc3 Nxe4 17. Bf4 Nd6 18. Bxe6 fxe6 19. Qxe6 Rhe8 20. Qxd6 Qxd6 21. Bxd6 Re6 22. Bf4 Nb6 23. Be5 Rd7 24. f4 Kd8 25. Kf2 Ke8 26. Ke2 Kf7 27. Rdb1 Nd5 28. Kd3 Re8 29. c4 Nb4+ 30. Kc3 Ke6 31. g4 Rh8 32. Rh1 Rf7 33. Rh2 Kd7 34. Rah1 b5 35. axb5 cxb5 36. cxb5 Nd5+ 37. Kb3 Rc8 38. Ra1 Ke6 39. Rxa5 Rb7 40. Rc2 **1-0**

3. The Semi-Slav Defence (... e6/ ... c6)

The Semi-Slav is a mixture of the Orthodox and Slav systems, with Black playing an early ... c6 and ... e6. It is usually produced by the opening sequence: 1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 (a Slav!) 3. Nf3 (or 3. Nc3 which normally just transposes) 3. ... Nf6 4. Nc3 and now, instead of 4. ... dxc4 giving us the pure Slav, the move 4. ... e6 produces the Semi-Slav.

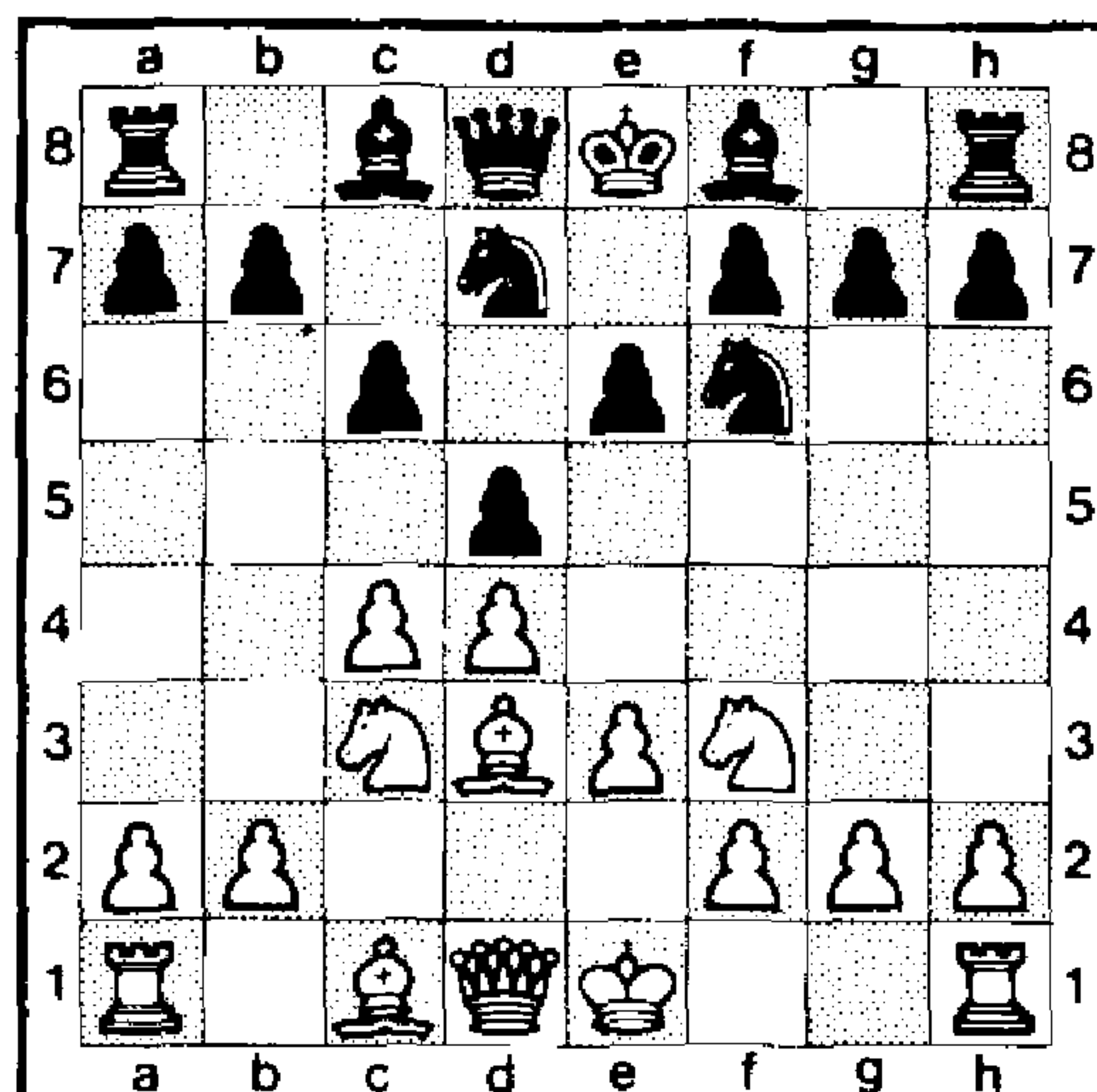
G Kasparov – J Van der Wiel (Brussels 1987)

1. d4	d5
2. c4	c6
3. Nc3	Nf6
4. e3	e6
5. Nf3	Nbd7
6. Bd3	

In both the Kasparov games we quote, his opponents reply 6. ... Bb4. This is not the usual continuation but allows us to examine ways of handling some typical structures of the Queen's Gambit.

6. ... Bb4
(see diagram above)

Many of your opponents will play 6. ... dxc4 7. Bxc4 b5 here, the so-called



Meran variation, but until someone decides to play the line against Kasparov, perhaps in time for the second edition of this book, we shall have to quote other instructive examples chosen on the following basis:

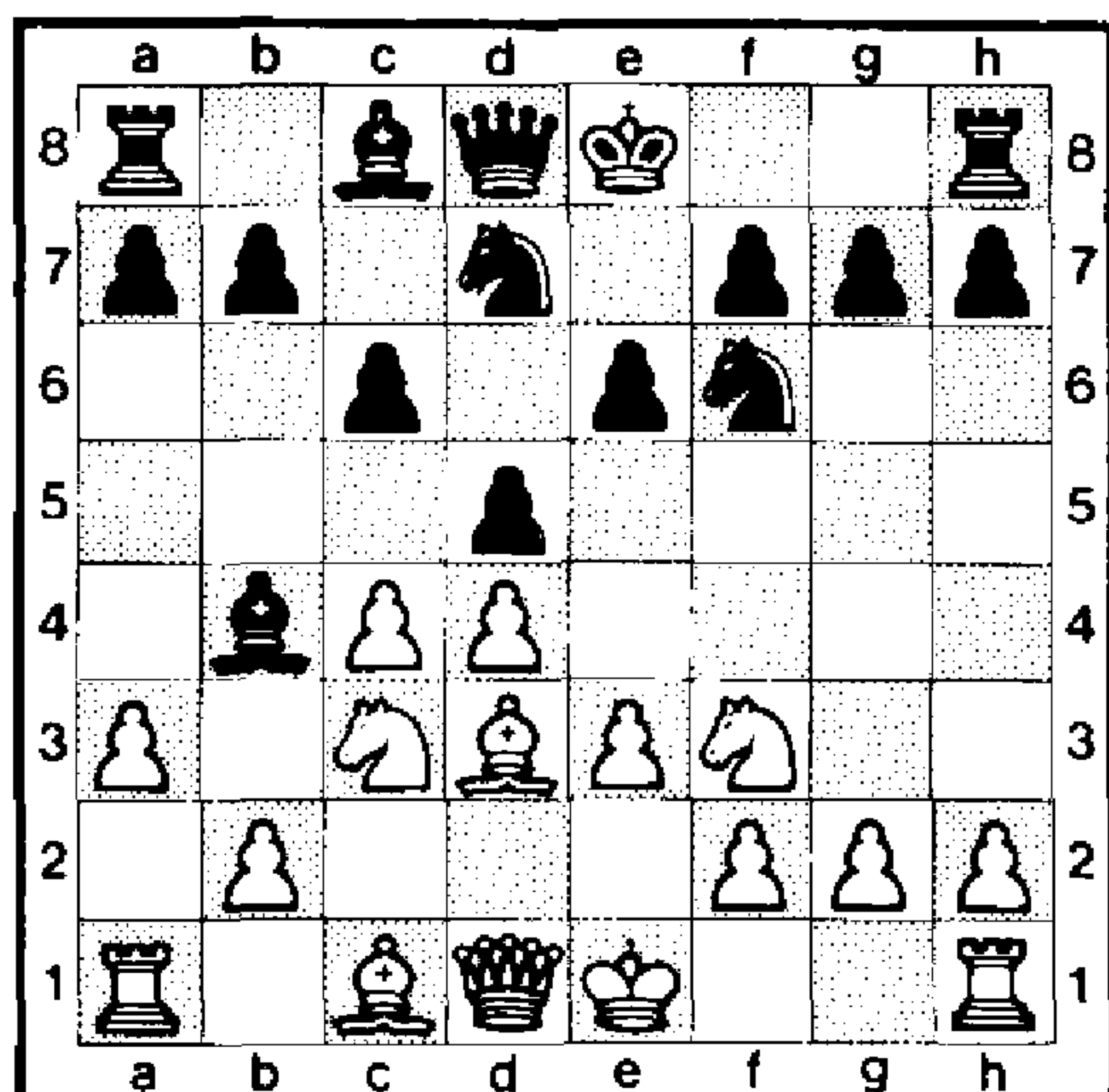
- (i) After 8. Bb3 (Larsen-Petersson) or 8. Be2 (Christiansen-Flear/Piket-Van't Hof) the position is clearer from White's point of view than after 8. Bd3. Moreover, there are far fewer variations to be learnt, an economical, time-saving factor that appears like a red flag throughout this book.
- (ii) Both these players with White have a similar playing style to Kasparov's, which means we can bank on the World Champion choosing one of these methods if confronted with the system. If I were a betting man I'd give 3:1 odds on it ...

Coming back to the actual games played by Kasparov, we must ask ourselves the purpose of ... Bb4. By putting pressure on c3, Black temporarily prevents e4 which would give White a foot-hold in the centre and activate his QB (heading

THE QUEEN'S GAMBIT

perhaps for g5). Kasparov's next move forces Black to declare his intentions.

7. a3



The exchange on c3 would only help White, since he can easily eliminate his doubled pawns by cxd5 and remain with a useful pair of bishops. Play might go: 7. . . . Bxc3+ 8. bxc3 0-0 9. Qc2 Re8 10. cxd5 exd5 11. Ng5 h6 (or 11. . . . g6 12. h4 intending 13. h5 Nxh5 14. Nxh7) 12. Nh3 Nf8 13. Nf4 Ne6 14. Ne2 followed by 0-0 and f3 preparing to open up the game for the two bishops. Of course, other plans are possible too, such as 11. Nd2 to become active in the centre by playing e4 after due preparation with 0-0, Re1 and f3.

7. . . . Ba5

In some games, the bishop has been played to d6 in order to capture on c4 followed by . . . e5. White obtains a free hand in the centre after a rapid e4 (see the supplementary games Kasparov-Hübner and Speelman-Kalinin). The retreat to a5 maintains the pressure on c3, preparing to answer e4 with . . . Bxc3.

8. 0-0 0-0

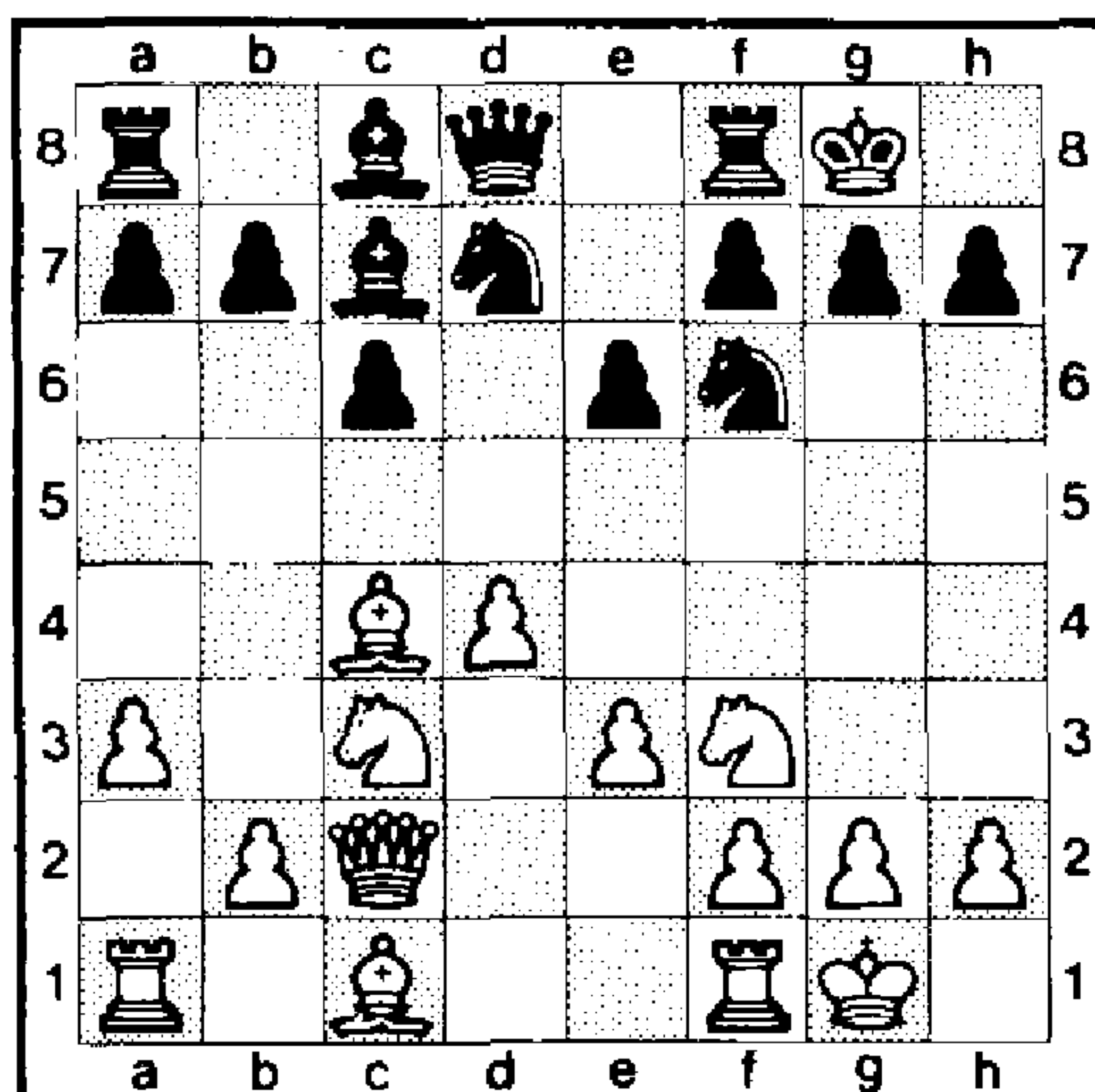
9. Qc2

Controlling e4.

9. . . . dxc4

In the game Korchnoi-Hübner, Black played here 9. . . . Qe7, when White changed plans by exchanging on d5 and playing on the Q side. This game is well worth playing through, but White has the equally good alternatives of playing 10. Bd2 or simply 10. e4, according to taste.

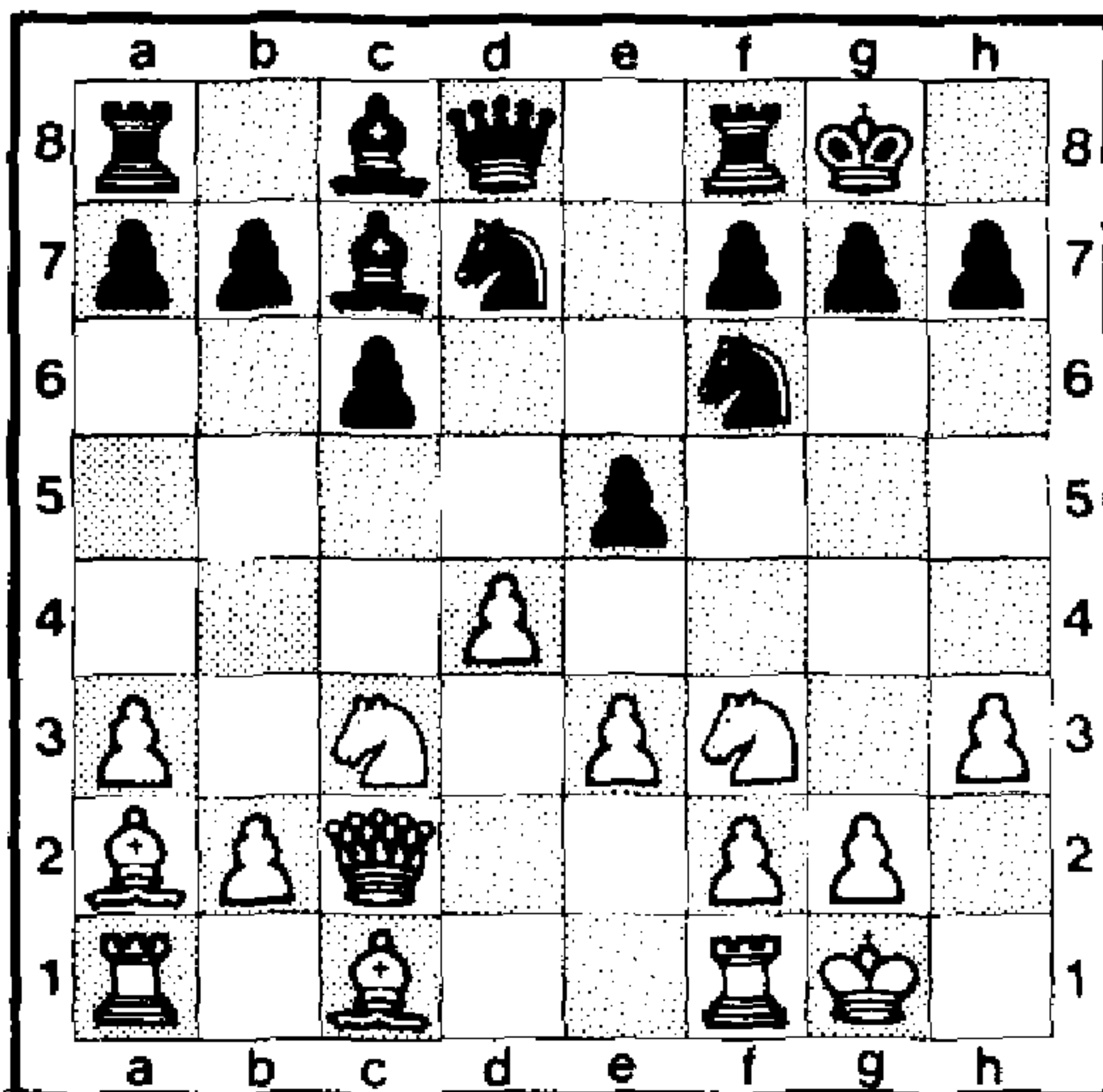
10. Bxc4 Bc7



Now Black's intended . . . e5, opening up the QB's diagonal, can no longer be prevented. This simple plan of active defence has to be taken seriously, as can be seen from the way in which Black can comfortably equalize after the obvious 11. e4 e.g. 11. . . . e5 12. Rd1 (White can rapidly go downhill! if he is not careful: 12. d5?! Nb6 13. Bb3 cxd5 followed by . . . e4 and attacking chances with . . . Ng4. Or 12. Bg5? exd4 13. Nxd4? Ne5 wins a piece) 12. . . . Qe7 and Black obtains active piece play after . . . exd4, . . . Nb6 and various tactical possibilities such as

13. Bg5 exd4 14. Nxd4? (14. Rxd4 Ne5 threatening ... Nxf3+ and ... Qe5) 14. ... Bxh2+ 15. Kxh2 Ng4+ and 16. ... Qxg5. It is rare to find a situation in which such reasonable looking moves as 11. e4 and 13. Bg5 bring no joy to White. Kasparov's prophylactic set-up is typical of the modern approach to this system.

11. Ba2! e5
12. h3!



White's last two moves are the result of some thorough analysis based on the characteristics of this position. As we saw in our last note, the e5 square plays a great part in Black's defence, since he can use it as a pivot point for his manoeuvres. For this reason, White leaves his pawn on e3 in order to recapture on d4 with a pawn, preventing occupation of both e5 and c5 and thus making it difficult for Black to develop his QB by moving the knight on d7. It is in fact almost impossible for Black to make progress without moving this knight e.g. 12. ... c5 13. Nb5 b6 (or 13. ... Bd6? 14. Rd1; or 13. ... Bb6 14. dxe5) 14. Nxc7

Qxc7 15. dxc5 Nxc5 16. b4 Ne6 17. Qxc7 Nxc7 18. Nxe5 winning a pawn. Or 12. ... exd4 13. exd4 c5 14. Bg5 (the result of Black's pawn exchange in the centre) and after Rad1 and Rfe1, all with gain of time, White has a winning position with the immediate threat of Bxf6 followed by Nd5. This leaves us with the plan of exchanging pawns in the centre followed by ... Nb6, but the moves Ba2 (preventing gain of time by ... Nb6) and h3 (preventing a possible ... Bg4) have deliberately catered for this continuation e.g. 12. ... exd4 13. exd4 Nb6 (after 13. ... h6 White smashes through with 14. Bxh6!! gxh6 15. Qg6+ Kh8 16. Qxh6+ followed by Ng5, Nce4 etc) 14. Bg5! threatening to break up Black's K side by Ne4 and Nxf6+. Play might then go:

- (i) 14. ... h6 15. Bh4 (even 15. Bxh6 gxh6 16. Qg6+ is still possible, but the text is clearer) 15. ... Nbd5 (15. ... g5? 16. Qg6+ Kh8 17. Qxh6+ wins) 16. Bxd5! cxd5 17. Bxf6 gxf6 (17. ... Qxf6?? 18. Nxd5) 18. Nxd5; or here 15. ... Qd6 16. Nb5! cxb5 17. Bg3 followed by 18. Bxc7 with a clear advantage to White. And so, avoiding ... h6, we have:
- (ii) 14. ... Qd6 15. Rc1 (threatening Nb5) 15. ... a6 16. Rfe1 Nbd5 (or 16. ... Bd7 17. Ne5; note that 16. ... Be6 fails to 17. Bxf6 Bxa2 18. Be5!) 17. Na4 and after Nc5 and Ne5 Black has a depressingly cramped position.

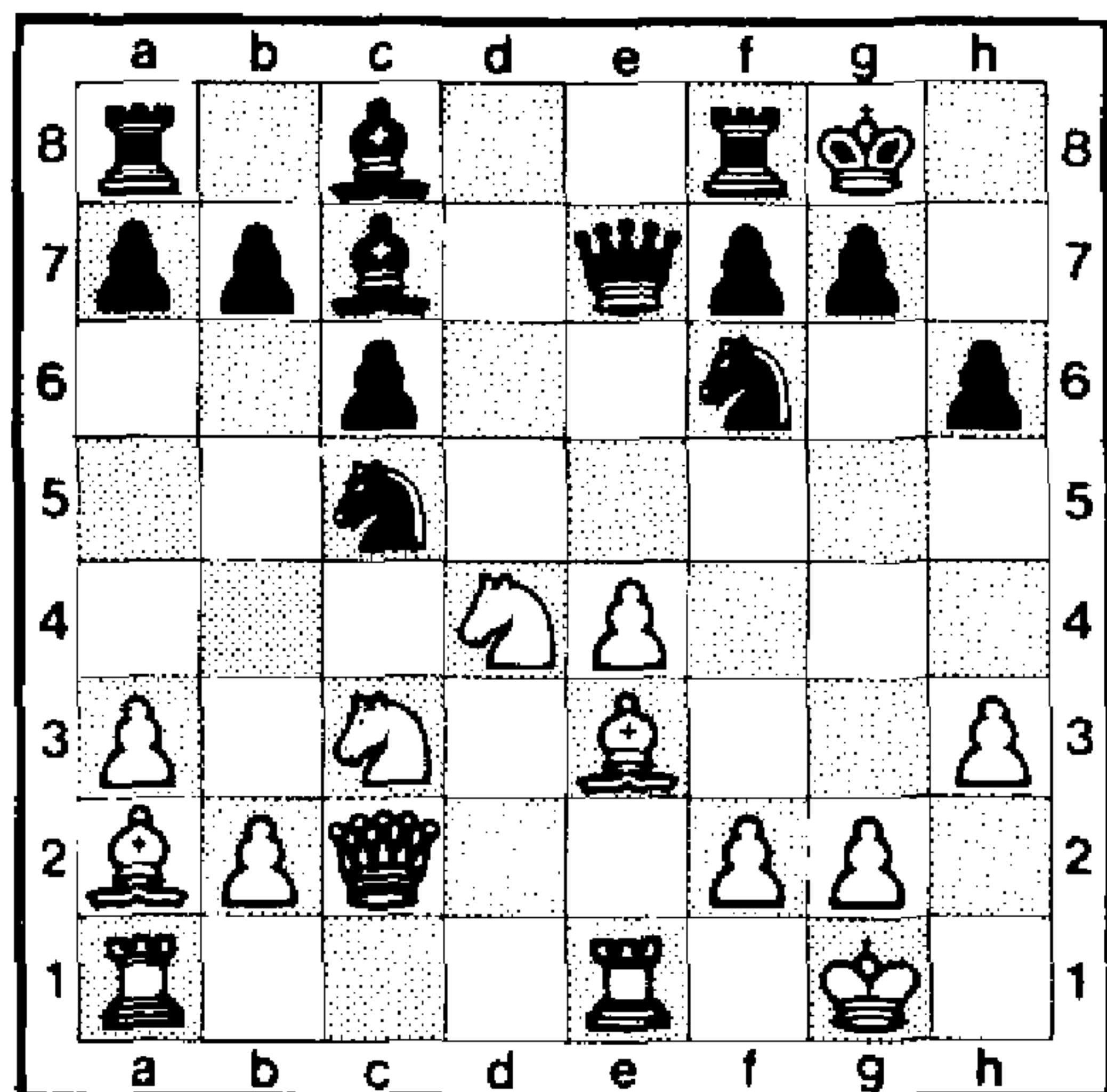
12. ... h6

After seeing the effect of Bg5 in the above variations, we can well understand the reasoning behind this move.

13. e4 Re8?!

After the game, both players agreed that this move is the root cause of Black's subsequent troubles. The least evil is 13.

... exd4 14. Nxd4 Nc5 15. Be3 Qe7 16. Rfe1 although even here White stands better (f4 and e5 are in prospect)



We will dwell a while on this position because this kind of situation frequently occurs in various lines of the Queen's Gambit. It is instructive to consider the tactical possibilities after Black captures on e4:

- (i) 16... Nfxe4? 17. Nxe4 Nxe4 (17... Qxe4?? 18. Qxc5) 18. Bd2 Qd6 19. Qxe4 Qh2+ 20. Kf1 Bd7 (intending ... Rae8) 21. Nf3 with a material advantage.
- (ii) 16... Ncxe4 17. Bd2 Qd6 (17... Qe5?? 18. Nf3) 18. Nxe4 and now:
 - a) 18... Qxd4 19. Bc3 Qd8 (19... Qb6?? 20. Nxf6+ followed by mate in two) 20. Nxf6+ gxf6 21. Qg6+ Kh8 22. Bxf6+ winning quickly.
 - b) 18... Qh2+ 19. Kf1 Qh1+ 20. Ke2 Qxg2 21. Nxf6+ gxf6 (21... Kh8 22. Qh7 mate) 22. Rg1 Bg4+ (22... Re8+ 23. Kd3 winning the

queen) 23. Kd3! Qxf2 24. Rxc4+ Kh8 25. Bxh6 etc.

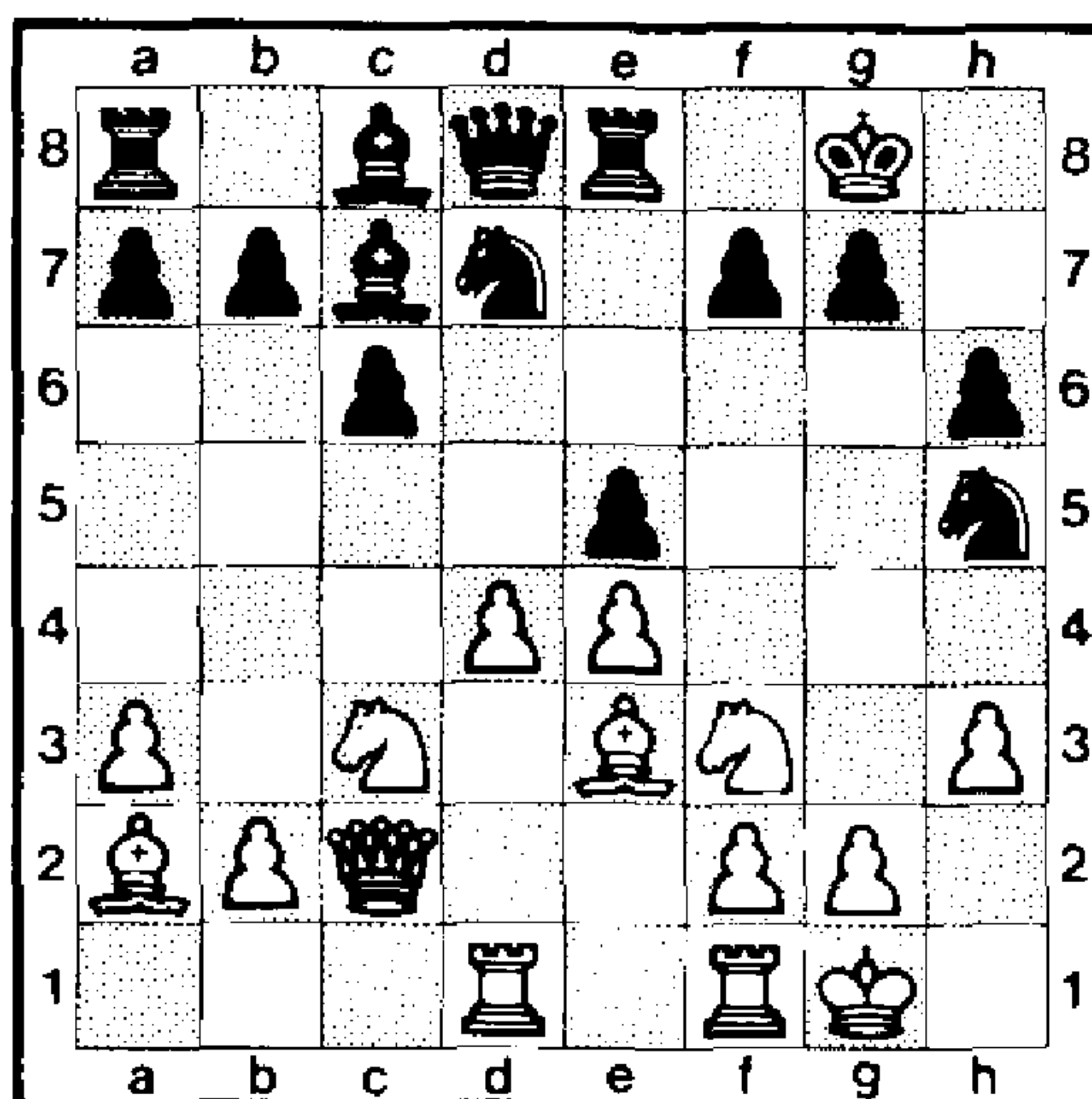
- c) 18... Qh2+ 19. Kf1 Nxe4 20. Qxe4 Bd7 21. Nf3 transposing to variation A; play might go 21... Qh1+ 22. Ke2 Qxg2 23. Rg1 Qxh3 24. Bc3!! winning easily e.g. 24... g5 25. Qg6 mate; or 24... Rae8 25. Rxc4+ Kh8 26. Rh7+ Kg8 27. Rh8 mate; or 24... Rfe8 25. Rxc4+ Kf8 26. Rxf7+ Kg8 26. Rxd7+ Kf8 28. Bg7 mate; or 24... Bg4 25. Rxc4 etc.

After this tactical excursion, let us return to the game.

14. Be3 Nh5?

Black imagines tactical possibilities on the K side involving ... Qh4 and ... Nf4 after the exchange of central pawns, but it is only a pipe-dream. It was easy to play 14... Qe7 15. Rfe1 in the spirit of the variations mentioned (Larsen).

15. Rad1



15... exd4

The immediate 15... Nf4 fails to 16. dxe5 when the pin on the d file means

that Black cannot reply 16. . . . Nxe5 saving his knight. This leads us to the idea of 15. . . . Qf6 preparing . . . Nf4, but this removes the guard on his KB allowing 16. Nd5! cxd5 17. Qxc7 dxe4 18. Nxe5 exploiting White's better development (Larsen) e.g. 18. . . . Nxe5 (18. . . . Re7 19. Ng4 Qh4 20. Qd8+ Kh7 21. Bxf7! wins) 19. dxe5 Rxe5 (19. . . . Qxe5 20 Bxf7+ or 19. . . . Qe7 20. Qxe7 Rxe7 21. Rd8+ Kh7 22. Rc1 or 19. . . . Qg6! 20. Rd6!) 20. Rd8+ Kh7 21. Bd4 winning.

16. Bxd4!

Better than 16. Nxd4 Qh4

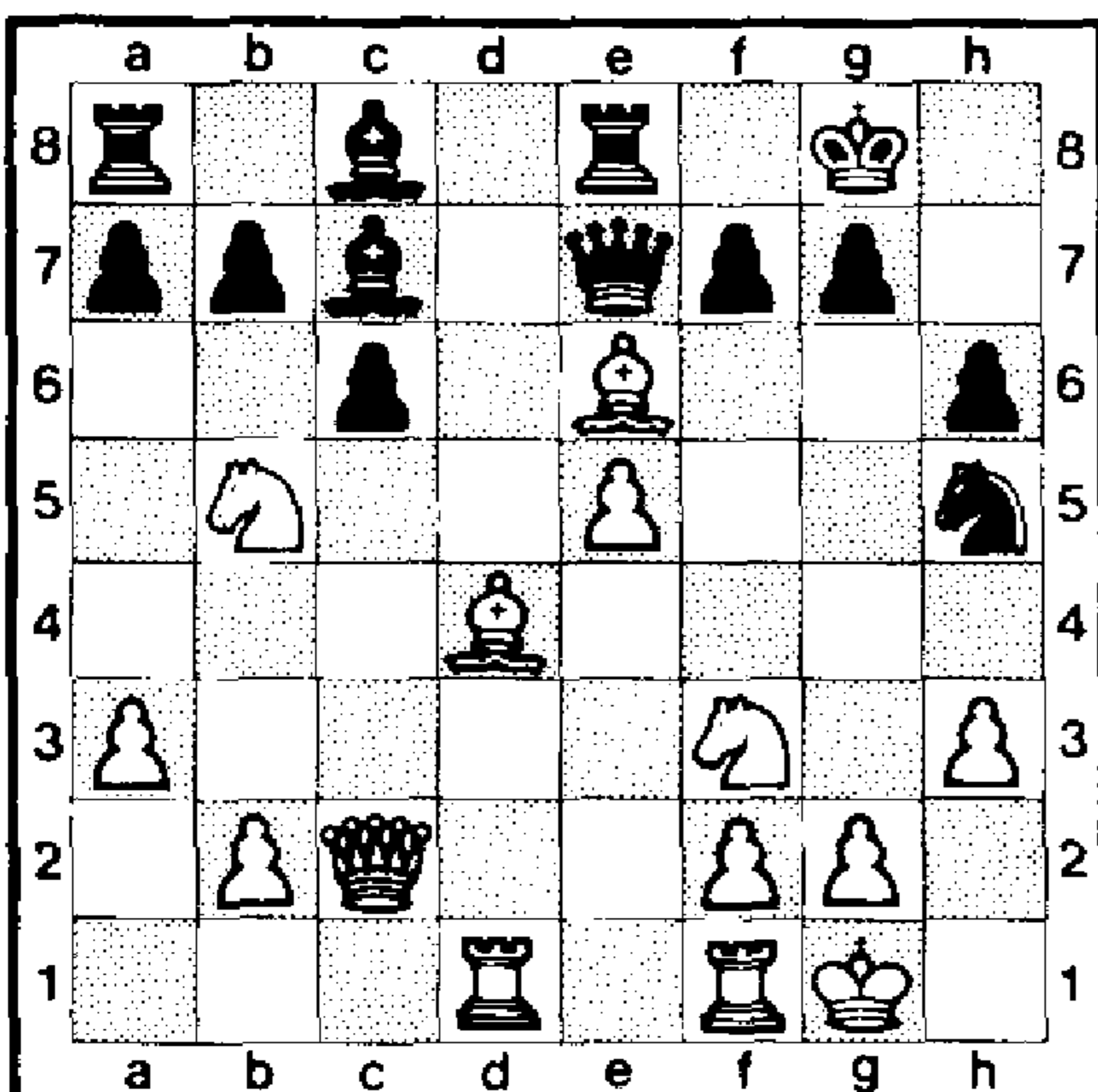
16. . . . Qe7
17. e5! Nf8?!

Another mistake in a bad position. He had to play 17. . . . Nf4 18. Nb5 Bb8 19. Nd6 Bxd6 20. exd6 with advantage to White.

18. Nb5! Ne6

Black loses immediately after 18. . . . cxb5 19. Bc5!

19. Bxe6!



A surprising but logical exchange of his powerful bishop, but only because Black

is forced to block in his QB. If 19. . . . Bxe6? 20. Bc5 is curtains and 19. . . . Qxe6? allows 20. Nxc7. The only valid alternative is 19. . . . cxb5 20. Ba2 Bb6 (otherwise Bc5 is again playable and 20. . . . b6 loses to 21. Qe4 Rb8 22. g4 Bb7 23. Qe3) 21. Bxb6 axb6 22. Rd4 (threatening g4) when 22. . . . g6 fails to 23. Qxg6+ etc.

19. . . . fxe6
20. Nxc7 Qxc7
21. Qg6 Qf7
22. Qxf7+ Kxf7
23. Be3

White encircles the knight. If now 23. . . . g5 24. Rd6 Ng7 25. g4 followed by 26. Rfd1 leaves Black tied hand and foot, so Van der Wiel tries a few tricks.

23. . . . Rf8
24. Rd4!

Although Black is still worse after 24. g4 Kg8 25. Kg2 (25. gxh5 Rxf3) 25. . . . Nf4+ 26. Bxf4 (26. Kg3 Nd5) 26. . . . Rxf4, he would not collapse so catastrophically as after Kasparov's move.

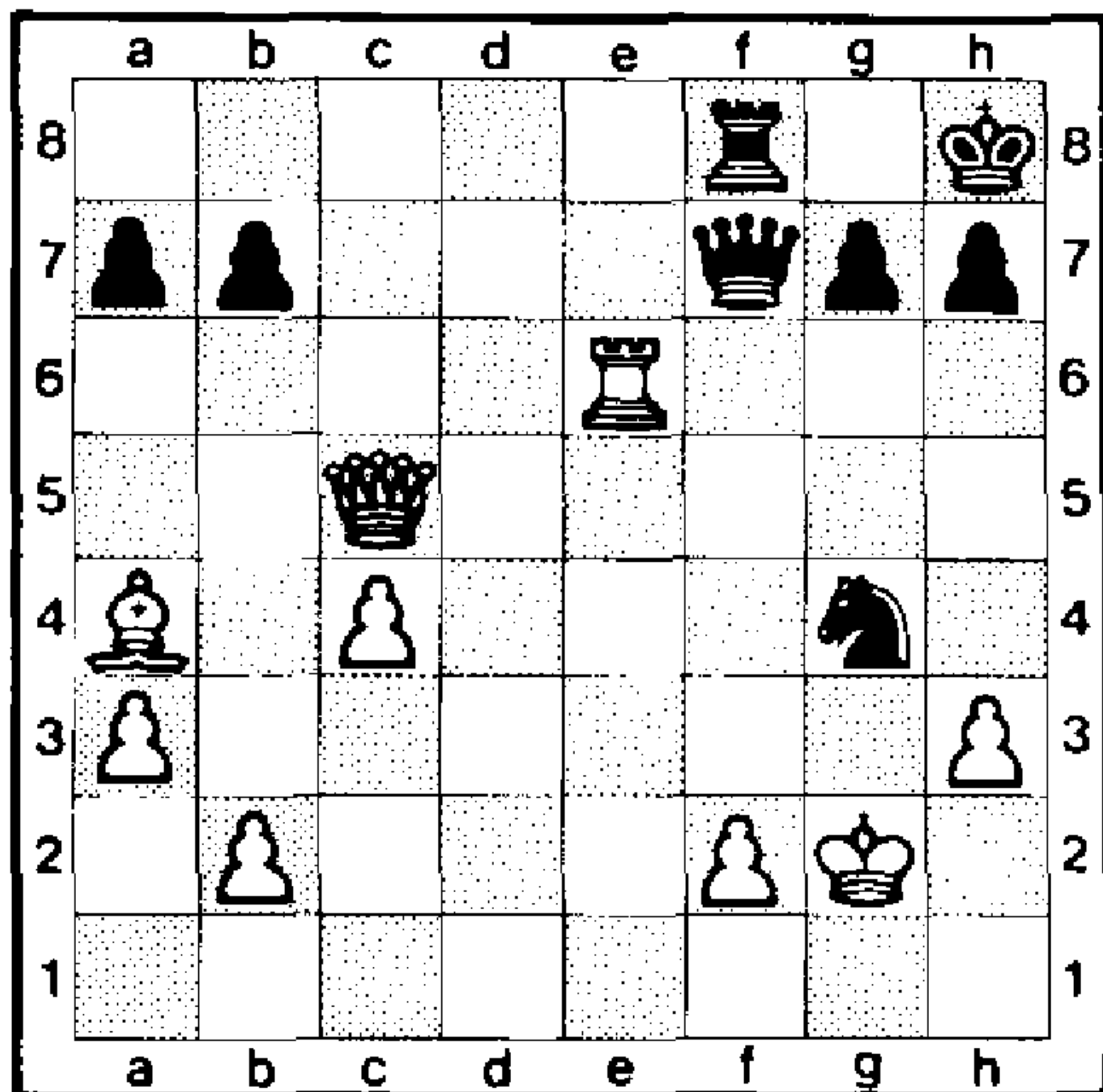
24. . . . Kg8
25. Rfd1 b6
26. Rh4 Rf5
27. Nd4 1-0

After 27. . . . Rxe5 28. Nxc6 Rb5 29. a4 and the black rook cannot maintain guard on the knight.

Supplementary Material
G Kasparov – Dr R Hübner
(Brussels 1986)

1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nc3 Nf6 4. e3 e6 5. Nf3 Nbd7 6. Bd3 Bb4 7. a3 Bd6 8. e4 dxe4 9. Nxe4 Nxe4 10. Bxe4 e5 11. 0-0 0-0 12. Bc2 Re8 13. Re1 exd4 14. Rxe8+ Qxe8 15. Qxd4 Be7 16. Bg5 Bxg5?! (16. . . . Nf8 17. Re1 and White is a little better according to Kasparov) 17. Nxc6 Nf6 18. Rd1 Be6 (18. . . . h6 19. Ne4 Nxe4 20. Qxe4 Qxe4 21. Rd8+ Kh7 22. Bxe4+

wins, as given by Kasparov) 19. Re1 Qd8 20. Nxe6 fxe6 21. Qe3 Kh8 22. h3 (here and on the next move Qxe6? is answered by ... Re8!) 22. ... Qd7 23. g4 Re8 24. Qe5 Qd8 25. Kg2 Qb6 26. Rd1 c5 (26. ... Rf8 27. Rd2 followed by b4 and c5 with a clear plus to White according to Kasparov) 27. Ba4 Rf8 28. Rd6 Qc7 29. Rxe6 Qf7 30. Qxc5 Nxc4 (30. ... Qxe6 31. Qxf8+ Ng8 32. Qf4 with two healthy extra pawns)



31. Qxf8+! Qxf8 32. hxg4 followed by 33. Re8 wins **1-0**

J Speelman – V Kalinin

(Zonal, Bath 1987)

1. c4 e6 2. Nc3 d5 3. d4 c6 4. e3 Nf6 5. Nf3 Nbd7 6. Bd3 Bb4 7. 0-0 0-0 8. a3 Bd6 9. Re1 e5 10. cxd5 cxd5 11. e4 dxe4 12. Nxe4 Nxe4 13. Rxe4 exd4 14. Rxd4 Bc5 15. Rh4 g6 16. Bg5 Be7 17. Bxe7 Qxe7 18. Qd2 Nf6 19. Re1 Qd6 20. Rd4 Qb6 21. Bc4 Nh5 22. Qh6 Qf6 23. Ng5 Qg7 24. Nxf7 Qxh6 25. Nxh6+ Kg7 26. Ng8 b5 27. Bb3 a5 28. g4 Nf4 29. Re7+ Kh8 30. Nf6 Nh3+ 31. Kf1 Ng5 32. h4 **1-0**

V Korchnoi – Dr R Hübner

(Brussels 1986)

1. Nf3 d5 2. c4 c6 3. e3 Nf6 4. Nc3 e6 5. d4 Nbd7 6. Bd3 Bb4 7. a3 Ba5 8. 0-0 0-0 9. Qc2 Qe7 10. cxd5 exd5 11. Bd2 Qd8 12. Ne2 Bb6 13. Ng3 Re8 14. b4 a6 15. Bc3 Nf8 16. Rae1 Be6 17. Ne5 N6d7 18. f4 f6 19. Nf3 Bc7 20. Nd2 Nb6 21. Ba1 Bf7 22. Nf5 Kh8 23. a4 Nc8 24. Nb3 Nd6 25. a5 Nxf5 26. Bxf5 Bd6 27. Bc3 Bg6 28. Bxg6 Nxc6 29. f5 Nf8 30. e4 Qc7 31. e5 fxe5 32. dxe5 Bxc5 33. Rxc5 Rxc5 34. f6 gxf6 35. Rxf6 Kg8 36. Qf2 Rae8 37. Rxf8+ Rxf8 38. Qg3+ Qg7 39. Qxg7+ Kxg7 40. Bxe5+ Kg6 41. Nc5 Re8 42. Bd4 Re2 43. Nxb7 Rd2 44. Be3 Rb2 45. Bc5 Kf5 46. Nd8 d4 47. Bxd4 Rxb4 48. Bb6 Rc4 49. Nb7 Kf4 50. Nc5 Rc1+ 51. Kf2 Rc2+ 52. Ke1 Rcl+ 53. Ke2 Rc2+ 54. Kd3 Rxg2 55. Nxa6 Ke5 56. Nc7 Rxh2 57. a6 Ra2 58. a7 Ra3+ 59. Ke2 Ra2+ 60. Kf3 Ra3+ 61. Be3 c5 62. a8(Q) Rxa8 63. Nxa8 c4 64. Nc7 **1-0**

J Piket – A Van't Hof

(Dordrecht 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. Nf3 d5 3. c4 c6 4. Nc3 e6 5. e3 Nbd7 6. Bd3 dxc4 7. Bxc4 b5 (the Meran Variation) 8. Be2 b4 9. Na4 c5 10. dxc5 Bb7 11. 0-0 Bxc5 12. Nxc5 Nxc5 13. Bb5+ 14. Ke7 14. Bd2 Qb6 15. Nd4 a6 16. Bxb4 axb5 17. Nb3 Rbc8 18. Nxc5 Rxc5 19. Rc1 Rac8 20. Rxc5 Rxc5 21. Qd4 (21. ... Nd7 22. Rc1 and White wins the exchange and a pawn) **1-0**

B Larsen – M Petursson

(Hastings 1986)

1. c4 c6 2. Nc3 d5 3. d4 Nf6 4. e3 e6 5. Nf3 Nbd7 6. Bd3 dxc4 7. Bxc4 b5 8. Bb3 b4 9. Ne2 Ba6 10. 0-0 Bd6 11. Re1 c5 12. e4 Nxe4 13. Nf4 Bxf4 14. Bxf4 c4 15. Ba4 Nef6 16. Bc6 0-0 17. Qa4 Qc8 18. Bxa8 Nb6 19. Qa5 Nxa8 20. Qxb4

Bb7 21. Ne5 Nd5 22. Qd2 Nab6 23. Bg3 f6 24. Nf3 Qc6 25. Qa5 Re8 26. Rac1 Nd7 27. Qa3 Kf7 28. Nd2 N5b6 29. Ne4 Nc8 30. f3 Ndb6 31. Qc5 Qd5 32. Nc3 Qc6 33. Qh5+ Kg8 34. d5 Qd7 35. dxe6 **1-0**

L Christiansen – G Flear

(Interzonal, Szirak 1987)

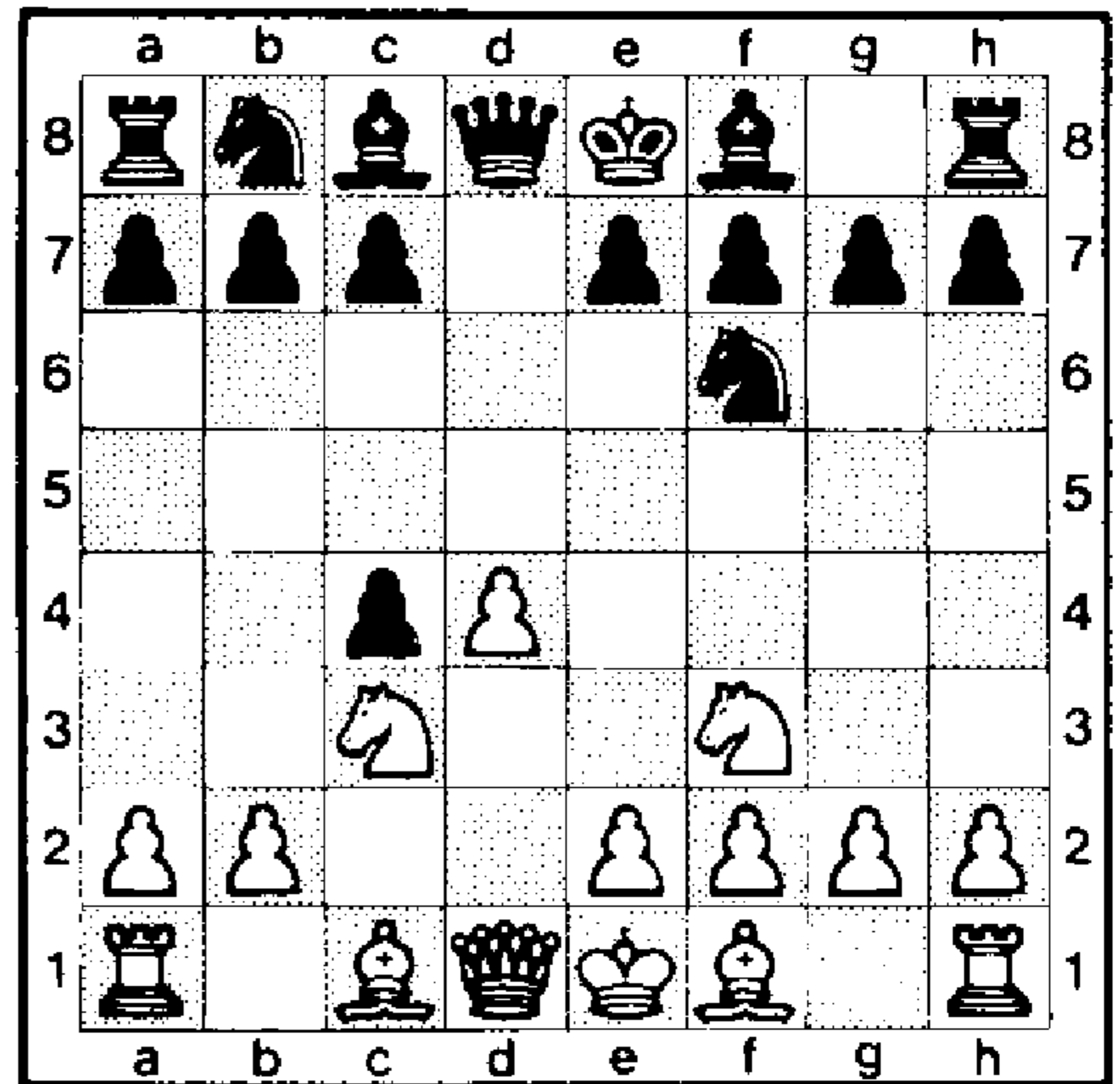
1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nc3 Nf6 4. e3 e6 5. Nf3 Nbd7 6. Bd3 dxc4 7. Bxc4 b5 8. Be2 Bb7 9. 0-0 a6 10. e4 c5 11. e5 Nd5 12. a4 Nxc3 13. bxc3 c4 14. Ng5 Be7 15. Bf3 Bxf3 16. Qxf3 0-0 17. Qg4 Nb6 18. axb5 axb5 19. Rxa8 Nxa8 20. Ne4 Kh8 21. Re1 b4 22. Re3 bxc3 23. Rh3 g6 24. Qf4 g5 25. Nf6 **1-0**

4. The Queen's Gambit Accepted (1. d4 d5 2. c4 dxc4)

In our Chess Database we find that this opening only occurs in four per cent of all Queen's Gambit lines. The same applies in Kasparov's case but, through transposition, other systems can arise from the Queen's Gambit Accepted which his opponents use regularly. Kasparov's preferred sequence of moves is:

- 1. d4 d5**
- 2. c4 dxc4**
- 3. Nf3 Nf6**
- 4. Nc3**

In Kasparov's latest games (e.g. in the one against Hübner in the Barcelona World Cup, 1989) his opponents have played **4. . . . c6** here transposing into the Slav defence after **5. a4** (see Kasparov–Timman from an earlier section). Let us consider other fourth moves for Black



and make a few intelligent guesses about Kasparov's possible choices if his opponents were ever to give him the chance to play any of the following lines.

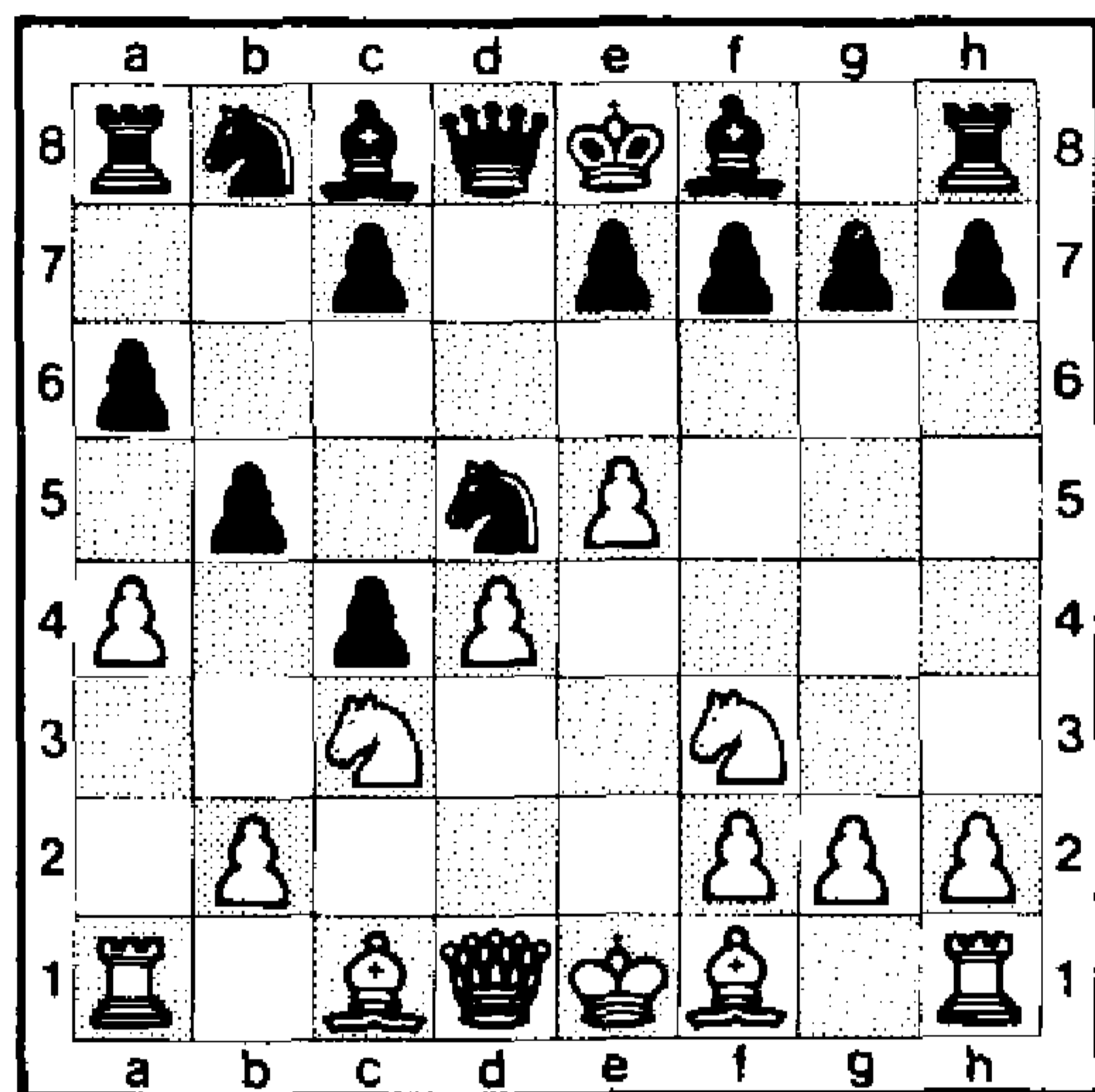
A The System with 4. . . . a6

- 4. . . . a6**
- 5. e4 b5**

Otherwise his previous move would be meaningless, since White would simply capture on c4 and obtain a decisive central advantage.

- 6. e5 Nd5**
- 7. a4**

In his youth, Kasparov adopted a similar system against the Slav Defence with one of Geller's favourite lines: 1. d4 d5 2. c4 c6 3. Nf3 Nf6 4. Nc3 dxc4 5. e4 (nowadays, as we have seen, Kasparov plays 5. a4) 5. . . . b5 6. e5 Nd5 7. a4 giving us the diagrammed position with the difference that it is a pawn on c6 rather than the pawn on a6 supporting b5. We can therefore logically assume that Kasparov would probably adopt the present system for White, should any of his opponents allow (risk?) it.



After 7. a4 White is threatening to exploit the pin down the 'a' file by capturing on b5, or, if Black guards the rook with ... Bb7, to play e6. The game **Knaak – Bönsch** (GDR, 1970) is a good illustration of this idea: 7. ... Nxc3 8. bxc3 Bb7 9. e6! fxe6 (somewhat better is 9. ... f6 10. Be2 Qd5 11. 0-0 Qxe6 12. Re1 although White has clear pressure after Nh4 and Bh5+) 10. Be2 Qd5 11. Ng5 (threatening Bf3) 11. ... Qxg2 12 Rf1 Bd5 (or 12. ... Qxh2 13. Nxe6 Qd6 14. d5! followed by Bf4, since 14. ... Bxd5?? loses a piece to 15. Qxd5!) 13. axb5 axb5 14. Rxa8 Bxa8 15. Bg4 e5 16. Be6!! with a strong attack.

The move 7. ... b4 shatters Black's pawn chain, allowing the f1 bishop to develop freely after, for example, 8. Ne4 c3 9. bxc3 bxc3 10. Ba3 followed by Bc4, Qd3 and 0-0.

Here are two examples of play from the diagram, taken from USSR tournaments:

E Bareev – J Jakovitch

(USSR Junior Championship, 1986)

7. ... Nxc3 8. bxc3 Qd5 9. g3 Be6

10. Bg2 Qb7 11. 0-0 Bd5 12. e6 Bxe6 13. Ng5 Bd5 14. Bxd5 Qxd5 15. axb5 e6 16. Re1 Nd7 17. Qh5 g6 18. Nxe6 1-0

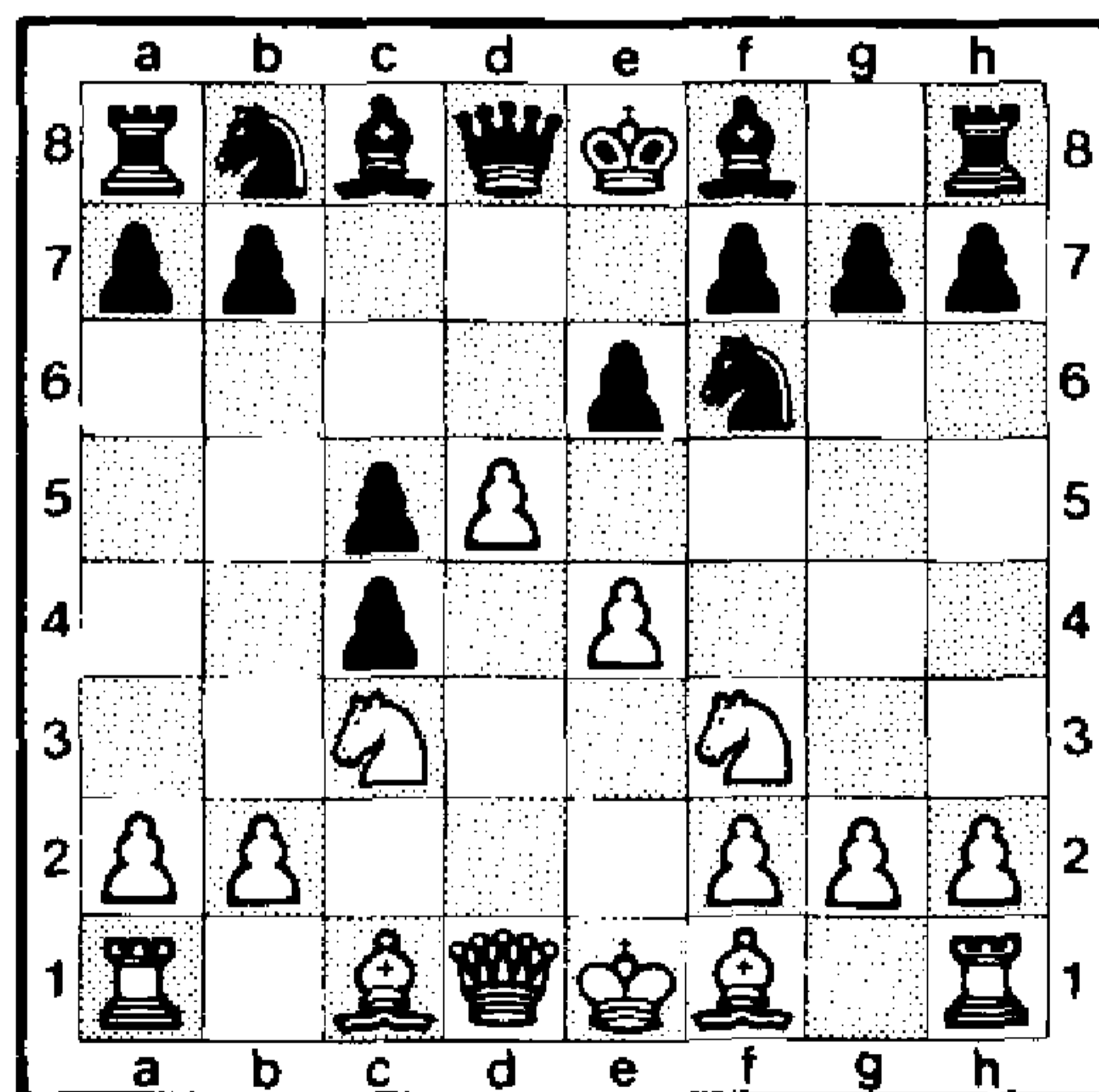
A Zlochevsky – S Barichev

(USSR, 1986)

7. ... Nb4 8. Be2 Bf5 9. 0-0 Nc2 10. Ra2 Nb4 11. Ra3 Nc2 12. Nh4 Bd3 13. Bxd3 cxd3 14. e6 fxe6 15. Qh5+ g6 16. Nxc6 hxg6 17. Qxh8 b4 18. Qg8 bxa3 19. Qxg6+ Kd7 20. Qxd3 Nb4 21. Qe4 a2 22. Nxa2 Nd5 23. Re1 c6 24. Qxe6+ Kc7 25. Nc3 a5 26. h4 Na6 27. h5 Nab4 28. h6 Qd6 29. Nxd5+ Nxd5 30. Qg8 Qb4 31. Rf1 Nf6 32. h7 Nxh7 33. Qxh7 Qxd4 34. Qh5 Bg7 35. Rd1 Qe5 36. Qg4 Rd8 37. g3 Rxd1+ 38. Qxd1 Qe4 39. Bf4+ e5 40. Bd2 Qd5 41. Qe1 e4 42. Bxa5+ Kb7 43. Bc3 Bd4 44. Bxd4 Qxd4 45. b3 1-0

B The System with 4. ... c5

- 1. d4 d5
- 2. c4 dxc4
- 3. Nf3 Nf6
- 4. Nc3 c5



Position after 6. e4

THE QUEEN'S GAMBIT

Occasionally, the transposition 4. . . . e6 5. e4 c5 6. d5 occurs.

5. d5 **e6**
6. e4

Black must now allow complications if he is to complete his development e.g.: **6. . . . Be7?** allows 7. d6! Bf8 (he cannot capture on d6 without losing a piece) 8. e5 with a tremendous position.

6. . . . b5?! is imaginative but fails to 7. Nxb5 Qa5+ (7. . . . Nxe4? 8. Qa4! Bd7 9. dxe6 fxe6 10. Bxc4) 8. Nc3 Nxe4 9. Bd2 Nxd2 10. Qxd2 followed by 11. Bxc4, since 10. . . . Ba6 11. dxe6 fxe6 12. Ng5 and 13 0-0-0 followed by Qe3 gives White an attack.

6. . . . Nxe4 7. Nxe4 exd5 is a bold attempt at a counter-attack tried out in several games, but one has the impression that the extra piece is stronger than Black's pawn mass after **8. Nc3 Be6** (8. . . . d4 gives White an attack on the king after 9. Bxc4! dxc3 10. Bxf7+ Ke7 11. Qb3 and 12. 0-0) **9. Ng5!** and now, as the following two examples illustrate, both 9. . . . Nc6 and 9. . . . Be7 are not good enough for Black:

H Olafsson – G Flear

(Wijk aan Zee, 1987)

9. . . . Nc6 10. Nxe6 fxe6 11. g3 Qf6 12. Bh3 Be7 13. 0-0 0-0 14. f4 Rad8 15. f5 Qd4+ 16. Qxd4 cxd4 17. f6 Rxf6 18. Rxf6 Bxf6 19. Bxe6+ Kh8 20. Nxd5 Rd6 21. Bf7 d3 22. Nxf6 Rxf6 23. Bxc4 Ne5 24. Bd5 Rd6 25. Bxb7 Rd7 26. Bf4 d2 27. Rdl **1-0**

W Schmidt – K Mokry

(Warsaw Zonal, 1987)

9. . . . Be7 10. Nxe6 fxe6 11. Qh5+ g6 12. Qg4 Kf7 13. h4 Nc6 14. Bg5 h5 15. Qf4+Kg7 16. 0-0-0 Bxg5 17. hxg5 Rf8 18. Qd2 Rb8 19. f4 b5 20. g4 hxg4 21.

Ne4 Qe7 22. Nf6 Rh8 23. Be2 g3 24. Bg4 Nd4 25. Qg2 Qd6 26. Qxg3 b4 27. Rh2 c3 28. Rdh1 Qa6 29. Rh7+ Rxh7 30. Rxh7+ Kf8 31. Qh3 Nb3+ 32. Kc2 Nd4+ 33. Kb1 **1-0**

So it appears that Black must look towards the main line from the diagram:

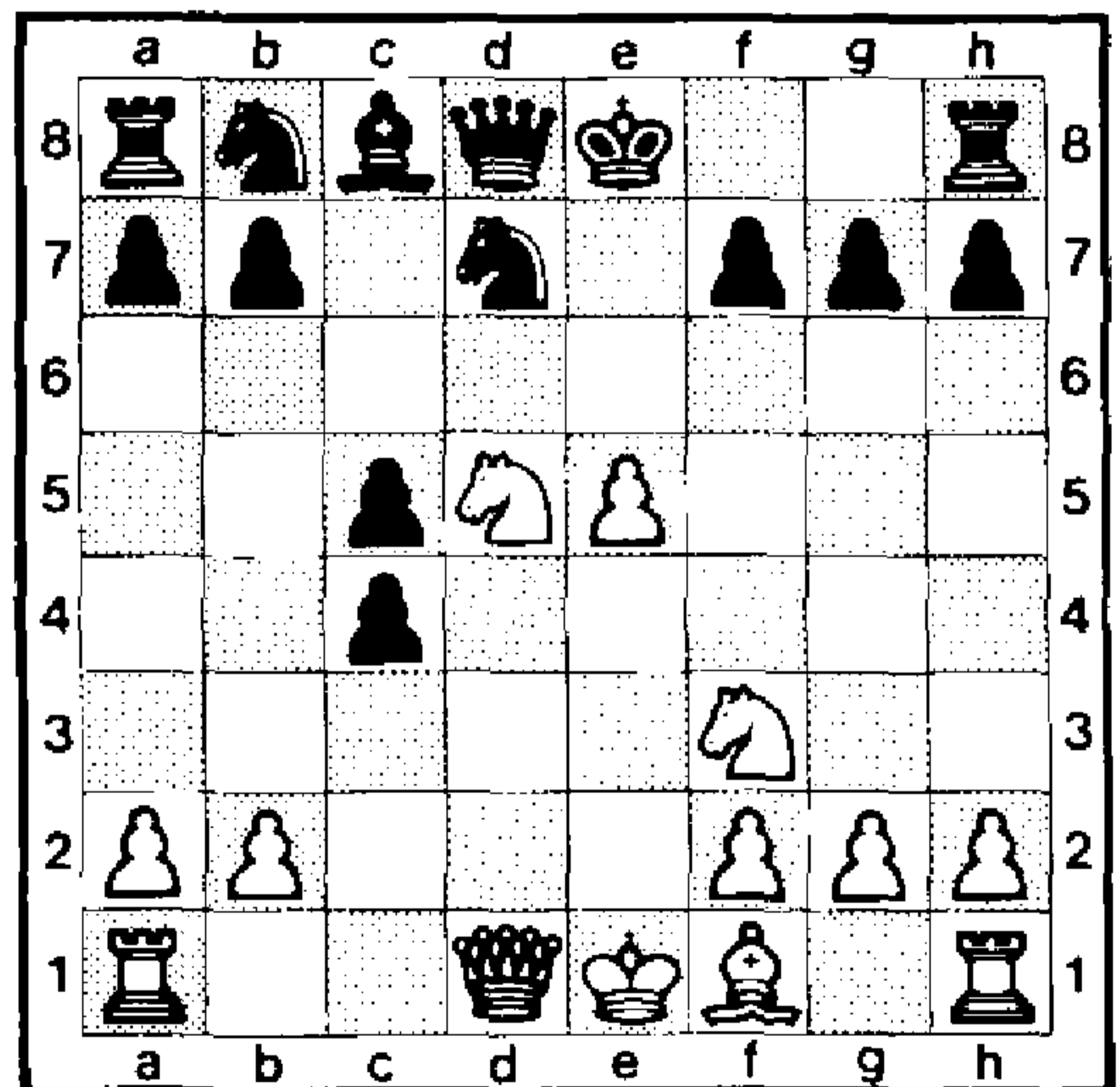
6. . . . **exd5**
7. e5 **Nfd7**

Not 7. . . . d4? 8. Bxc4! Nc6 (we already know 8. . . . dxc3 9. Bxf7+) 9. exf6 dxc3 10. Qe2+ Kd7 11. Bf4 and Black's king seems doomed.

8. Bg5 **Be7**

The alternative 8. . . . f6? fails to 9. exf6 gxf6 10. Qxd5! fxg5 (after 10. . . . Qe7+ simply 11. Be3 wins) 11. 0-0-0 and Black's defences can hardly withstand the white hurricane unleashed by Bxc4 and Rhe1+.

9. Bxe7 **Qxe7**
10. Nxd5 **Qd8**



11. Qc2!?

In true Kasparov style, even though we have as yet no examples from his actual games!

In this position, his great rival Karpov prefers the calm, clinical approach which is equally unpleasant for Black, as he showed in his Belfort World Cup game against J Ehlvest in 1988: 11. Bxc4 Nc6 12. 0-0 0-0 13. Re1 Nb6 14. Nxb6 axb6 15. Qxd8 Nxd8 16. a3 Nc6 17. Rad1 Bg4 18. e6 Bxe6 19. Bxe6 fxe6 20. Rxe6 Rfd8 21. Rde1 Rd3 22. h3 h6 23. Ne5 Nxe5 24. R1xe5 Rf8 25. Rxb6 Rd1+ 26. Kh2 Rxf2 27. Re7 Rdd2 28. Rg6 Rf7 29. Rxf7 Kxf7 30. Rb6 Rd7 31. Kg3 Ke7 32. Kf4 Kd8 33. Rb5 Rc7 34. Ke5 Kc8 35. Kd5 Kb8 36. g4 Re7 37. Rxc5 Re2 38. Rb5 Kc7 39. Rb3 g6 40. Rc3+ Kb6 41. b3 h5 42. Rf3 hxg4 43. hxg4 Ka5 44. Rf7 Rg2 45. Rxb7 Rxg4 46. Kc5 Rg5+ 47. Kc6 Ka6 48. b4 **1-0**

The move 11. Qc2 leads to tactical positions with good attacking chances for White. In the game **J Piket – E Vladimirov** (European Team Championships, Rotterdam 1988) play from the diagram went:

11. . . . Nxe5

Or 11. . . . Qa5+ 12. Qc3 Qxc3+ 13. bxc3 Kd8 Or 11. . . . Qa5+ 12. Qc3 Qxc3+ 13. bxc3 Kd8 14. 0-0-0 Nc6 15. Bxc4 Re8 16. Rhe1 followed by 17. Bb5, since 16. . . . a6 loses to 17. Nb6.

12. Qe4 Be6 13. Qxe5 Qxd5 14. Qxg7 Rf8 15. Rd1 Qe4+ 16. Be2 Nd7 17. Ng5 Qg6 18. Nxe6 Qxe6

Not 18. . . . fxe6?? 19. Qxd7 mate.

19. Qg5! f6 20. Qh5+ Rf7 21. 0-0 0-0-0 22. Rd6 Qxd6 23. Qxf7 Ne5 24. Qxh7 Qe6

If 24. . . . Qd2? 25. Qf5+ Kb8 (25. . . . Kc7 26. Bxc4! Nxc4 27. Qxc5+) 26. Qxf6 with advantage for White. In this position White stands better and his treatment of the opening is exemplary, even though he now proceeded to blot his copy-book by losing the thread of the game and

eventually seeing his flag fall.

25. Qe4 Rd4 26. Qe3 Qf5 27. h4 b6 28. h5 Re4 29. Qd2 Rd4 30. Qe3 Re4 31. Qd2 Rd4 32. Qh6 Kb7 33. f4 Nd3 34. Bf3+ Ka6 35. Qg7 Rxf4 36. Qb7+ Kb5 37. a3 Ne5 0-1

C The System with 4. . . . e6

1. d4	d5
2. c4	dx c4
3. Nf3	Nf6
4. Nc3	e6
5. e4	Bb4

The alternative 5. . . . c5 would merely transpose (after 6. d5) into the previous system. The reply 5. . . . a6 is rarely met in practice, because 6. Bxc4 b5 7. Bd3 Bb7 8. e5 Nd5 gives White the freer game.

After the text move, 6. Bg5 leads us into the complexities of the so-called Ragozin System, in which we may well see a beautiful model game played by Kasparov one of these days. Until then, we'll have to make do with the less well known 6. Qa4+ system, as illustrated by the following game:

I Nemet – E Preissmann

(Swiss Championship, 1988)

6. Qa4+ Nc6 7. Bg5 Bd7 8. Qc2 h6 9. Bd2 b5 10. Be2 Rb8 11. 0-0 0-0 12. Rad1 Qe7 13. a3 Bxc3 14. Bxc3 b4 15. axb4 Nxb4 16. Qb1 Ba4 17. Rc1 Bb3 18. Ne5 Rb7 19. Bxc4 Bxc4 20. Nxc4 Rc8 21. Rfe1 Qd7 22. h3 Qb5 23. b3 Nc6 24. d5 exd5 25. Na3 Qa6 26. Bxf6 gxf6 (26. . . . Qxa3 27. Rxc6 gxf6 28. exd5 Rxb3 29. Qf5 with an attack) 27. exd5 Ne5 28. Qf5 Rxb3 (28. . . . Qxa3?? 29. Qxc8+) 29. Nc2 Rc3 30. Ra1 Qb7 31. Nd4 (threatening Qxf6 and Nf5) **1-0**

2 The Nimzo-Indian Defence

The nearest relation to the Queen's Gambit is seen in the opening sequence **1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6** when White has to decide whether to develop a knight on c3 or f3. Kasparov has played both moves in his career but latterly has given the preference to the direct **3. Nc3** threatening to occupy the centre at once with e4. Of course, Black can now transpose to the Queen's Gambit by 3. . . . d5 or go instead into the Modern Benoni Defence by 3. . . . c5, a system we shall examine in the next chapter.

The third alternative **3. . . . Bb4** gives us the basic position of the Nimzo-Indian Defence, partly named after the great theoretician Aaron Nimzovitch (1886–1935) who, together with the all-round chess genius Richard Reti (1889–1929), founded the Hypermodern School of masters who, particularly in the twenties, subjected the prevailing opening theory to a ruthless examination, thereby bringing into question many entrenched ideas about chess strategy. One of the most important contributions of the Hypermoderns was their reevaluation of the concept of the centre. 'The centre', wrote Nimzovitch, 'cannot only be controlled by occupation with pawns but can also be controlled by pieces.'

The main idea of the Nimzo-Indian Defence is in fact to control the e4 square, initially at least, by pieces only: first a knight on f6, then a bishop on b7 (after . . . b6). The most direct reaction to this plan is **4. Qc2**, Kasparov's favourite move of late which he has imbued with new dynamism. It not only controls e4

but also prevents the unpleasant pawn weakness often resulting from . . . Bxc3+. We give two model games which illustrate the ideas and plans arising after this rehabilitated move.

A The System with . . . b6

Let us firstly comment on the unusual circumstances surrounding our model game, with grateful acknowledgements to the chess magazine 64. Top stars on the international chess scene occasionally donate their prizes to a good cause, the most well known example being when Karpov and Kasparov donated the seven-figure prize-fund of their 1986 World Championship match to the victims of the Chernobyl disaster.

In mid-December 1988, it was again possible to use a chess occasion as a means of raising a substantial amount of money for humanitarian purposes. In the attractive Benefit Active Chess Match in Madrid between a Soviet team and a 'Rest of the World' team, a number of firms forked out a total of around 160,000 dollars to be divided between UNICEF and its USSR counterpart.

The eight members of each team met all the members of the opposing team (the Scheveningen System), with twenty-five minutes on the clock for each player to complete the game. The Soviet team, with the notable absence of Karpov (himself playing in the World Active Chess Championship at Matzatlan which he in fact managed to win), just scraped home with 32½ points to 31½.

The best individual efforts (5½ out of 8) were achieved by the veteran Viktor Korchnoi ('Rest of the World') along with the two Soviet players Mikhail Gurevic and, of course, Garry Kasparov. Three games were adjudged to be the best of the match: Dolmatov – Nogueiras, a tactical battle published in 64, plus two of the World Champion's efforts, his enthralling duel with Speelman (which we shall consider in Chapter 7) and the game we give here as an example of 4. Qc2 against the Nimzo-Indian Defence.

G Kasparov – J Hjartarson
(Madrid, 1988)

- 1. d4 Nf6
- 2. c4 e6
- 3. Nc3 Bb4
- 4. Qc2 0-0

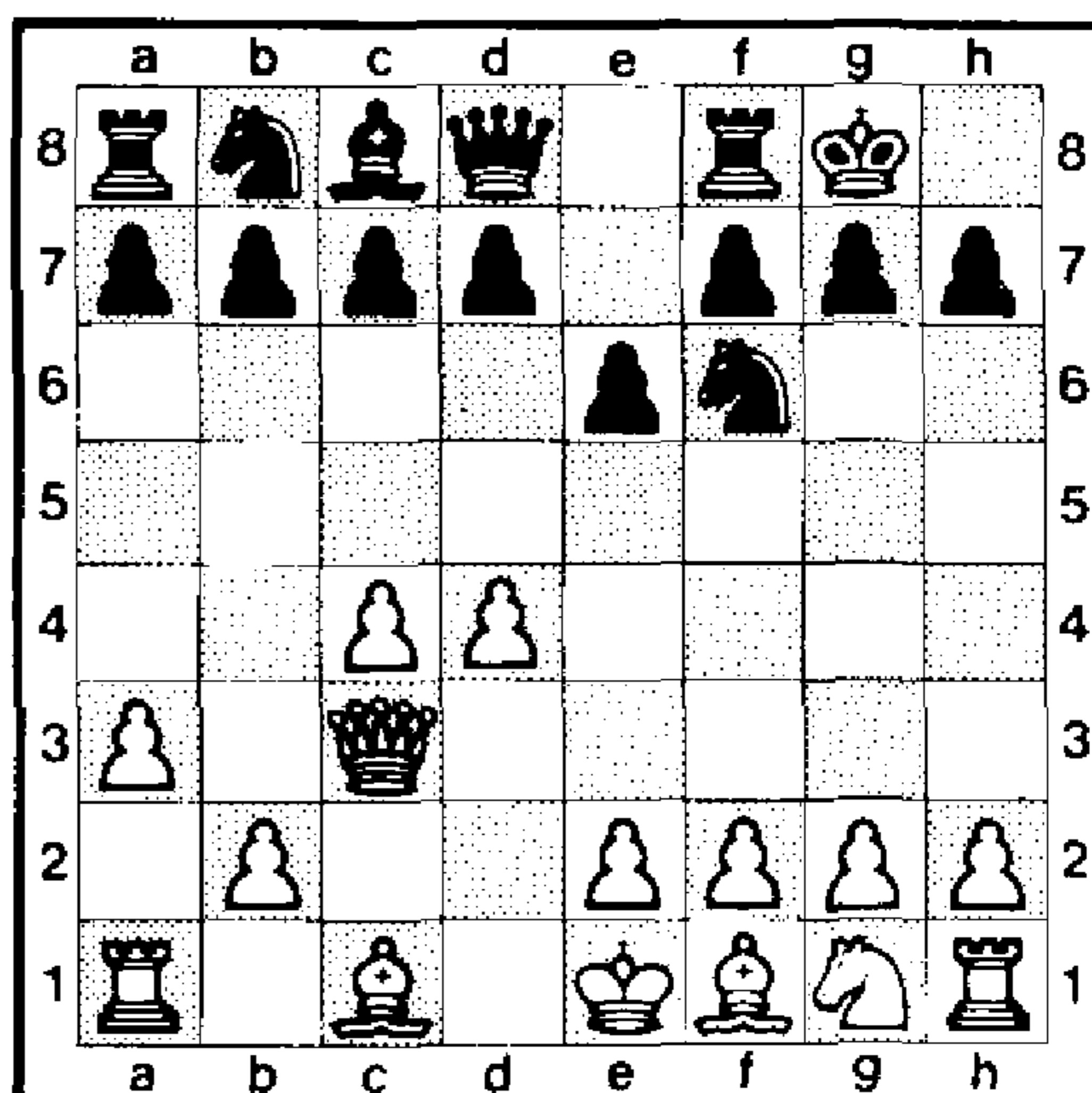
The most usual continuation in which Black keeps his cards to his chest a little longer, postponing the decision whether to establish a pawn in the centre with ... d6 and ... e5 or to fianchetto his QB with ... b6 and ... Bb7. We shall examine other fourth moves for Black in the third section of this chapter.

5. a3

White chooses the most favourable moment to obtain the immediate advantage of two bishops, because Black has no option but to exchange his bishop for the knight (5. ... Be7? 6. e4 would give White a massive spatial advantage).

- 5. ... Bxc3+
- 6. Qxc3

Black has now to decide in which way he should develop his QB, by moving his d7 or b7 pawn: We examine 6. ... b6 in the present model game and 6. ... d5 (by transposition) in the next one (Kasparov – Nikolic), whilst ... d6 is seen in the



supplementary game Kasparov – Sax. The idea of 6. ... Qe8 is to answer 7. Bg5 with 7. ... Ne4, so White can play 7. f3 or else follow the plan of Korchnoi – Lerner. As for the wild 6. ... b5?!, it looks a little risky, even though the game Thorsteins – Adorjan ended in a draw.

- 6. ... b6
- 7. Bg5

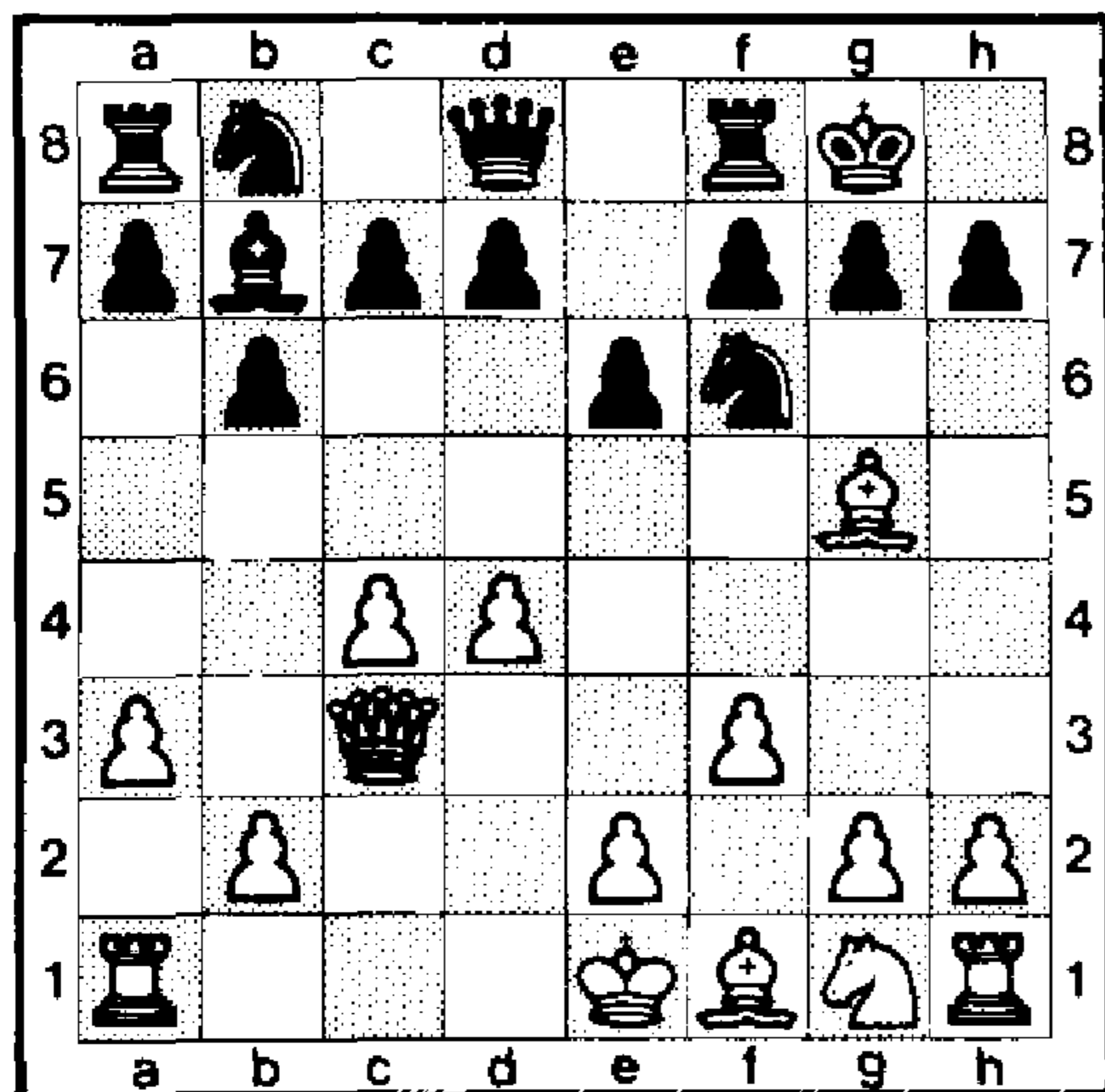
This bishop move is more aggressive than the 7. e3 played in the supplementary game Karpov – Kasparov, the only game so far where Kasparov has played this line as Black.

- 7. ... Bb7

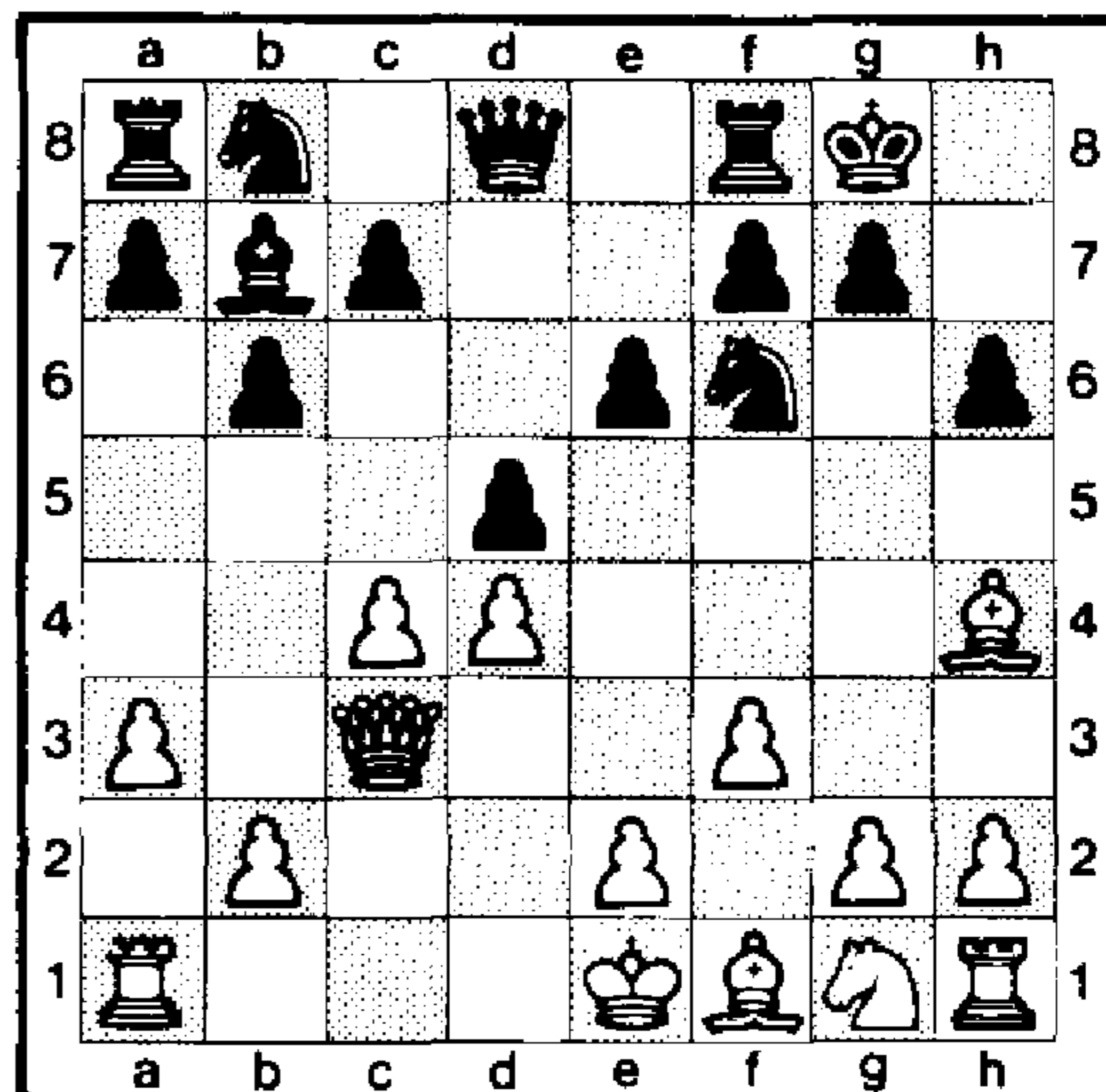
Since Black must play this move sooner or later, other continuations usually transpose into one of the games given in this section. The most common transpositions are by 7. ... c5 8. dxc5 bxc5 9. e3 Bb7 or by 7. ... d5 8. e3 Bb7 or by 7. ... h6 8. Bh4 Bb7.

- 8. f3

This move restricts the action of the b7 bishop and prepares to gain space with e4. For the second time Black is faced with the decision of whether to play 8.



8. . . . h6
9. Bh4 d5



10. e3

The best continuation. After 10 cxd5 exd5 Black can play his knight to the more active c6 square e.g. 11. e3 Re8 12. Bf2 c5 13. Bb5 (13. dxc5 d4!) 13. . . . Nc6, as in the supplementary game Kaidanov – Vishmanavin. In the supplementary game Oll – Goldin, White boldly played 10. cxd5 exd5 11. Bxf6 Qxf6 12. Qxc7 but, despite the fact that the young Soviet master finally won this game, no one has yet repeated the experiment . . . [Beliavsky momentarily rehabilitated the 10. cxd5 exd5 11. e3 Re8 line in his win against Vaganian in the 1989 USSR Championship, when he successfully played 12. Nh3?! Nbd7 13. Be2 c5 14. 0-0 Qe7 15. Bf2 Rac8 16. Rfe1 cxd4 17. Qxd4 followed by 18. Rad1. However, only a few weeks later, Chandler in his Hastings game against Gulko came up with the splendid counter 12. . . . Qe7! 13. Bf2 c5 14. Bb5 Bc6 15. Be2 Bd7! when White had to accept the weakening of his K

. . . d5 as in this game or choose from:

- (i) 8. . . . d6. Kasparov considers this a weaker move, because it allows White to establish a strong pawn centre by e4 and, if necessary, a later d5, as in his World Cup game against the same opponent, played a few weeks before the present one (see Supplementary Material).
- (ii) 8. . . . c5 9. dxc5 bxc5. In the further course of play, Black develops his knight on c6 and usually begins a central pawn clash with . . . d5. None of Kasparov's opponents has tried this against him yet. After the possible 10. e3 Nc6 11. Nh3 h6 12. Bh4 Rc8, a game Hjartarson – Salov (Amsterdam, 1989) continued 13. 0-0-0 d5!? and White cannot capture the c5 pawn in view of the pin down the 'c' file. For this reason, 13. Rd1! is stronger, when Black has problems. However, the days of 8. . . . c5 are probably not yet numbered, since the move keeps cropping up in the West German League. We can only hope that it is tried out against Kasparov some time.

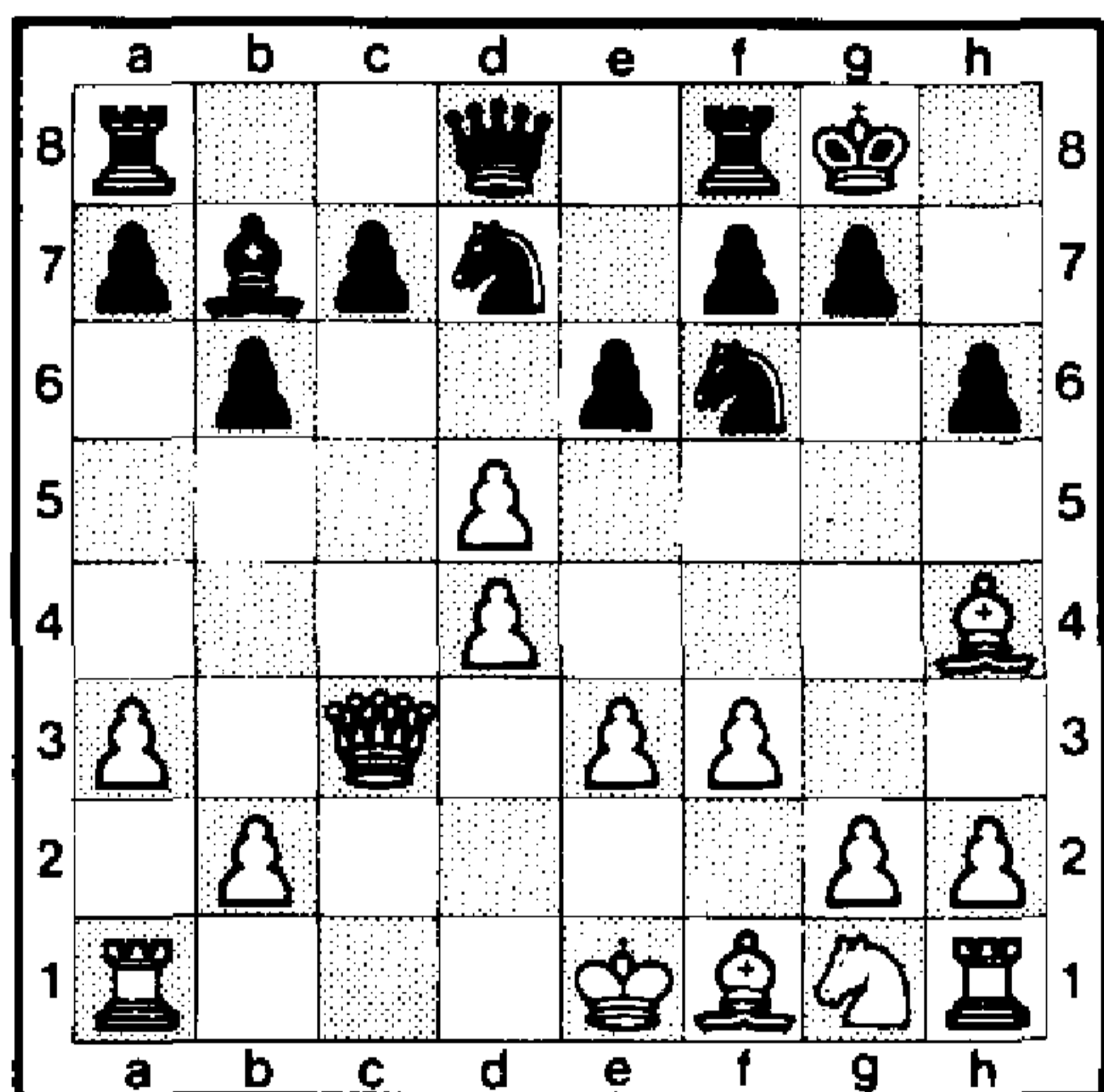
side pawn structure after 16. 0-0 Bxh3, since 16. Nf4 fails to 16. . . . Nc6! with decisive central pressure. Clearly, this opening is in a state of flux . . .].

10. . . . Nbd7

Note that Kasparov's accurate sequence of moves has prevented the active plan adopted above by Vyshmanavin, since now 10. . . . c5? loses a pawn after 11. dxc5 bxc5 12. cxd5 Nxd5 13. Bxd8 Nxc3 14. Be7! Re8 15. Bxc5 etc.

11. cxd5

It is generally advisable not to capture on d5 until Black has committed his QN to d7.



11. . . . exd5

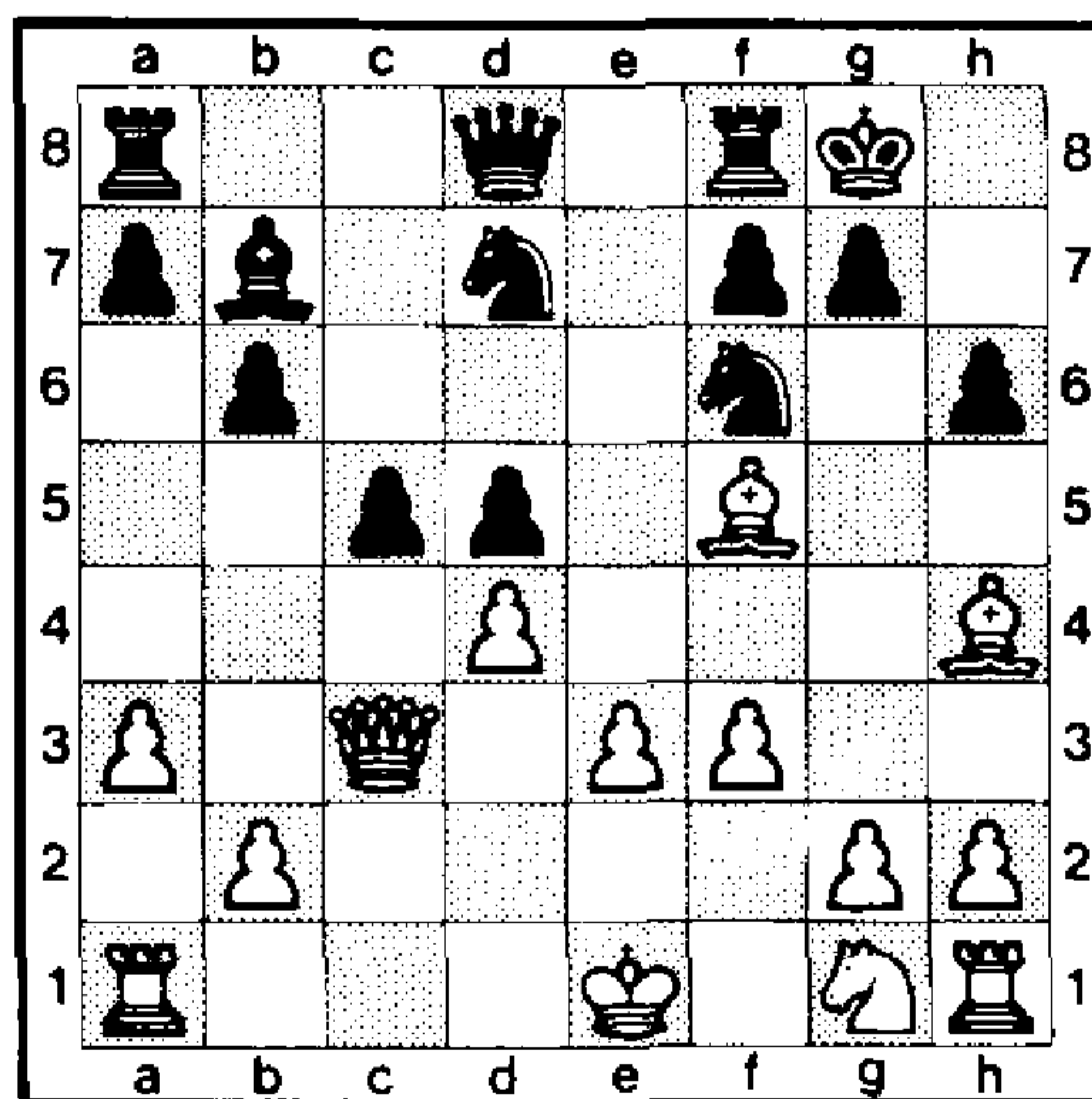
In the game M Gurevic – Polugayevsky (New York Open, 1989), Black forced the exchange of queens by 11. . . . Nxd5 12. Bxd8 Nxc3 13. Bh4 (13. Bxc7 Nd5 14. Bd6 Nxe3!) 13. . . . Nd5 14. Bf2 c5 15. e4?! Ne7 16. Bb5 Nc6 17. Ne2 Rfc8 18. 0-0 cxd4 19. Nxd4 Nc5 20. Nxc6 when a draw was agreed. It is worth pointing out, however, that this game was played in the penultimate round of a

tournament with a substantial prize fund in dollars and that, by drawing it against a pursuing rival, Gurevic had one eye on the prize money. In different circumstances, he would have definitely made a greater effort to win, admittedly with some risk involved, by trying 15. Bb5! Rfd8 16. Bxd7 Rxd7 17. dxc5 bxc5 18. Ne2 intending e4 and Rc1 with the better prospects. [With the benefit of hindsight, may I equally point out that Karpov, as Black, opted for the exchange of queens against Salov at Skelleftea, 1989, when Salov captured on c7 allowing Black to win back the e3 pawn. Hence, presumably, Beliavsky's reversion to 10. cxd5.]

12. Bd3 c5

After 12. . . . Re8 White has 13. Bf5! protecting the e3 pawn and threatening 14. Bxd7 Qxd7 15. Bxf6 weakening Black's king position.

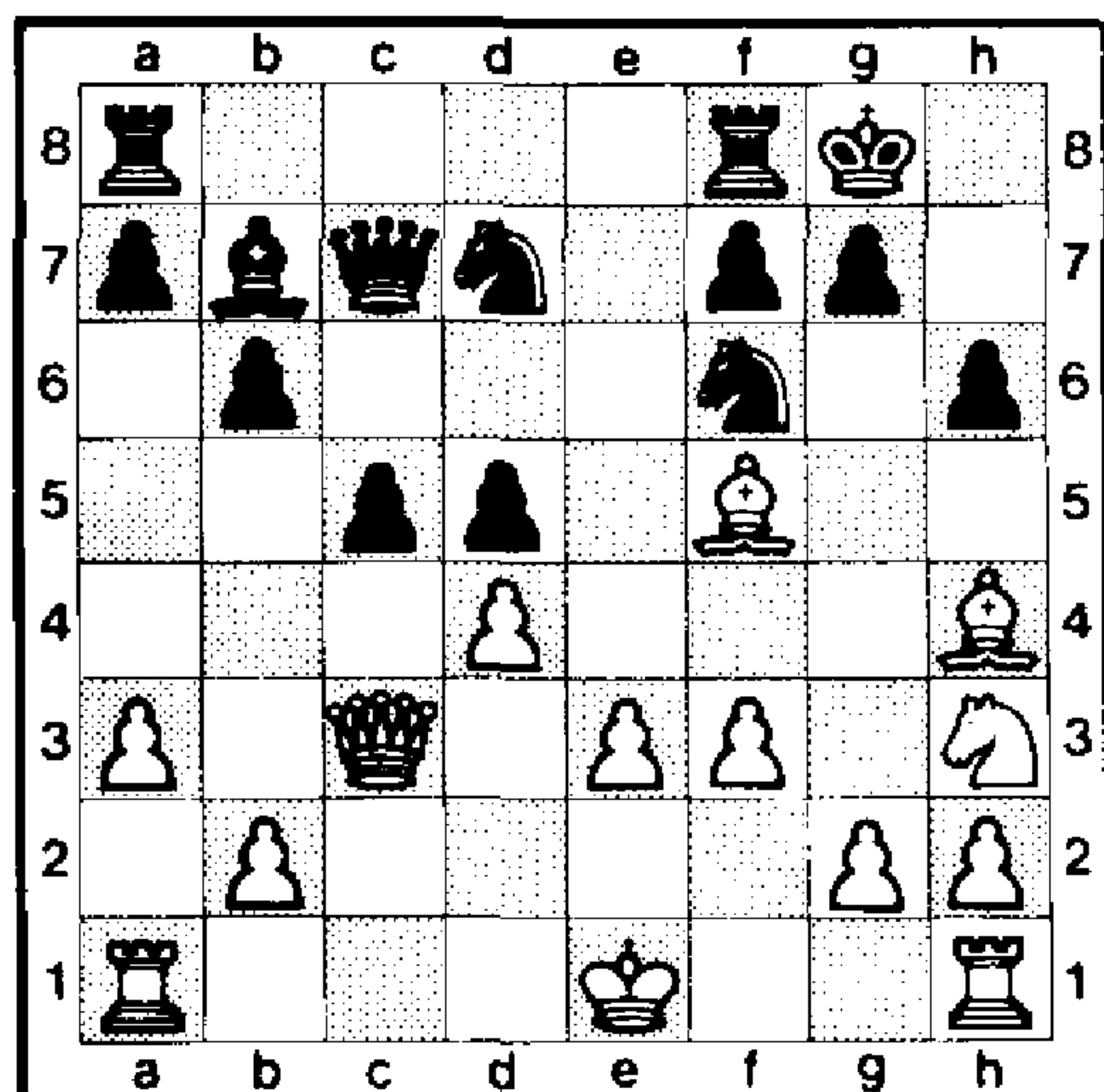
13. Bf5!



A well-known strategem. White anticipates 13. . . . Rc8? Bxf6! again weakening the K side pawn structure and, at all

events, is planning to play Bxd7 against 13. . . . Re8? or even against 13. . . . Bc8? (14. Bxd7 Bxd7 15. dxc5 Rc8 16. Bxf6!). An important point to note is that, exceptionally in this particular set-up, White always answers . . . cxd4 with exd4! maintaining control of the important c5 and e5 squares and keeping Black's 'bad' bishop out of the game.

13. . . . Qc7
14. Nh3



This choice of square for the knight occurs in many of Kasparov's games against the Nimzo-Indian, so we must ask ourselves why this square rather than Ne2 which we have seen him play in the Queen's Gambit variations where f3 is required. In both cases, the f4 square is available, but not immediately in view of . . . g5. What other prospects does the e2 knight have? At the moment it cannot go to g3 which would block the bishop's retreat, but even if it reaches g3 after Bf2 there is little scope for it there. Of course, it can go to g3 in conjunction with a K side pawn advance by Ne2, Bf2,

g4 and Ng3, but this involves four tempi compared with only two for Nh3 and g4. Finally, in case Black relaxes his grip on the centre by playing . . . c4, the h3 knight is ideally placed to support the e4 counter from f2.

In the diagram position, Black has to think up a plan. As we have seen, 14. . . . Rac8? is answered by 15. Bxf6, whereas 14. . . . Ba6 looks stronger than it really is, because White can castle artificially by 15. Kf2 and 16. Rhe1. The obvious choice is 14. . . . Rfe8 but after 15. 0-0 Black still has problems developing his QR, because both 15. . . . Rac8? 16. Bxf6 and 15. . . . Rad8 16. Bxd7 Rxd7 17. Bxf6 weaken Black's K side pawn structure. There is little wonder that the Icelandic player hastens to eliminate one of White's powerful bishops at the cost, however, of weakening the black squares around his king.

14. . . . g6

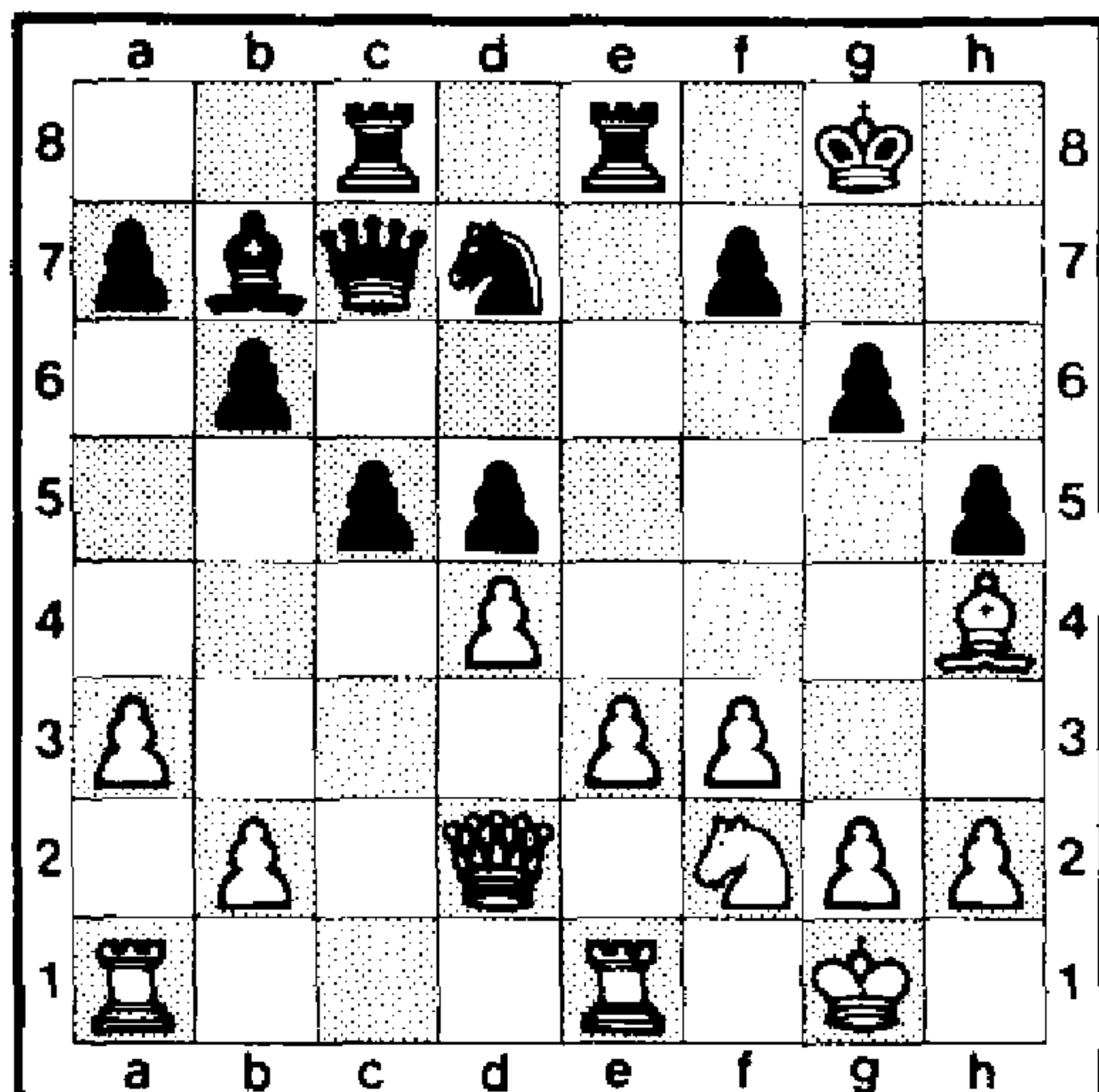
In order to play . . . Rac8 with counterplay down the c file if the bishop retreats to d3 or c2. [It is amusing to note that one defect of the knight on h3 is that it prevents the thematic retreat of the bishop to that square!]

15. Bxd7 Nxd7
16. 0-0 Rfe8
17. Nf2 Rac8
18. Qd2 h5

After the exchange of central pawns the h6 pawn would be exposed to attack, so it is advanced, at the same time guarding g4 against an invasion by the knight.

19. Rfe1

We have now reached a middle-game in which White's minor pieces stand better than their black counterparts. This becomes clear if Black seeks refuge in simplification e.g. 19. . . . cxd4 20. exd4 Rxe1+ 21. Rxe1 Qc2 22. Qxc2 Rxc2 23.



Re8+ Kg7 24. Nd3! and the threat of Re7 in conjunction with Nb4 (if ... Bc6) or Nf4 (if ... Bc8) or Bg3 (if ... Rc7) immediately brings Black into trouble. At all events, exchanging on d4 is generally bad, since it opens up a line for White's queen to reach h6 with the threat of Nh3-g5, which is equally the reason why 19. ... c4? fails to 20. e4!

19. ... Qd6
20. Rad1 Qf8

Preventing once and for all the latent threat of Qh6 and planning himself ... Qh6 followed by ... g5 and h4. White therefore begins active play in the centre.

21. dxc5 bxc5?!

It may have been the lesser evil to play 21. ... Nxc5 but White can reply 22. b4 Ne6 (22. ... Nb3? 23. Qb2 or 22. ... Na4? 23. Bf6) 23. Bf6 followed by Ba1 with dangerous threats such as Qb2 and g4.

22. e4 Nb6

If 22. ... d4 23. b4! cxb4 24. Qxd4 Nb6 25. Qxb4 Qxb4 26. axb4 Rc4 27. Nd3 and Bf2 wins a pawn.

23. exd5 Nxd5

Overprotecting f6, since 23. ... Bxd5

would allow 24. Bf6 threatening Qg5, Bc3 and Qf6.

24. Ne4 Re6
25. Qg5!

Threatening Rxd5 and, after the retreat of the knight, Nf6+ followed by Rxe6 winning easily. If now 25. ... f5 White has 26. Nc3! Rxe1+ 27. Bxe1! threatening both Nxd5 and Qxg6+

25. ... Qg7
26. Rxd5 Bxd5
27. Qxd5 Qxb2
28. Rd1 c4

Or 28. ... Qxa3 29. Nd6! (threatening not only Nxc8 but also 30. Nxf7 Kxf7 31. Qd7+) 29. ... Rf8 30. Nxf7! Kxf7 (30. ... Qe3+ 31. Bf2) 31. Qd7+ etc.

29. Qg5 c3

Banking on the advance of this pawn, but White's attack on the king is quicker.

30. Rd8+ Rxd8
31. Qxd8+ Kh7

After 31. ... Kg7 32. Bf6+ Rxf6 33. Qxf6+ Kg8 34. Qxc3 it is curtains.

32. Nf6+ 1-0

After 32. ... Rxf6 33. Bxf6 Qc1+ 34. Kf2 there is no perpetual check (34. ... Qc2+ 35. Kg3 h4+ 36. Kxh4 Qf2+ 37. Kh3) so 34. ... Qd2+ is forced, allowing 35. Qxd2 cxd2 36. Ke2 winning.

Supplementary Material

G Kasparov – G Sax

(World cup, Reykjavik, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 d6 7. f3 d5 (7. ... Nbd7 8. e4 e5 9. d5 a5 10. b4 with a spatial advantage; or here 9. ... Nc5 10. b4) 8. Bg5 Nbd7 9. e3 Re8 10. Nh3 h6 11. Bh4 c6 12. cxd5?! (Black would be in difficulties after the much stronger 12. Rd1!) 12. ... exd5 13. Bf2 c5 14. Nf4 cxd4 15. Qxd4 Qa5+ 16. b4 Qb6 17. Qd2 a5 18. b5 Nc5 19. Rd1 Nb3 20. Qb2 a4

21. Be2 Qa5+ 22. Kf1 Bd7 23. Bh4 d4 24. Bxf6 gxf6 25. exd4 Bxb5 26. Kf2 Bxe2 27. Nxe2 Qg5 28. Rd3 Re7 29. Rhd1 Rae8 30. Ng3 f5 31. Kf1 Qh4 32. d5 Nc5 33. Rd4 Qxh2 34. d6 Re3 35. Kf2 Rxf3+ Kxf3 Re3+ 37. Kxe3 Qxg3+ 38. Kd2 **1-0**

K Thorsteins – A Adorjan

(Akureyri, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b5 7. cxb5 c6 8. Bg5 cxb5 9. e3 Bb7 10. Nf3 h6 11. Bh4 a6 12. Bd3 Nc6 13. 0-0 Na5 14. Bxf6 gxf6 15. e4 Kg7 16. Rae1 Rg8 17. Qc1 Rc8 18. Qf4 Qc7 19. Qh4 Nc4 20. Re2 Qd8 21. Qf4 Qc7 22. Qh4 Qd8 23. Qf4 Qc7 **1/2-1/2**

S Mohr – L Christiansen

(W German League, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b5 7. cxb5 c6 8. f3 Nd5 9. Qd2 (better 9. Qd3 f5 10. e4 Nc7! according to Christiansen) 9. . . . f5 10. Nh3 cxb5 11. e3 Nc6 12. Bxb5 Na5 13. Qd3 Rb8 14. b4 Rxb5 15. bxa5 (15. Qxb5? Nb3 16. Rb1 Qh4+ 17. Nf2 Nxc1 18. Rxc1 Nxe3 with good play for Black) 15. . . . Ba6 16. Bd2 Rb6 17. Qc2 Rc6 18. Qd1 Qh4+ 19. Nf2 Qg5 20. g3 Nxe3 21. Nh3 Qh6 22. Qb3 Ng2+ **0-1**

V Korchnoi – K Lerner

(Lugano, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 Qe8 7. Nf3 d6 8. g3 b6 9. Bg2 Bb7 10. 0-0 Nbd7 11. b4 Ne4 12. Qc2 f5 13. Ng5 Qg6 14. Nh3 e5 15. f3 Nef6 16. Ng5 Rae8 17. d5 c6 18. Bh3 e4 19. Ne6 cxd5 20. Nxf8 Rxf8 21. cxd5 Bxd5 22. Bf4 Nh5 23. Qd2 Nxf4 24. Qxf4 Bc4 25. Rae1 d5 26. fxe4 fxe4 27. Bf5 Rxf5 28. Qxf5 Qe8 29. Rc1 Nf6 30. g4 h6 31. g5 hxg5 32. Qxg5 Nh7 33. Qg4 b5

34. Rf4 Nf8 35. Rcf1 Ne6 36. R4f2 e3 37. Rf7 d4 38. Rxa7 Bxe2 39. Qxe2 Qg6+ 40. Qg2 Ng5 41. Kh1 d3 42. Rff7 **1-0**

G Kasparov – J Hjartarson

(World Cup, Reykjavik 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b6 7. Bg5 Bb7 8. f3 d6 9. e4 c5 10. d5 Nbd7 11. Nh3 exd5 12. cxd5 a6 13. Bd3 h6 14. Bf4 Qe7 15. 0-0 b5 16. Rfe1 Ne5 17. Bf1 Bc8 18. Nf2 Ng6 19. Bd2 Bd7 20. b4 Rfc8 21. f4 cxb4 22. Qxb4 Rc2 23. Rec1 Rxc1 24. Rxc1 Ne8 25. Re1 Rc8 26. Bd3 Qf6 27. g3 h5 28. Be3 h4 29. Bd4 Qd8 30. Qd2 Nf6 31. Be2 Qe7 32. Bf3 Ne8 33. Re3 Qd8 34. Bd1 hxg3 35. hxg3 Nf8 36. Bb3 Ng6 37. e5 dxe5 38. fxe5 Qg5 39. Ne4 Qh5 40. e6 fxe6 41. Nc5 e5 42. d6+ Kh7 43. Nxd7 exd4 44. Re2 Rc3 45. Qe1 Nh4 46. Nf8+ Kh8 47. Ng6+ Qxg6 48. Rxe8+ Kh7 49. Bg8+ Kh6 50. Qd2+ Kh5 51. Re5+ Nf5 52. Qe2+ Kg5 53. d7 Qd6 54. Qe4 Rxc3+ 55. Kf2 g6 56. Rd5 **1-0**

A Karpov – G Kasparov

(USSR Championship, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b6 7. e3 Bb7 8. b3 d5 9. Nf3 Nbd7 10. Be2 dxc4 11. bxc4 c5 12. 0-0 Rc8 13. Bb2 cxd4 14. exd4 b5 15. c5 a6 16. a4 Nd5 17. Qd2 b4 18. a5 Qc7 19. Rfc1 Qf4 20. Bf1 Rfd8 21. Qxf4 Nxf4 22. Ra4 Nd5 23. Nd2 Rc7 24. Raa1 Nb8 25. Nc4 Bc6 26. Nd6 Ra7 27. f3 Ne7 28. Rc4 Nd5 29. Rcc1 Ne7 30. Rc4 **1/2-1/2**

G Kaidanov – A Vyshmanavin

(Lvov, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b6 7. Bg5 Bb7 8. f3 h6 9. Bh4 d5 10. cxd5 exd5 11. e3 Re8 12. Bf2 c5 13. Bb5 Nc6 14. Ne2 c4 15. b3 cxb3 16. Qxb3 Na5 17. Qa2 Bc6 18. Bd3

Ba4 19. Rb1 Rc8 20. 0-0 Qd7 21. Ng3 Rc3 22. Qd2 Rxa3 23. e4 dxe4 24. fxe4 Ng4 25. Nf5 g6 26. h3 gxf5 27. hxg4 fxe4 28. Bb5 Bxb5 29. Qxh6 Re6 30. Qg5+ Rg6 31. Qxb5 Qxb5 32. Rxb5 Nc4 33. Bh4 Ne3 34. Rc1 Nxc4 35. Rh5 Kg7 36. d5 Rd3 37. Bg5 e3 38. Kf1 Rd2 39. Rc8 Rf2+ 40. Ke1 Rf5 41. d6 Rxd6 42. Rch8 Rxc6 43. Rg5 **0-1**

L Oll – A Goldin

(Klaipeda, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 0-0 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 b6 7. Bg5 Bb7 8. f3 h6 9. Bh4 d5 10. cxd5 exd5 11. Bxf6 Qxf6 12. Qxc7 Ba6 13. Qe5 Qc6 14. Qe3 Rc8 15. Nh3 Qc2 16. Qd2 Qb3 17. Rc1 Nd7 18. Rc3 Qa2 19. Nf4 Nf6 20. g4 g5 21. Nd3 Bxd3 22. exd3 Rxc3 23. Qxc3 Qb1+ 24. Kd2 Re8 25. Bg2 Qa2 26. h4 a5 27. hxg5 hxg5 28. f4 gxf4 29. Bf3 Nh7 30. Rh5 Qb1 31. Bd1 Re3 32. Qc2 Qxc2+ 33. Kxc2 Nf8 34. Rxd5 Ne6 35. Kd2 Rg3 36. Rf5 Rg2+ 37. Kc3 Rg1 38. d5 Nc5 39. Bf3 Rc1+ 40. Kd4 Kf8 41. g5 Ke7 42. Rf6 Nd7 43. d6+ Ke8 44. Rxf4 Rg1 45. Bc6 Rxc6 46. Re4+ Kd8 47. Re7 **1-0**

B The System with . . . d5

G Kasparov – P Nikolic

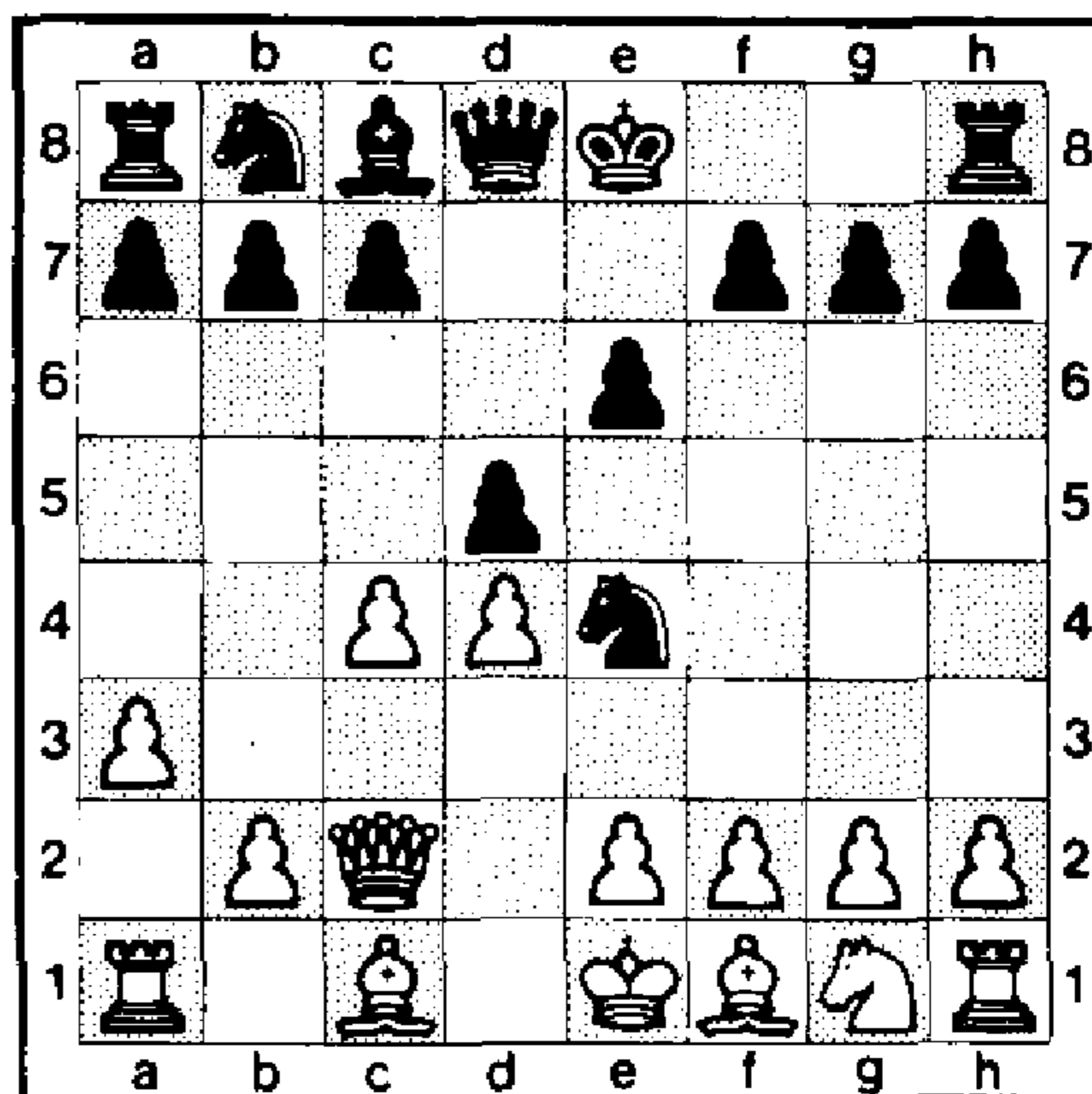
(World Cup, Barcelona 1989)

- 1. **d4** **Nf6**
- 2. **c4** **e6**
- 3. **Nc3** **Bb4**
- 4. **Qc2** **d5**
- 5. **a3** **Bxc3+**
- 6. **Qxc3**

White has acquired the bishop pair, whilst Black has still not resolved the problem of his QB. Simple development does not help Black here e.g. 6. . . . 0-0 7. Nf3 b6 8. Bg5 Bb7 9. Rc1 with the

immediate threat of cxd5 followed by Qxc7. The alternative 6. . . . Nc6 7. Nf3 Ne4 8. Qc2 transposes into a line we examine shortly. Kasparov's opponents have invariably adopted Black's next move.

- 6. . . . **Ne4**
- 7. **Qc2**



Black dare not delay any longer, because White is planning to apply pressure on c7 with Bf4. Admittedly, Black can always block the 'c' file by playing . . . c6, but this hardly improves the situation of his QB and White can simply develop naturally with Bf4, e3 and Bd3.

- 7. . . . **e5**

The radical tactical solution for freeing the QB. There are two main alternatives: (i) 7. . . . c5 as played against Kasparov by the leading Bulgarian player Kiril Georgiev in the 1988 Olympiad. After 8. dxc5 Nc6 9. cxd5 exd5 10. Nf3 Qa5+ 11. Bd2 Qxc5 12. Qxc5 Nxc5 Kasparov gives as best 13. Bc3! 0-0 14. e3 Bf5 15. Rd1 maintaining an advantage. As you can see in the

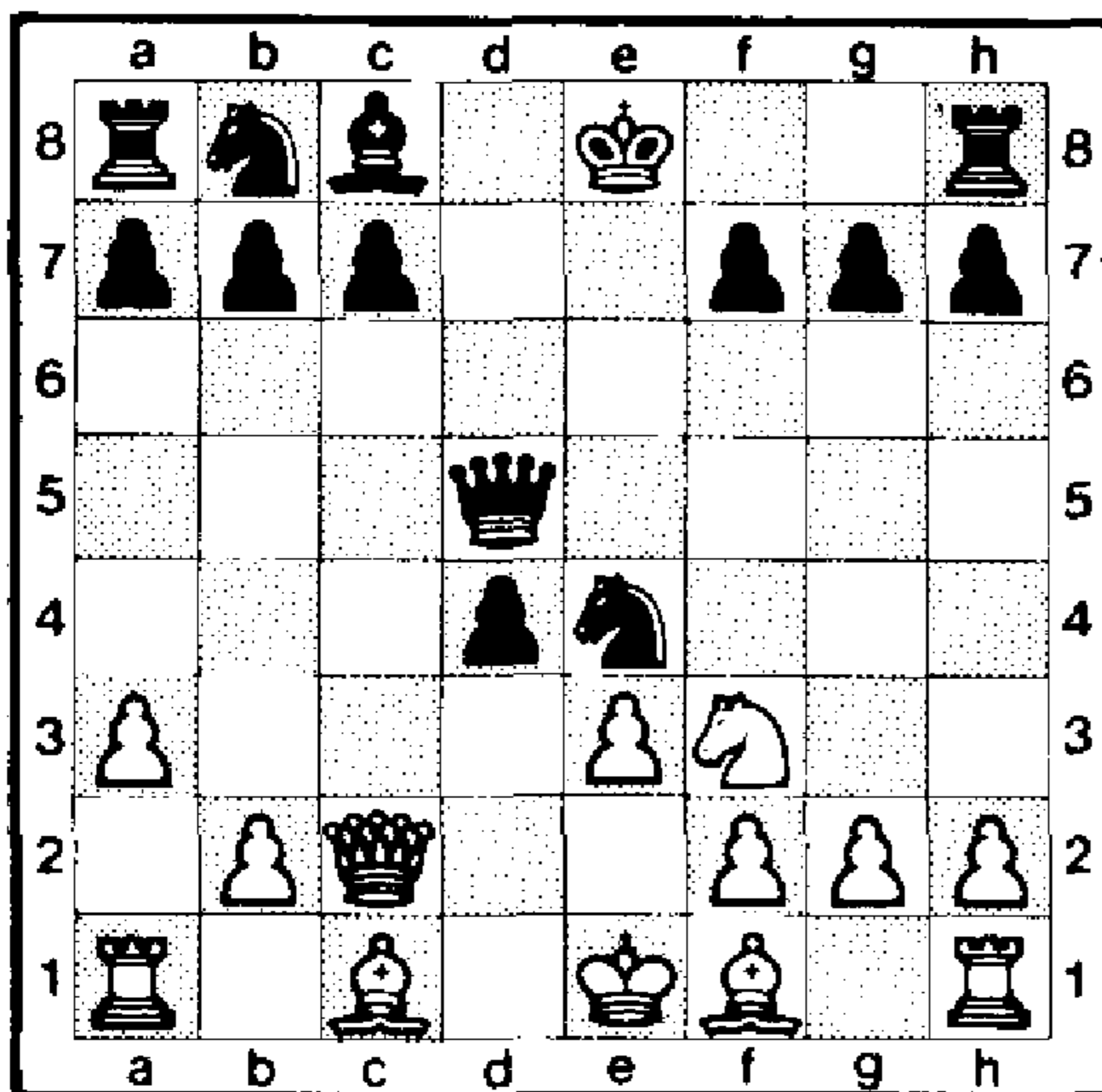
supplementary game, Kasparov played instead 13. Be3?! and his managing to win the game had nothing to do with the opening.

- (ii) 7. . . . Nc6 8. Nf3 e5 constitutes a gambit which has a poor reputation not only among theorists but also with present-day players. Taimanov continues 9. dxe5 Bf5 10. Qb3 dxc4 11. Qxc4 0-0 12. Be3 Qe7 13. g4 Bg6 14. Bf4 with advantage to White. An interesting sub-variation here that could well appeal to Kasparov is 12. g4 Bg6 13. h4 with sharp play.

Returning to the game continuation, although no definitive conclusion has been reached about the acceptance of the pawn by 8. dxe5 Nc6 and . . . Bf5 with active play for Black, Kasparov prefers a more clear-cut position with a small but lasting advantage.

8. e3

The point is that Black can no longer transpose to our note above, since 8. . . . Nc6 loses a piece after 9. cxd5 Qxd5 10. Bc4, whilst 8. . . . Bf5 fails to 9. Bd3



Position after 10. Nf3!

e.g. 9. . . . exd4 10. cxd5 Qxd5 11. f3 etc.

- 8. . . . exd4**
9. cxd5! Qxd5
10. Nf3!

The danger facing Black is clearly shown in the variation 10. . . . dxe3? 11. Bc4 exf2+ 12. Ke2 Qc6 (12. . . . Qf5 13. Bd3) 13. Ne5 winning a piece; if Black then tries to obtain material compensation by playing 13. . . . Ng3+, he loses to 14. hxg3 Qxg2? 15. Bxf7+ Ke7 (15. . . . Kf8 16. Qc5 mate) 16. Qc5+ Kf6 17. Bg5+! Kxg5 18. Nd7+ Kg4 19. Qh5+ Kxg3 20. Qh4 mate.

10. . . . Qc6!

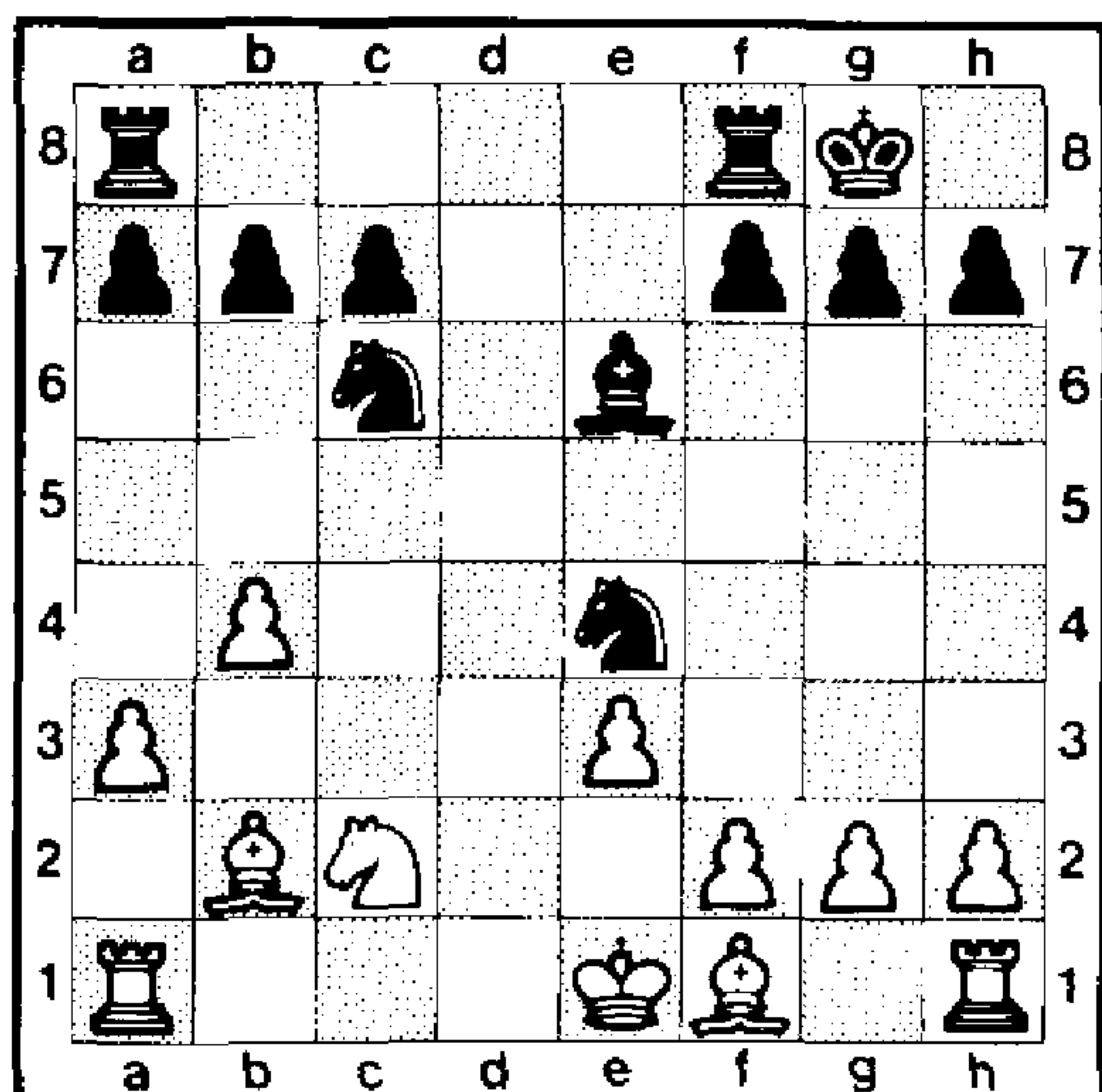
Black applies the emergency brake! It is in fact too late for quiet developing moves e.g. 10. . . . 0-0 11. Bc4 Qf5 (11. . . . Qc6? 12. Ne5 wins) 12. Nxd4 Qg4?! (12. . . . Qg6 13. f3 wins a piece and 12. . . . Qe5 13. Bd3 wins the pawn on c7 or h7) 13. Be2! (but not 13. f3? Qh4+ 14. g3 Nxc3 15. Qf2 Nf5!) 13. . . . Qg6 (13. . . . Qxg2? 14. Bf3 or 13. . . . Qh4? 14 g3) 14. Bf3 Re8 15. Qxc7 winning a pawn.

11. Nxd4

Now 11. Bc4? fails to 11. . . . Nd6!

- 11. . . . Qxc2**
12. Nxc2 Nc6
13. b4 Be6
14. Bb2 0-0

White's bishop pair and possible pressure down the 'c' file guarantee him an edge in the end-game, despite the fact that he is a little behind in development. The best continuation is 15. Bb5! threatening to weaken Black's pawn position e.g. 15. . . . Bd5 16. Rc1 Rfc8 (White was planning 17. Bxc6 Bxc6 18. Nd4 which is why both 16. . . . a6 and 16. . . . Nd6 would be bad) 17. 0-0 Nd6 (White would equally play his rook to d1 after 17. . . . a6 or 17. . . . Nf6) 18. Rfd1! Nxb5 (18. . . . Bxg2 19. Rxd6!) 19. Rxd5 Nd6 20. Ne1



planning to post the knight on c5. In these and other possible variations, White retains a small but enduring advantage, as the objective Predag Nikolic admitted after the game.

This is the end of the opening phase. In the remainder of the game, which we quote for the sake of completeness, Kasparov adopted a faulty plan and gradually frittered away his opening plus.

- 15. Rc1?! Nd6
- 16. b5 Na5
- 17. Nd4 Bc4!

(Black takes over the c4 square . . .)

- 18. Bc3 Bxf1
- 19. Rxf1 Nac4
- 20. Bb4 Rfc8
- 21. Ke2 a6
- 22. Bxd6 Nxd6
- 23. a4 axb5
- 24. axb5 Ra5

(. . . reminding White that he too has weak points.)

- 25. Rb1 Ra2+
- 26. Kf3 Re8
- 27. Ra1 Rb2
- 28. Rfb1 Rxb1
- 29. Rxb1 Re5

(The vulnerability of his b5 pawn cuts out any winning chances for Kasparov.)

- 30. g4 h5
- 31. h3 hxg4+
- 32. hxg4 g6
- 33. Ke2 Rc5
- 34. Kd3 f5
- 35. gxf5 gxf5
- 36. f3 b6
- 37. e4 1/2-1/2

Supplementary Material
G Kasparov – K Georgiev

(Thessaloniki Olympiad, 1988)

- 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 d5
- 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 Ne4 7. Qc2 c5
- 8. dxc5 Nc6 9. cxd5 exd5 10. Nf3 Qa5+
- 11. Bd2 Qxc5 12. Qxc5 Nxc5 13. Be3?! (13. Bc3! 0-0 14. e3 Bf5 15. Rd1 gives White the advantage according to Kasparov) 13. . . . Ne4 14. Nd4 0-0
- 15. Rd1 Be6 16. f3 Nd6 17. Nxe6 fxe6
- 18. Bc5 Rad8 19. e4 Rfe8 20. exd5 exd5+ 21. Kf2 b6 22. Be3 Re5 23. Bd3 Rf8 24. Rc1 Na5 25. Bd4 Re7 26. Rhe1 Rd7 27. Bc3 Nb3 28. Rcd1 Nc5 29. Re5 Nf7 30. Re3 Nd6 31. Bb1 Nc4 32. Re2 Rfd8 33. Ba2 b5 34. b3 d4 35. bxc4 dxc3 36. Rxd7 Rxd7 37. cxb5+ Kf8 38. Rc2 Rb7 39. Bc4 Na4 40. Ke3 Re7+ 41. Kd4 Rd7+ 42. Ke5 Rb7 43. Kd6 Rb6+ 44. Kd5 Rh6 45. Bb3 Nb6+ 46. Kc5 Rxh2 47. a4 Ke7 48. Kc6 Nd7 49. Rxc3 Rxc3 50. f4 h5 51. Re3+ Kd8 52. Rd3 Rg6+ 53. Kb7 h4 54. Kxa7 Rg3 55. Rxg3 hxg3 56. Bd5 Kc7 57. Bg2 Kd6 58. b6 g6 59. a5 Kc5 60. b7 Kb4 61. a6 **1-0**

M Gurevic – G Franzoni

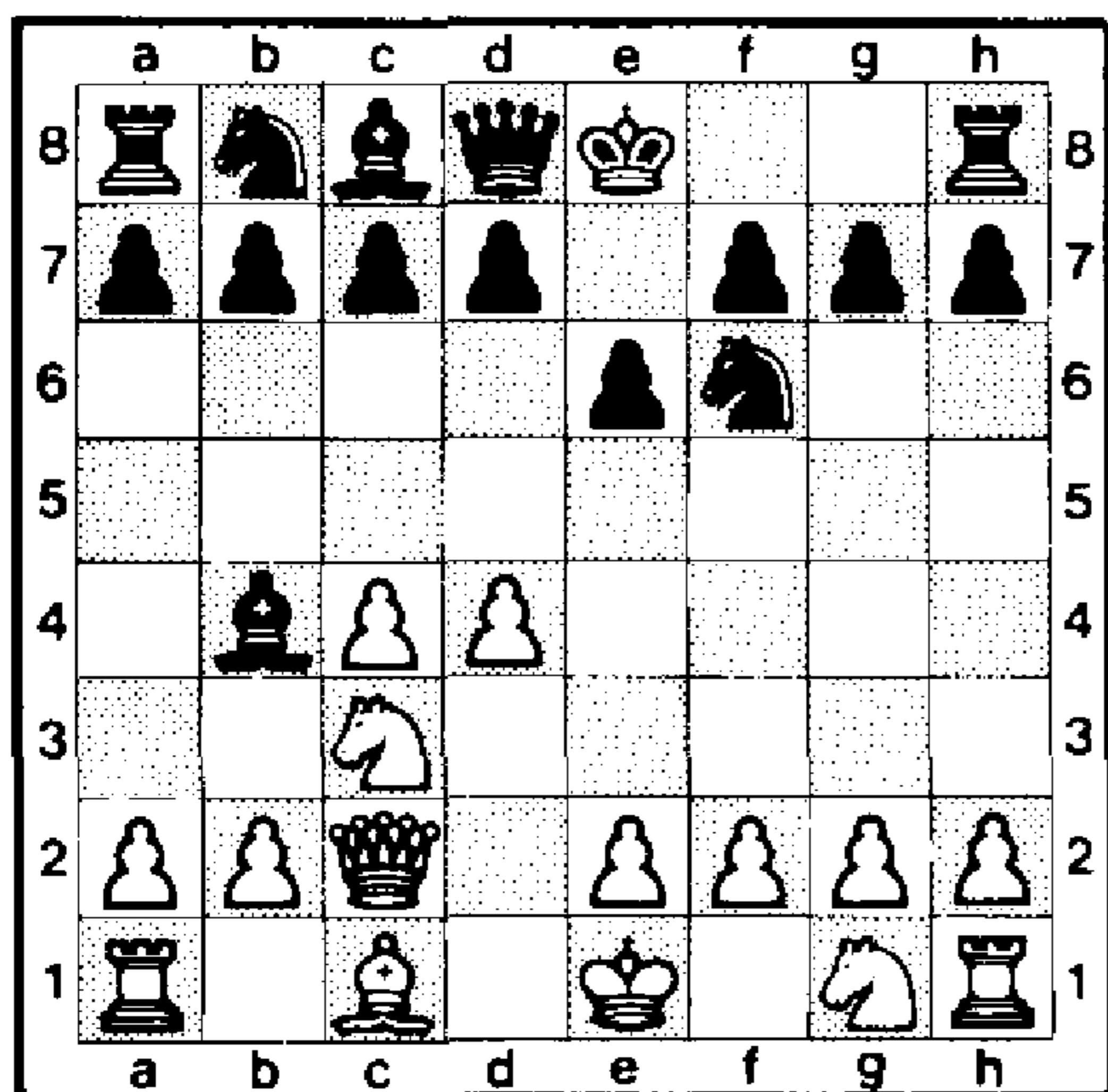
(World Team Championship, Lucerne 1989)

- 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 d5
- 5. a3 Bxc3+ 6. Qxc3 Ne4 7. Qc2 c5 8. dxc5 Nc6 9. cxd5 exd5 10. Nf3 Bf5 11.

b4 0-0 (11. . . . Ng3 12. Qb2!) 12. Bb2 b6
 13. b5 bxc5 14. bxc6 Qa5+ 15. Nd2
 Rab8 16. c7 Rb6 17. Be5 c4 18. f3 Nxd2
 19. Qxd2 c3 20. Qg5 c2+ 21. Kf2 Qc5+
 22. e3 Bg6 23. Ba6 f6 24. Qf4 fxe5
 25. Qxf8+ Kxf8 26. c8(Q)+ Qxc8 27.
 Bxc8 d4 28. e4 **1-0**

C Alternatives on Black's Fourth Move

- 1. d4 Nf6
- 2. c4 e6
- 3. Nc3 Bb4
- 4. Qc2



We have already considered 4. . . . d5 and 4. . . . 0-0 followed by . . . b6. Black can also play 4. . . . b6, 4. . . . d6 and, in particular, 4. . . . c5. Unfortunately, since we have no examples from Kasparov's games, the reader will have to make his own choice from the lines available. This section deals with a few possible ideas to help with the choice.

4. . . . c5

This is the main alternative reply. 4. . . .

b6 allows 5. e4, as in the supplementary game Rodriguez – Vilela. The latter move can also be played against 4. . . . d6, but the supplementary game Barbero – Assmann illustrates another promising plan for White.

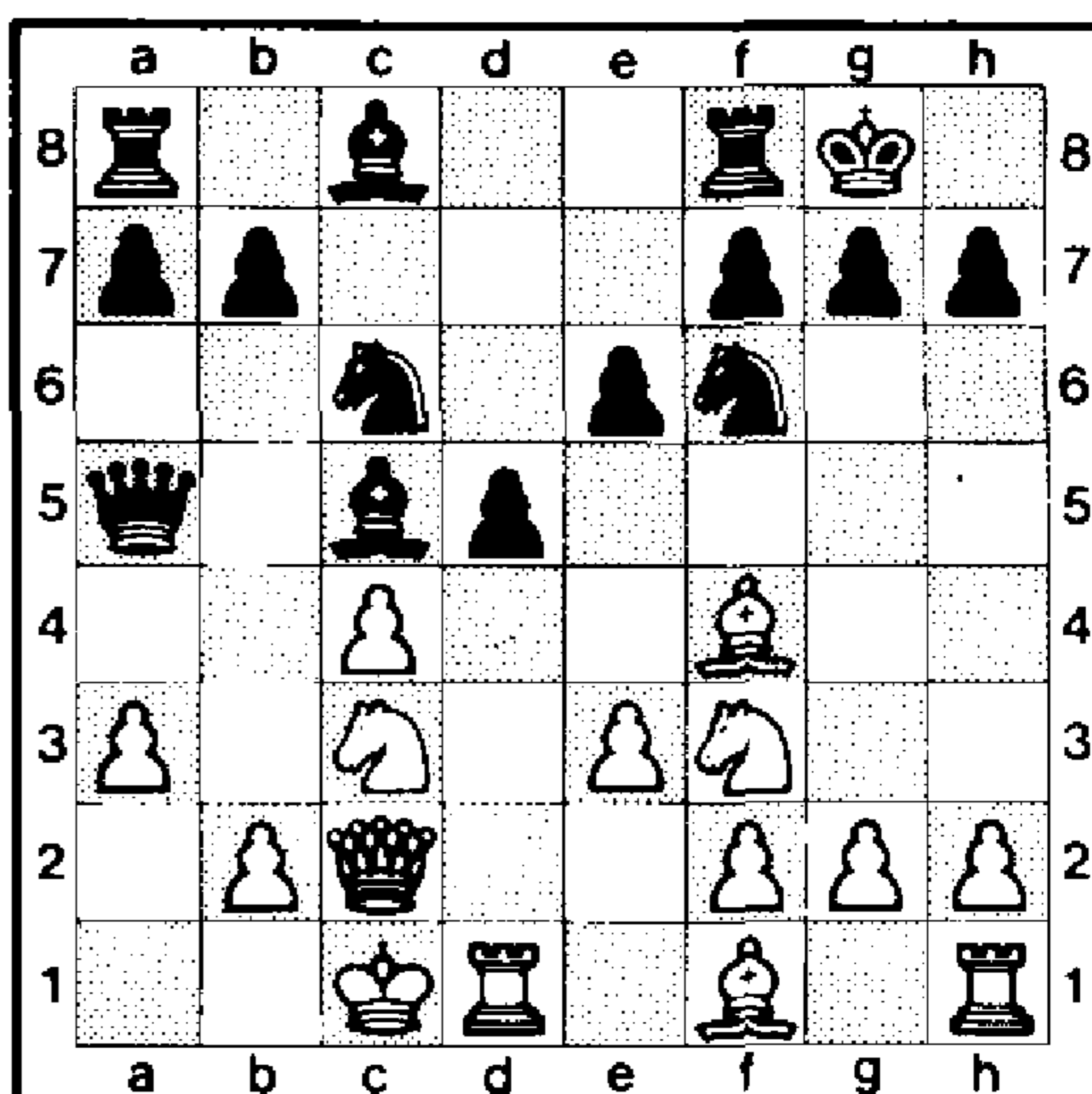
5. dxc5 Bxc5

Sometimes, Black first plays 5. . . . 0-0 or 5. . . . Na6 but after 6. Bf4, threatening to play to d6, we usually have a transposition to our main line with 6. . . . Bxc5.

6. Bf4 0-0

Once again, 6. . . . d5 7. e3 0-0 merely transposes. Note that the aggressive 7. . . . d4? loses a pawn after 8. 0-0-0 Nc6 9. Nf3.

- 7. Nf3 d5
- 8. e3 Nc6
- 9. a3 Qa5
- 10. 0-0-0



10. . . . Be7

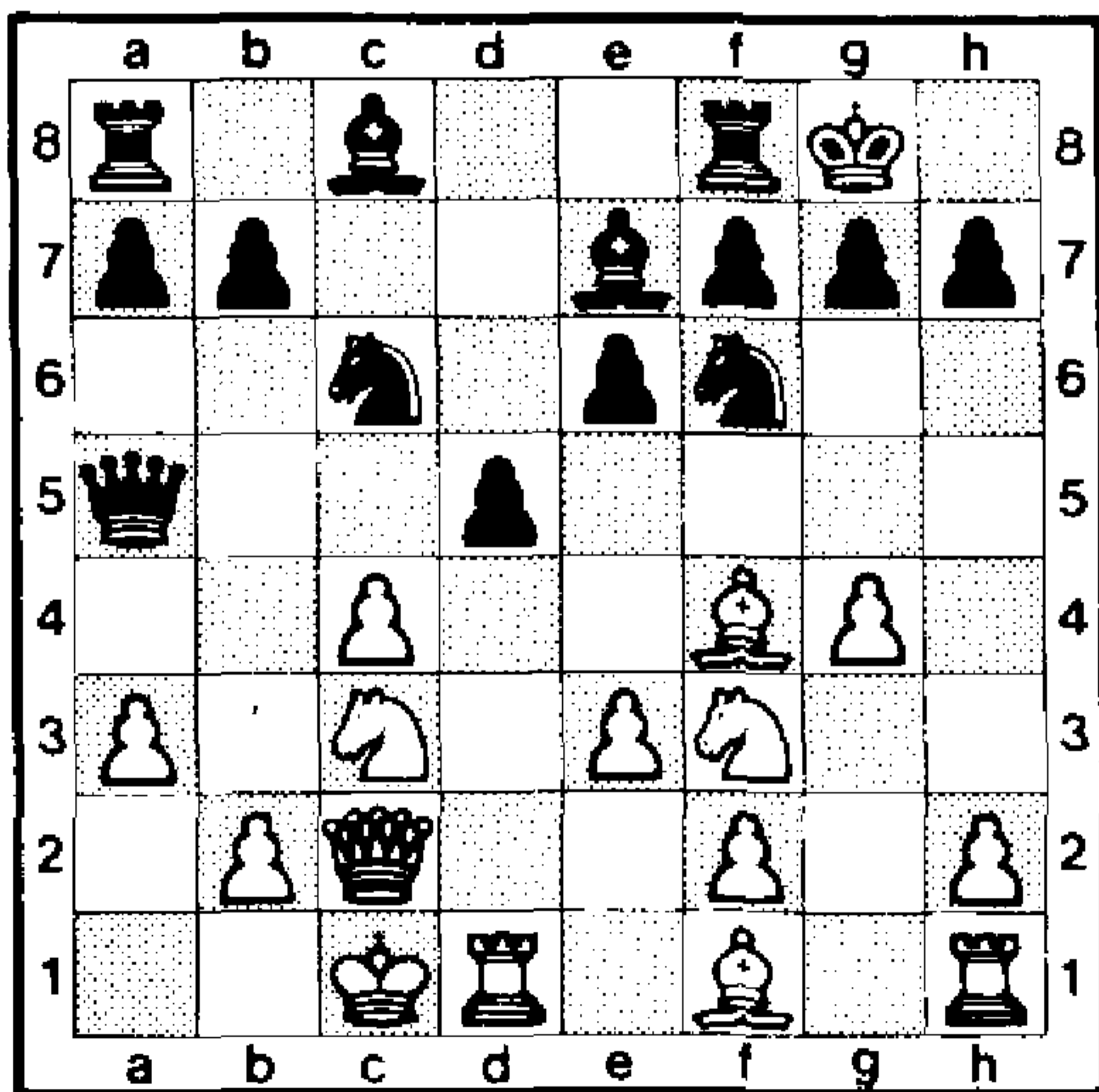
Although the fork by b4 is not yet a threat in view of . . . Qxa3+, Black makes a preventive retreat, since 10. . . . Rd8 is answered strongly by 11. Nb5! (protecting a3 and threatening b4 and Bc7) 11.

. . . dxc4 12. Bxc4 when Black has problems. After 10. . . . Bd7 White does not play 11. cxd5 exd5 12. Nxd5? Nxd5 13. Rxd5, because of 13. . . . Bxe3+ winning, but again replies 11. Nb5! with unpleasant threats. Finally, 10. . . . a6, guarding b5, is no improvement, because 11. g4 would immediately threaten to win the d5 pawn by 12. g5.

It is interesting to note that the above diagram frequently arises by transposition from the Bf4 variation of the Queen's Gambit, so don't be surprised to find three of our supplementary games which do not begin with the Nimzo-Indian moves!

11. g4!

This gambit caught out two prominent victims in 1988. Firstly, in the USSR Team Tournament, Andrei Sokolov, the finalist of the 1986–1987 Candidates matches, lost to Mikhail Gurevic in only nineteen moves. Secondly, a few days later, the highly ranked Nigel Short lost an important match-game with this line in just twenty-seven moves against his fellow-countryman Jon Speelman (see Supplementary Material).



The 'g' pawn is taboo e.g. 11. . . . dxc4 12. Bxc4 Nxc4? 13. Rg1 Nf6 (13. . . . e5 14. Bg5 with a strong attack) 14. Bh6 Ne8 (14. . . . Nh5 15. Ng5! f5 16. Nxe6; or here 15. . . . Bxg5? 16. Rxc5 winning) 15. Rxc5+! Nxc5 16. Rg1 Bf6 (or 16. . . . f5 17. Rxc5+ Kh8 18. Rxe7 Nxe7 19. Bxf8 winning) 17. Ne4 Qd8 18. Ng5! and there is no defence to the threats. In these variations, the moves f5 or h5 guarding the knight simply fail to h3. This means that in the diagram position White stands very well, as our three illustrative games confirm.

Supplementary Material

G Barbero – A Assmann

(Lugano, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 d6 5. Nf3 Nbd7 6. Bd2 0-0 7. a3 Bxc3 8. Bxc3 Qe7 9. e4 e5 10. d5 a5 11. b4 b6 12. Bd3 axb4 13. axb4 Rxa1+ 14. Bxa1 Bb7 15. 0-0 Ra8 16. Bb2 Qd8 17. g3 Nh5 18. Ne1 g6 19. f4 c5 20. fxe5 Nxe5 21. bxc5 bxc5 22. Bxe5 dxe5 23. Qb2 Qc7 24. Be2 Ng7 25. Nd3 f5 26. Qxe5 Qxe5 27. Nxe5 fxe4 28. Nd7 Rc8 29. Nf6+ Kh8 30. Nxe4 Nf5 31. Bg4 Ba6 32. Bxf5 gxf5 33. Nd6 Rb8 34. Ra1 Rb6 35. Nxf5 **1-0**

A Rodriguez – J Vilela

(Camaguey, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. Qc2 b6 5. e4 Bb7 6. Bd3 c5 7. d5 b5 8. b3 exd5 9. exd5 0-0 10. Nge2 d6 11. 0-0 bxc4 12. bxc4 Nbd7 13. f4 Re8 14. Ng3 Nf8 15. Nce4 Nxe4 16. Nxe4 Bc8 17. f5 f6 18. g4 Rb8 19. Bf4 Rb6 20. Qg2 Nd7 21. g5 Rxe4 22. Bxe4 Bc3 23. Rab1 Qe7 24. Kh1 fxg5 25. Bxg5 Bf6 26. Bf4 Ne5 27. Qc2 h6 28. Rxb6 axb6 29. Rb1 Nd7 30. Bd3 Be5 31. Qe2 Qf6 32. Bd2 Qh4 33. a4 Nf6 34. Qg2 **1-0**



E Vladimirov, a former second of Kasparov, had to leave the World Champion's 'team' under suspicion of spying for Karpov . . .

E Vladimirov – D Campora

(GMA Open, Moscow 1989)

1 d4 d5 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Nf6 4. Nf3 Be7 5. Bf4 0-0 6. e3 c5 7. dxc5 Bxc5 8. Qc2 Nc6 9. a3 Qa5 10. 0-0-0 Be7 11. g4 Rd8 12. h3 a6 13. Nd2 Qb6 14. Bg2 d4 15. Na4 Qa7 16. Bxc6 bxc6 17. exd4 Qxd4 18. Be3 Qd3 19. Qxd3 Rxd3 20. g5 Ne8 21. Kc2 Rd8 22. Nb3 e5 23. Na5 Bf5+ 24. Kc3 Be4 25. Rhg1 Bf3 26. Rxd8 Bxd8 27. Nb7 f5 28. Re1 Bc7 29. Bb6 e4 (after 29. . . . Bxb6 30. Nxb6 Rb8 Black does not win a piece: 31. Rxe5 Nc7 32. Re7 Rxb7 33. Na8 Nxa8 34. Rxb7 c5 35. Ra7 and after Rxa6 followed by b4 the white pawns are overwhelming; or here 31. . . .

Rxb7 32. Rxe8+ Kf7 33. Re3) 30. Bxc7 Nxc7 31. Nac5 Kf7 32. Na5 Kg6 33 Nxc6 Kxg5 34. Rg1+ Kh6 35. Nd4 g6 36. Nxf3 exf3 37. b4 f4 38. Re1 Rc8 39. Re7 g5 40. Rd7 Kg6 41. Rd6+ Kf5 42. Rh6 Rh8 43. Nd7! (better than 43. Nxa6 Nxa6 44. Rxa6 h5 followed by . . . g4) 43. . . . Re8 44. Rf6+Ke4 45. Rc6 Kf5 46. Rc5+! Kg6 47. Ne5+ Rxe5 48. Rxe5 Kf6 49. Re1 Black overstepped the time-limit in a lost position e.g. 49. . . . h5 50. a4 g4 51. hxg4 hxg4 52. Rg1 Kf5 53. b5 g3 54. fxg3 f2 55. g4+! Ke4 56. Rf1 Kf3 57. g5 Kg2 58. Rxf2+Kxf2 59. g6 Ne6 60. b6 f3 61. b7 Ke2 62. b8(Q) etc. **1-0**

J Speelman – N Short

(Third Game, London 1988)

1 d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nf3 d5 4. Nc3 Be7 5. Bf4 0-0 6. e3 c5 7. dxc5 Nc6 8. Qc2 Bxc5 9. a3 Qa5 10. 0-0-0 Be7 11. g4 Rd8 12. h3 a6 13. Nd2 e5 14. g5 Ne8 15. Nb3 Qb6 16. Nxd5 Rxd5 17. cxd5 exf4 18. dxc6 fxe3 19. fxe3 Bxg5 20. Kb1 bxc6 21. Bc4 Ra7 22. Rhf1 Bf6 23. Qe4 Kf8 24. Qxh7 g6 25. e4 c5 26. e5 Bg7 27. e6 **1-0**

M Gurevic – A Sokolov

(USSR Championship 1988)

1. Nf3 d5 2. d4 Nf6 3. c4 e6 4. Bf4 Be7 5. e3 0-0 6. Nc3 c5 7. dxc5 Bxc5 8. Qc2 Nc6 9. a3 Qa5 10. 0-0-0 dxc4 11. Bxc4 Be7 12. g4 b5 13. Bxb5 Bb7 14. Nd2 Nb4 15. axb4 Bxb4 16. Nc4 Qa1+ 17. Kd2 Bxc3+ 18. Ke2 Qa2 19. Ra1 **1-0**

3 The Modern Benoni

After the moves **1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3** we have considered 3. . . . d5 leading to the Queen's Gambit (Chapter 1) and **3. . . . Bb4** giving us the Nimzo-Indian Defence (Chapter 2), so let us turn now to the third defensive idea **3. . . . c5** referred to as the Modern Benoni.

Why this name? Aaron Reinganum, a chess-player about whom we know nothing else, analysed the opening at the beginning of the nineteenth century as an escape from his melancholia. In 1825 he published a book on the opening, christening it with the Hebrew name Ben-Oni ('son of my tears'). The chess world adopted this name, although spelling it incorrectly 'Benoni'.

The first known game beginning 1. d4 c5 (Hanstein – Von der Lasa) was played in 1841 in Berlin. Two years later, it appeared in two games of the World Championship between Staunton and Saint-Amant but with Black, on both occasions, answering 2. d5 with 2. . . . f5 and only later advancing the 'e' and 'd' pawns. All the above three games were won by White (our source is *The Old Benoni* by Stolya and Kondratiev, 1965).

The opening lay fallow for a century before becoming popular in the second half of the twentieth century and being differentiated as follows:

The Old Benoni characterized by the moves 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 c5 3. d5, with Black leaving his pawn on e7 and playing . . . g6 and . . . Bg7;

The Czech Benoni introduced into prac-

tice by Czech players, in particular by Karel Hromadka, where Black answers 3. d5 with 3. . . . e5 and normally develops his bishop on e7;

The Modern Benoni where Black plays . . . e6 before or after d5 then exchanges pawns to bring about a sharp asymmetrical position giving rise to dynamic and tactical situations.

The Old Benoni almost belongs to history, hardly ever occurring in modern tournaments except via the King's Indian Defence or else as a means of transposing later into the Modern Benoni, thus avoiding opening disasters similar to our model game Kasparov – Nunn. Equally, the Czech Benoni (successfully played at one time by Larsen) has few adherents nowadays and none of these a Czech player! Even the Modern Benoni, which was immensely popular in the sixties and seventies, is tending to be adopted more against 3. Nf3 or 3. g3 than against 3. Nc3. The present chapter will explain why.

Our model game is perhaps too one-sided to be considered one of Kasparov's most impressive games, but its fame is due to other reasons. Dr John Nunn (now a leading grandmaster) was even at the time of this game among the top thirty best players in the world and had an excellent reputation as a theoretician. In fact, only a few months before this game, his *Benoni for the Tournament Player* had been published and is still considered the best work on the subject. And yet, despite all this, we see him

having to resign after a mere twenty-one moves! After the game, he admitted that, whilst still believing in his pet system, 'it is impossible to play it against Garry.'

It looks as if he is right on both counts, because, although the Benoni is still played in tournaments, no one has since dared to play it against the World Champion (simuls not counting!) . . .

G Kasparov – J Nunn

(Lucerne Olympiad 1982)

- 1. d4 Nf6
- 2. c4 e6
- 3. Nc3 c5
- 4. d5 exd5
- 5. cxd5

The same position can be reached via the sequence 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 c5 3. d5 e6 4. Nc3 exd5 5. cxd5, giving us the Main Line.

- 5. . . . d6
- 6. e4 g6
- 7. f4

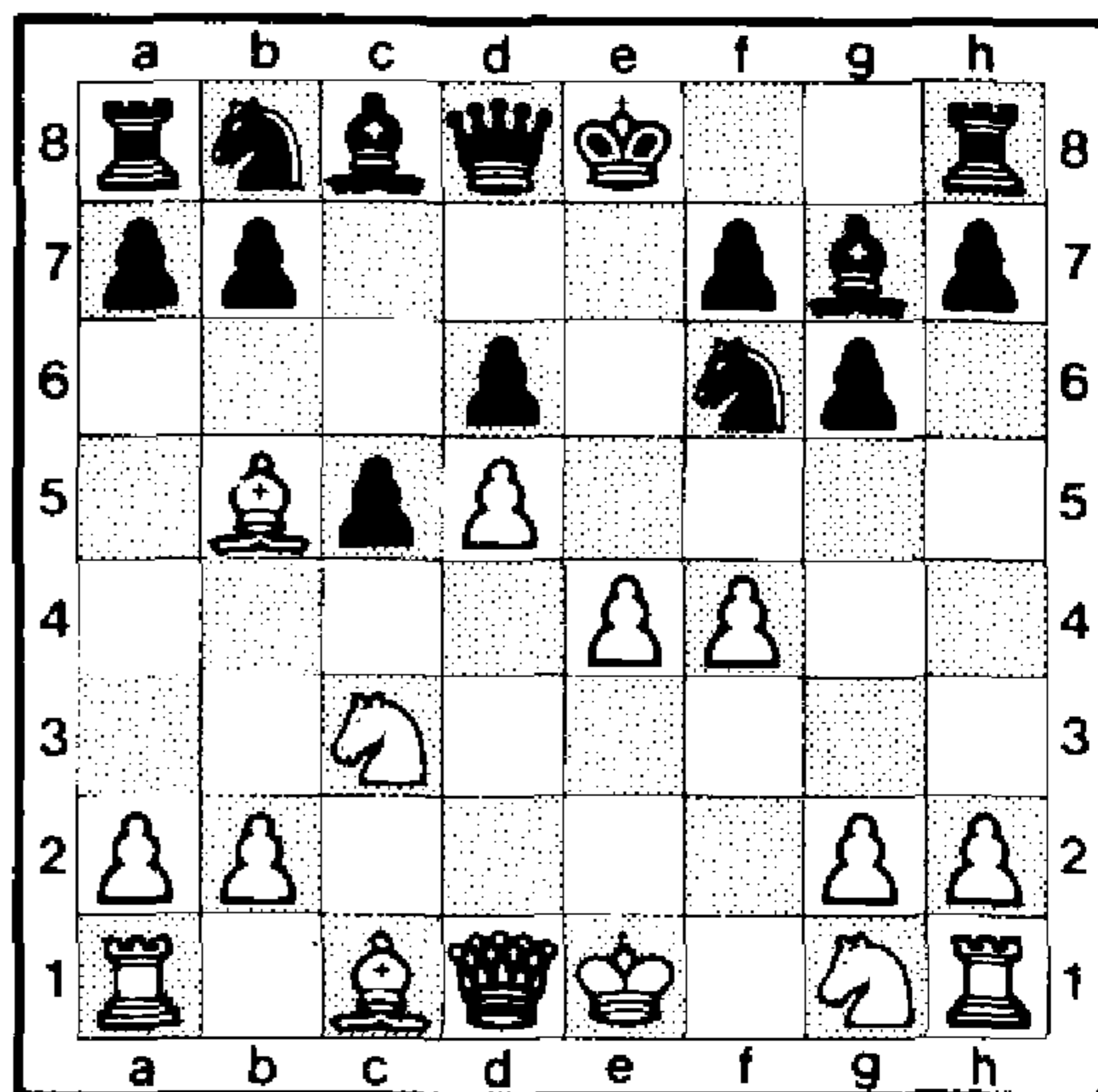
Whether or not we can definitely say that this early pawn-storm is the best counter to the Benoni, there is no doubt that it is the ideal attacking weapon for an aggressive player!

- 7. . . . Bg7

Although 7. . . . a6 prevents the following check, it allows White time to act energetically in the centre with 8. e5 dxe5 9. fxe5 Ng4 10. e6! and the knight hangs; or here 9. . . . Nfd7 10. e6.

- 8. Bb5+ Nfd7

Considered the best reply. 8. . . . Kf8? would block in the h8 rook and the more cunning 8. . . . Ke7 (threatening to drive away the bishop with . . . a6 and then castle artificially by . . . Re8 and . . . Kf8-g8) gives White immediate attacking chances e.g. 9. e5 dxe5 10. fxe5 Ng4 11.



Position after 8. Bb5+

Bg5+ f6 12. d6+ Kf8 13. Nf3!! fxe5 (or 13. . . . Nxe5 14. Nxe5 with advantage to White) 14. 0-0 Bf5 (14. . . . Ne3 15. Ng5+ Nxf1 16. Qf3+ Bf6 17. Rxf1 and Black cannot survive) 15. e6 Bf6 16. e7+ Bxe7 17. dxe7+ Qxe7 18. Nd5 with an overwhelming game.

The only serious alternative defence is the ultra-sharp 8. . . . Nbd7 9. e5 dxe5 10. fxe5 Nh5 when White can win a piece by 11. e6 but cannot avoid great complications beginning with 11. . . . fxe6 12. dxe6 Qh4+ or the immediate 11. . . . Qh4+. [Our own David Norwood is an expert on this line but has been forced to admit that it is perhaps not good enough! See Supplementary Material for a recent example.]

If White wants a practical alternative to winning the piece, he can try 11. Nf3! 0-0 12. Bg5 (once again the win of a piece by 12. g4 Nxe5 13. gxh5 Bh3! is risky) and:
 (i) 12. . . . Qb6 13. Be7 Re8 14. d6 with strong pressure after Bc4 and Nd5
 (ii) 12. . . . Qe8 13. d6 Bxe5 14. Be7 Bf6 15. Nd5 with advantage to White



Grandmaster John Nunn has also made his name as the author of several important books on chess theory.

(iii) 12. . . . f6 13. exf6 Ndx6 14. 0-0 a6 15. Be2 b5 16. d6! with active play (Konikowsky) e.g. 16. . . . Bb7 17. g4 h6 18. gxh5 hxg5 19. hxg6; or 16. . . . h6 17. Be3 c4 18. Ne5.

Returning to the game continuation 8. . . . Nfd7 which avoids such lines, Black still has problems disentangling his queen's side pieces, as we shall see.

9. a4

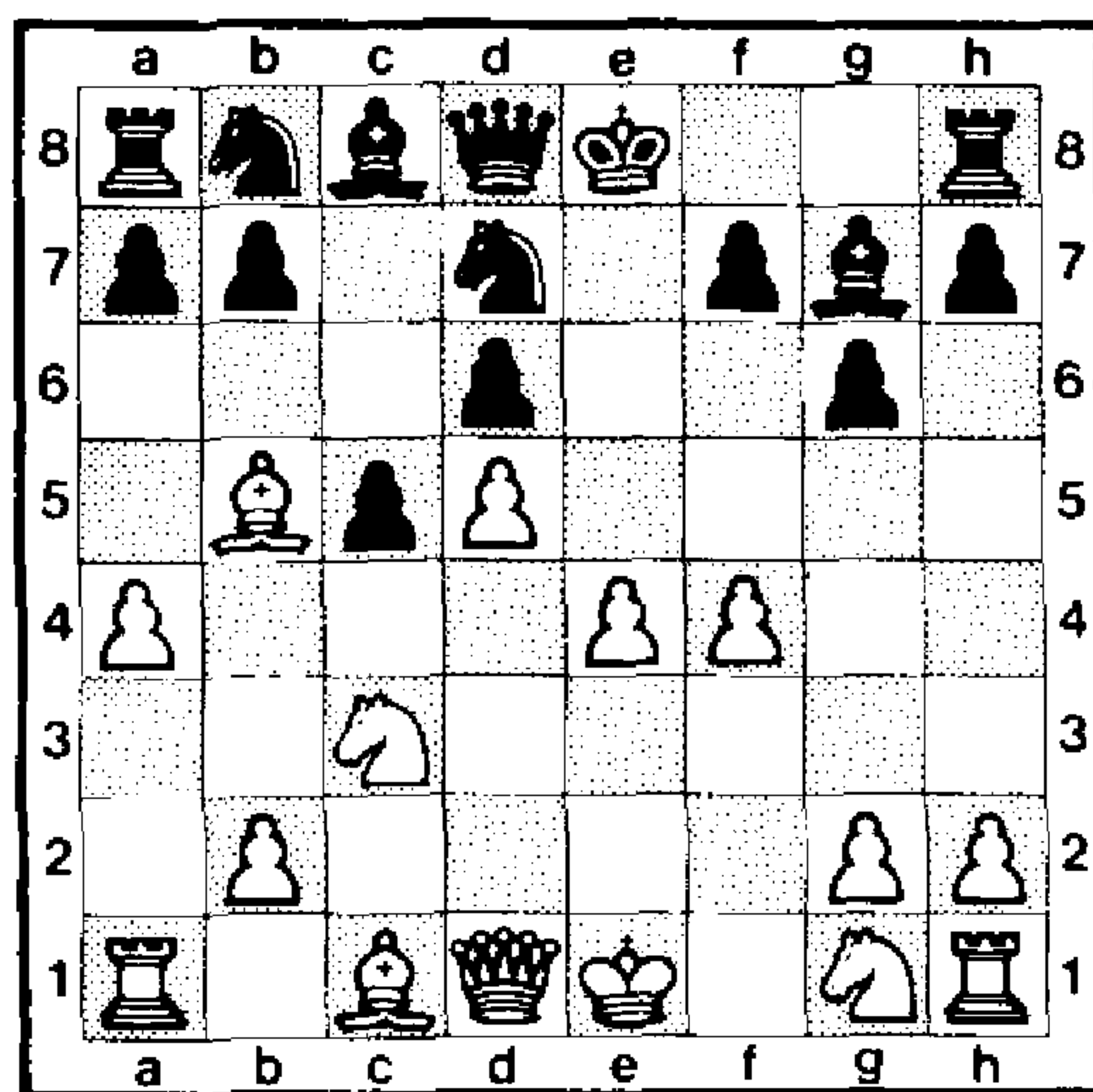
According to Kasparov, this move is stronger than the alternatives Bd3, Be2 or Nf3. It stops any queen's side expansion by Black whilst reserving the option of playing the bishop back to the most suitable square on the a6-f1 diagonal or even of exchanging it with gain of time.

9. . . . Na6

(see diagram opposite)

We shall examine the obvious 9. . . . 0-0 in the supplementary games. Another

idea is 9. . . . Qh4+ (or 9. . . . a6 10. Bd3 Qh4+ 11. g3) 10. g3 Qd8 (10. . . . Qe7) losing time in order to create white square weaknesses e.g.

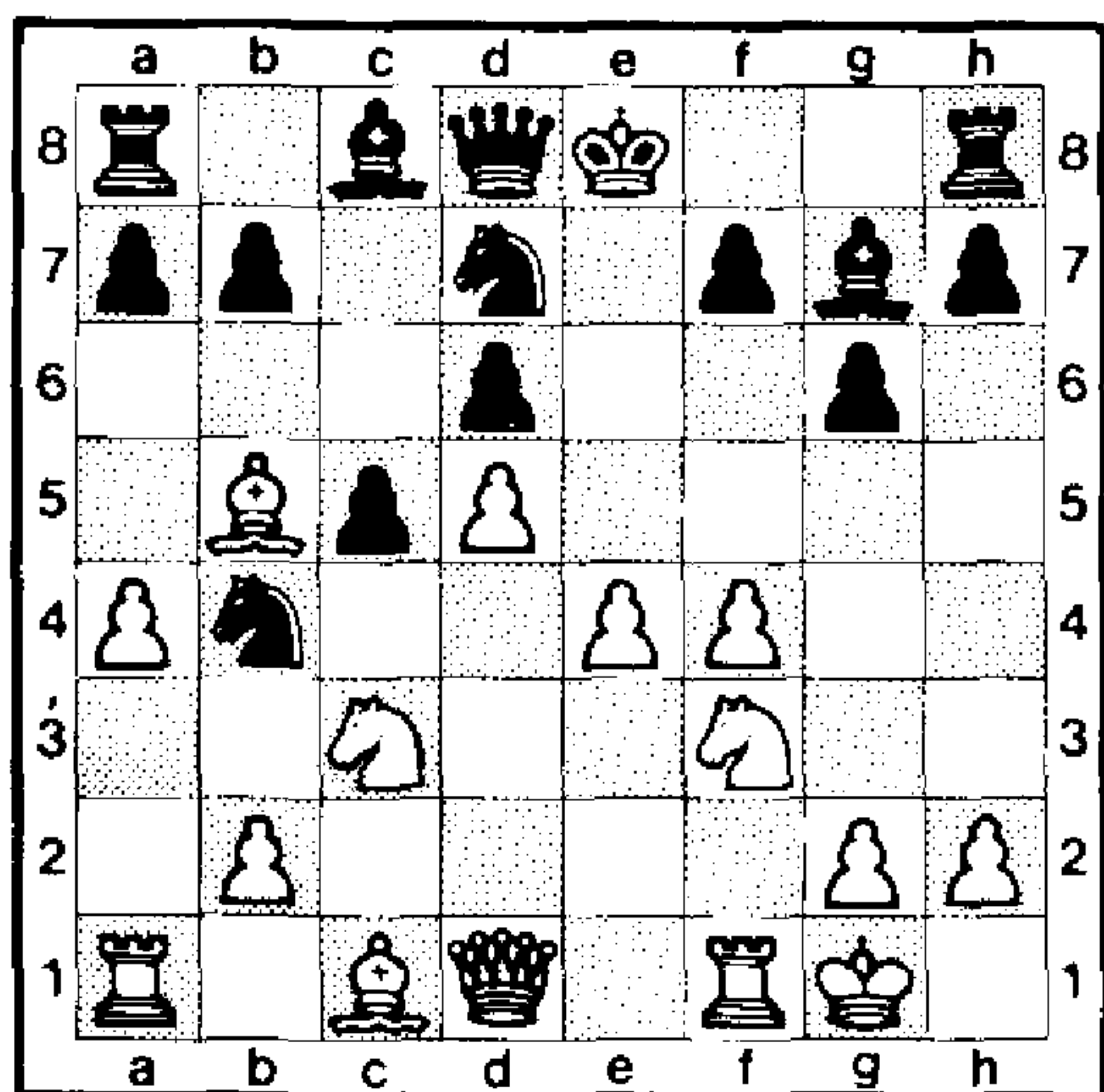


(i) 9. . . . Qh4+ 10. g3 Qe7 11. Nf3 0-0 (the risky pawn-snatch by 11. . . . Bxc3+ 12. bxc3 Qxe4+ gives White an attack well worth the pawn after 13. Kf2 0-0 14. Re1 Qf5 14. Bf1! followed by c4, Bb2 and Bd3) 12. 0-0 and, according to Konikowsky, the plan of Re1 followed by e5 (if then . . . dxe5, d6 is strong) gives White a very active game.

(ii) 9. . . . Qh4+ 10. g3 Qd8 11. Nf3 a6 (this move can also be played earlier) 12. Bd3 0-0 13. 0-0 Nf6. In several games, White has played Kg2 to prevent . . . Bh3, thus allowing Black to achieve his strategic aim of eliminating the KN after . . . Bg4.

Nevertheless, it is doubtful whether Black can equalize by such a time-wasting plan. For example, instead of 13. 0-0 it is worth considering 13. Kf2 Nf6 14. h3 followed by Bg2 and Re1 restraining Black's QB.

10. Nf3 Nb4
11. 0-0



11. . . . a6?

After 11. . . . 0-0 12. Re1 a6 13. Bf1! Kasparov prefers White, as Black's Q side still has to be disentangled and it is difficult for him to organize the typical Benoni pressure on the 'e' pawn e.g. 13. . . . Re8 14. h3 Nf6 15. g4 Rb8 16. Bg2 threatening the immediate 17. e5 dxe5 18. Nxe5 followed by d6 (or Nc4 then d6).

12. Bxd7+ Bxd7
13. f5! 0-0

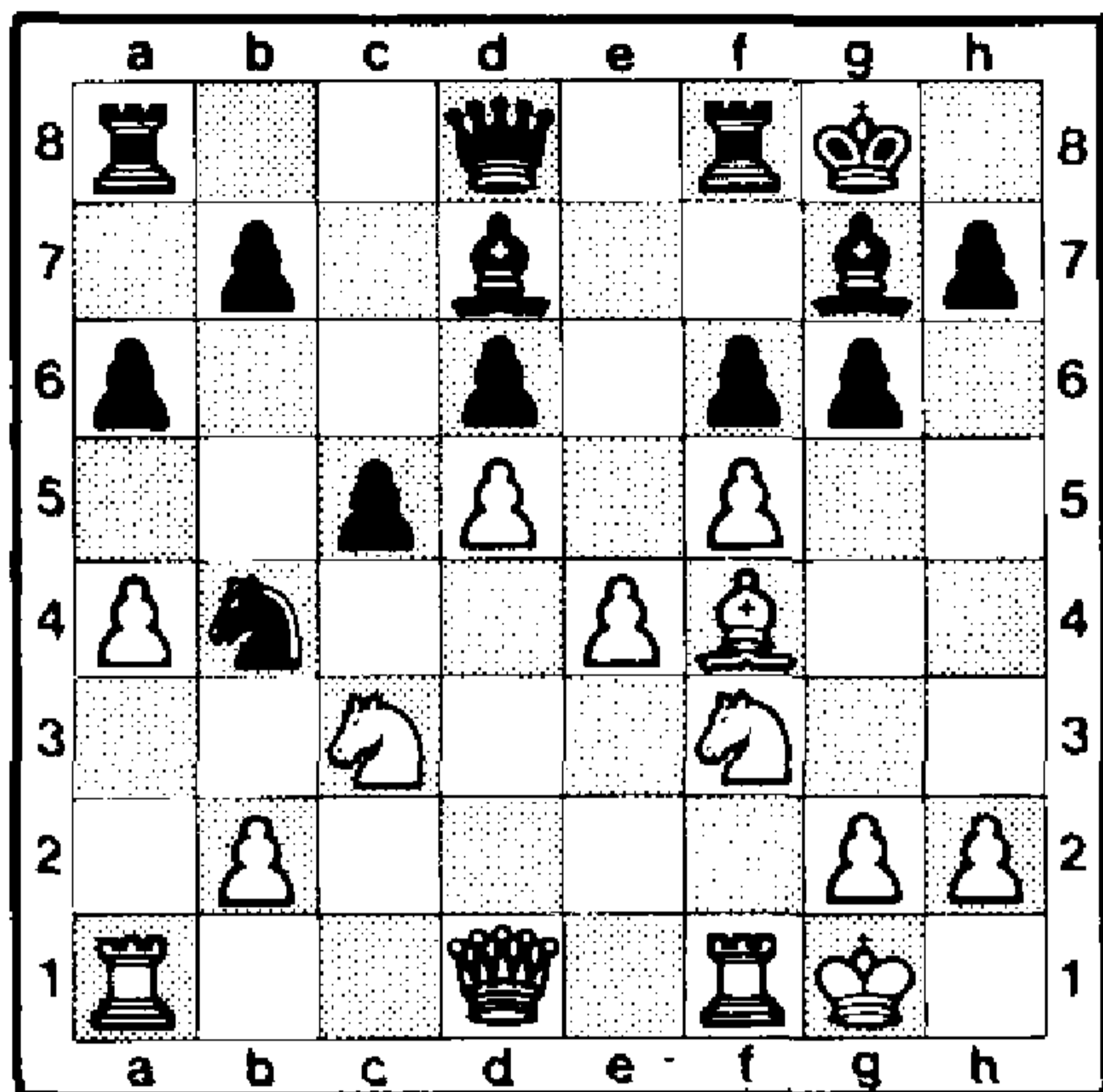
Still the best defence according to Kasparov who gives analysis to show that 13. . . . gxf5 14. Bg5 is very strong for White after 14. . . . f6 15. Bf4 Qc7 16. Nd2 0-0-0 (16. . . . Nd3 17. Bxd6! Qxd6 18. Nc4 Qc7 19. Qxd3) 17. Nc4; or 14. . . . Bf6 15. Bf4 0-0 (15. . . . Qe7 16. e5! dxe5 17. Nxe5 Bxe5 18. Bxe5 followed by Re1) 16. e5 (16. Bxd6 Bxa4) 16. . . . dxe5 17. Nxe5 and Black has problems. The second alternative of 13. . . . c4 gives White a clear advantage after 14. Bg5 Qb6+ 15. Kh1 Nd3 16. f6 Bf8 17. a5 Nf2+ 18. Rxf2 Qxf2 19. Na4.

14. Bg5 f6

Or 14. . . . Bf6 15. Qd2 maintaining the pressure. Or 14. . . . Bd4+ 15. Kh1! (not however 15. Qxd4?! cxd4 16. Bxd8 dxc3 17. bxc3 Nxd5 18. exd5 Raxd8 with unclear play) 15. . . . f6 16. Bh6 Re8 17. Rc1 with positional advantage to White (Kasparov). If then 17. . . . gxf5? 18. Nh4 gives a strong attack which is similar to the game.

15. Bf4 gxf5?!

A desperate move which only hastens the end. However, after the alternative 15. . . . Qe7 Kasparov intended 16. fxe6 hxg6 17. Nh4 Kh7 (or 17. . . . g5 18. Ng6 winning material) 18. Bg3 b5 19. Qb1 c4 20. Nxe6 Kxe6 21. Bxd6 and 22. Bxb4, since 21. . . . Qxd6?? fails to 22. e5+ winning the queen.

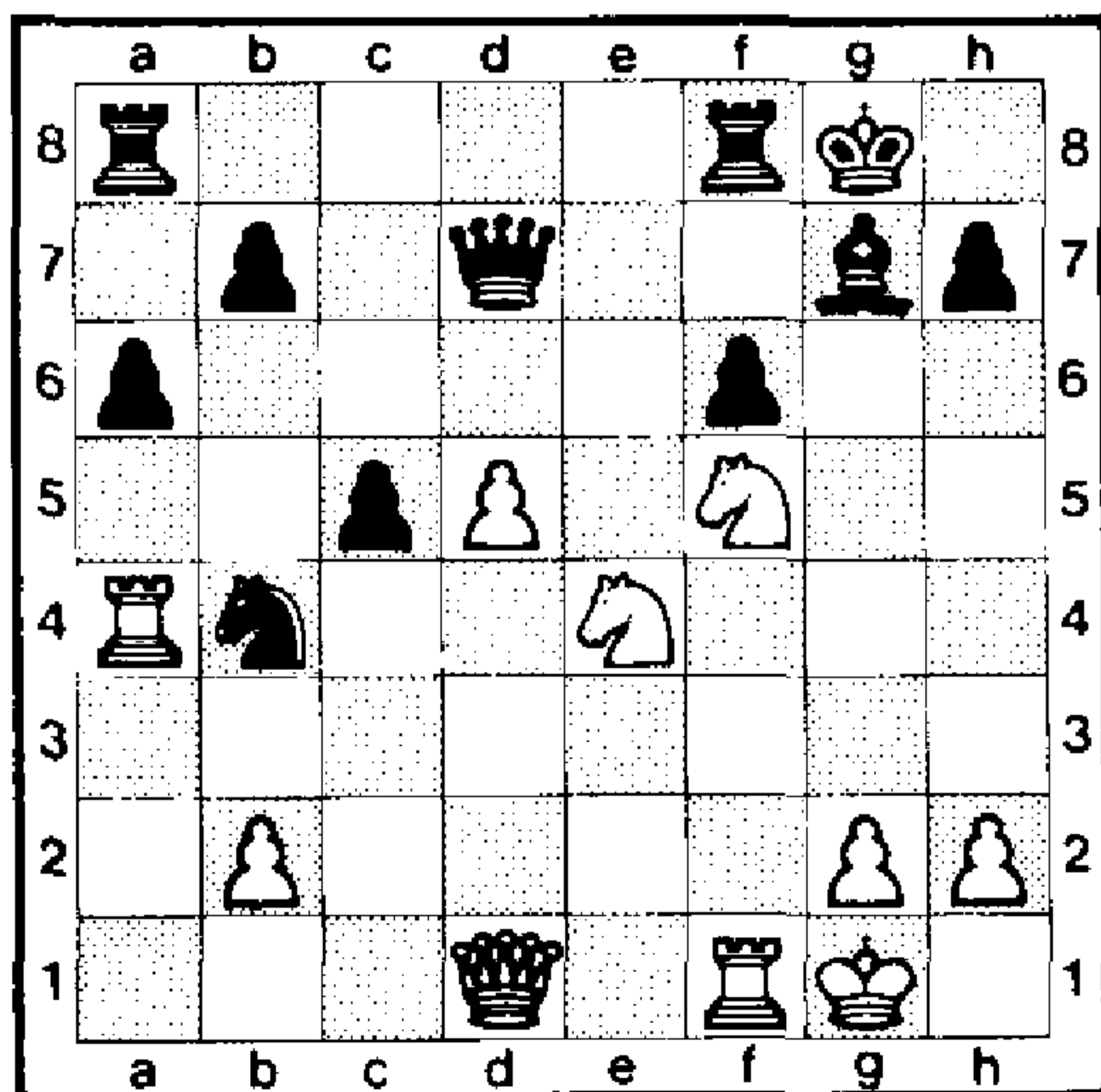


Position after 15. Bf4

16. Bxd6 Bxa4

Or 16. . . . Re8 17. Bxc5 fxe4 18. Nd4 Nd3 19. Nxe4! Nxc5 (19. . . . Rxe4 20. Qxd3 with an extra pawn and better position) 20. Nxc5 when e6 is invaded by a white knight.

17. Rxa4 Qxd6
18. Nh4! fxe4
19. Nf5 Qd7



20. Nxe4 Kh8
21. Nxc5 1-0

As White is attacking both queen and knight, Black is not only forced to lose the exchange after 21. . . . Qxd5 22. Qxd5 Nxd5 23. Ne6 Rf7 24. Nfxg7 Rxc7 25. Nxc5 Kxc5 but he must also lose at least a pawn to 26. Rd4 etc.

Supplementary Material
G Kasparov – F Kuijpers

(Dortmund, 1980)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 c5 4. d5 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nfd7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nf3 a6 11. Be2 Nf6 12. 0-0 Qc7 13. e5 Ne8 14. e6 fxe6 15. Bc4 Qe7 16. dxe6 Nc6 17. f5 Nc7 18. Bg5 Bf6 19. Ne4 Bxg5 20. Nfxg5 gxf5 21. Nxd6 Nd4 22. Qh5 Bxe6 23. Rae1 Rf6 24. Nxf5 Nxf5 25. Nxe6 Nxe6 26. Rxe6 Rxe6 27. Qxf5 Re8 28. Re1 **1-0**

J Levitt – D Norwood

(London, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 c5 4. d5 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nfd7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nf3 Na6 11. 0-0 Nc7 12. Bd3 Re8 13. Bd2 a6 14. Be1 Rb8 15. e5 dxe5 16. Bh4 Bf6 17. d6 Ne6 18. Bxf6 Qxf6 19. Nd5 Qg7 20. fxe5 Kh8 21. Qd2 b5 22. axb5 axb5 23. Rae1 c4 24. Bc2 Bb7 25. Nc7 Bxf3 26. Nxe8 Rxe8 27. Rxf3 Nxe5 28. Rfe3 f6 29. h3 Rd8 30. Qd5 Qd7 31. Rxe5 fxe5 32. Qxe5+ Ng7 33. Qf6 Qa7+ 34. Kh1 Rg8 35. Re7 Qa1+ 36. Kh2 Qa8 37. Bxg6 Qf8 38. Qxf8 Rxf8 39. Be4 Rd8 40. d7 b4 41. Bc6 c3 42. bxc3 bxc3 43. Re3 c2 44. Rc3 Ne6 45. Ba4 Kg7 46. Rxc2 Kf6 47. Rc8 Ke7 48. Kg3 Nf8 49. Kg4 **1-0**

Left: Position after 20. Nxe4

B Kouatly – E Szalanczi

(Budapest, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 c5 3. d5 e6 4. Nc3 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nfd7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nf3 a6 11. Be2 Re8 12. 0-0 Nf8 13. h3 Nbd7 14. Re1 f5 15. e5 dxe5 16. d6 e4 17. Bc4+ Ne6 18. Bxe6+ Rxe6 19. Ng5 Nf8 20. Nxe6 Bxe6 21. Be3 Bf7 22. Bxc5 Rc8 23. Bd4 Qxd6 24. Bxg7 Qxd1 25. Raxd1 Kxg7 26. Kf2 Ne6 27. Ke3 Nc5 28. Rd6 Nd3 29. Re2 Nxb2 30. Rxb2 Rxc3+ 31. Kd2 Rc7 32. g4 Be8 33. a5 Bb5 34. Rb3 Rf7 35. Ke3 g5 36. fxc5 fxc4 37. Kxe4 gxh3 38. Rxh3 Bc6+ 39. Ke5 Re7+ 40. Re6 Rd7 41. Reh6 Rd5+ 42. Ke6 Rxa5 43. g6 Bd5+ 44. Ke7 Be4 45. gxh7 Re5+ 46. Kd6 Rd5+ 47. Kc7 Kh8 48. Re6 Rc5+ 49. Kb8 Bc6 50. Rg6 **1-0**

P Lukacs – B Perenyi

(Budapest, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 c5 3. d5 e6 4. Nc3 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nfd7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nf3 a6 11. Bd3 Nf6 12. h3 c4 13. Bc2 b5 14. axb5 Bb7 15. bxa6 Nxa6 16. Be3 Re8 17. 0-0 Nxe4 18. Nxe4 f5 19. Nfg5 Nb4 20. Rxa8 Qxa8 21. Bd4 Bxd4+ 22. Qxd4 fxe4 23. Bxe4 Bd5 24. Re1 Re7 25. Kh2 Bxe4 26. Nxe4 Qc6 27. Nf6+ Kf7 28. Rxe7+ Kxe7 29. Nxe7 Nd3 30. Qf6+ Kd7 31. Nf8+ Kc7 32. Nxe6 Qe4 33. f5 Nf4 34. Qg5 Ne2 35. f6 Qd4 36. Qa5+ Kc6 37. Ne7+ Kd7 38. Qf5+

Kc7 39. Qc8+ Kb6 40. Qc6+ Ka7 41. Nc8+ Kb8 42. Qxd6+ Kxc8 43. Qe6+ **1-0**

M Petursson – B Perenyi

(Saint-John Open, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 c5 3. d5 e6 4. Nc3 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nfd7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nf3 a6 11. Be2 Re8 12. 0-0 Nf8 13. e5 Nbd7 14. Ng5 dxe5 15. f5 Nf6 16. g4 b5 17. axb5 c4 18. Be3 h6 19. Nge4 Nxe4 20. Nxe4 Bb7 21. Bxc4 axb5 22. Rxa8 Qxa8 23. Bb3 Rd8 24. Qf3 Bxd5 25. Bxd5 Qxd5 26. Bxh6 Qd3 27. Be3 Nh7 28. Kh1 Kh8 29. h4 Qb3 30. f6 Bf8 31. Rf2 Rd3 32. Re2 Bb4 33. Kg2 Nf8 34. Nf2 Rd6 35. h5 Kg8 36. g5 Qd5 37. Qxd5 Rxd5 38. h6 Ne6 39. Rc2 Kh7 40. Kf3 Nd4+ 41. Bxd4 exd4 42. Nd3 Bd6 43. Kg4 Rf5 44. Rf2 Rd5 45. Re2 Bb4 46. Re7 Bd2 47. Ne5 Bxg5 48. Kxg5 Kg8 49. h7+ Kxh7 50. Rxf7+ Kg8 51. Ra7 Kf8 52. Kf4 g5+ 53. Ke4 **1-0**

Savchenko – Sandler

(Belgorod, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 c5 4. d5 exd5 5. cxd5 d6 6. e4 g6 7. f4 Bg7 8. Bb5+ Nbd7 9. e5 dxe5 10. fxe5 Nh5 11. e6 Qh4+ 12. g3 Nxg3 13. hxg3 Qxh1 14. exd7+ Bxd7 15. Qe2+ Kd8 16. Bg5+ f6 17. 0-0-0 Re8 18. Qf1 fxc5 19. Bxd7 Kxd7 20. Qb5+ Kd6? (Black could probably still draw after 20. . . . Kc7!) 21. Qxb7 Bxc3 22. Qc6+Ke7 23. d6+ **1-0**

4 The Grünfeld Defence

In the years after World War I, Vienna was the centre of new chess ideas. In its coffee-houses were to be found Dr Xavielly Tartakower and Richard Reti, two of the most brilliant exponents of these modern concepts which were to exert an influence on the whole Viennese chess scene. Ernst Grünfeld (1893–1962), famous for his deep knowledge of classical openings, could not remain indifferent to this influence. He put into practice the Hypermodern theory that ‘control of the centre is equally as good as its occupation’ by perfecting a defensive system, rightly named after him, which ‘gave up the centre’ to White with a view to exerting pressure on it by pieces, in particular the fianchettoed bishop on g7.

The key move of this opening, after 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3, was the surprising 3. . . . d5, immediately giving White the opportunity to establish what appeared to be a formidable-looking pawn centre by playing 4. cxd5 Nxd5 5. e4 Nxc3 6. bxc3, a centre which Black was prepared to attack by . . . Bg7, . . . c5 and . . . Nc6.

For a long time, Kasparov adopted this opening as Black, but his poor results with it in both of his World Championship contests against Karpov has since led him back to a preference for the King’s Indian Defence which we shall examine in the next chapter. As a result of certain key games, Kasparov’s opponents so rarely play the Grünfeld against him that I was on the verge of cutting out this section until colleagues persuaded me

otherwise. In almost all his games so far with White he has adopted the above-quoted Exchange Variation and our model game sees him introducing a powerful new system (Nf3 in conjunction with Rb1) which still remains one of the most popular attacking methods against the Grünfeld. The game was played in the USSR – Greece match and was, in fact, Kasparov’s first Olympic game.

G Kasparov – E Natsis

(Chess Olympiad, Malta 1980)

1. d4	Nf6
2. c4	g6
3. Nc3	d5
4. cxd5	

Not the only method of play against this defensive system but certainly the most popular and aggressive one.

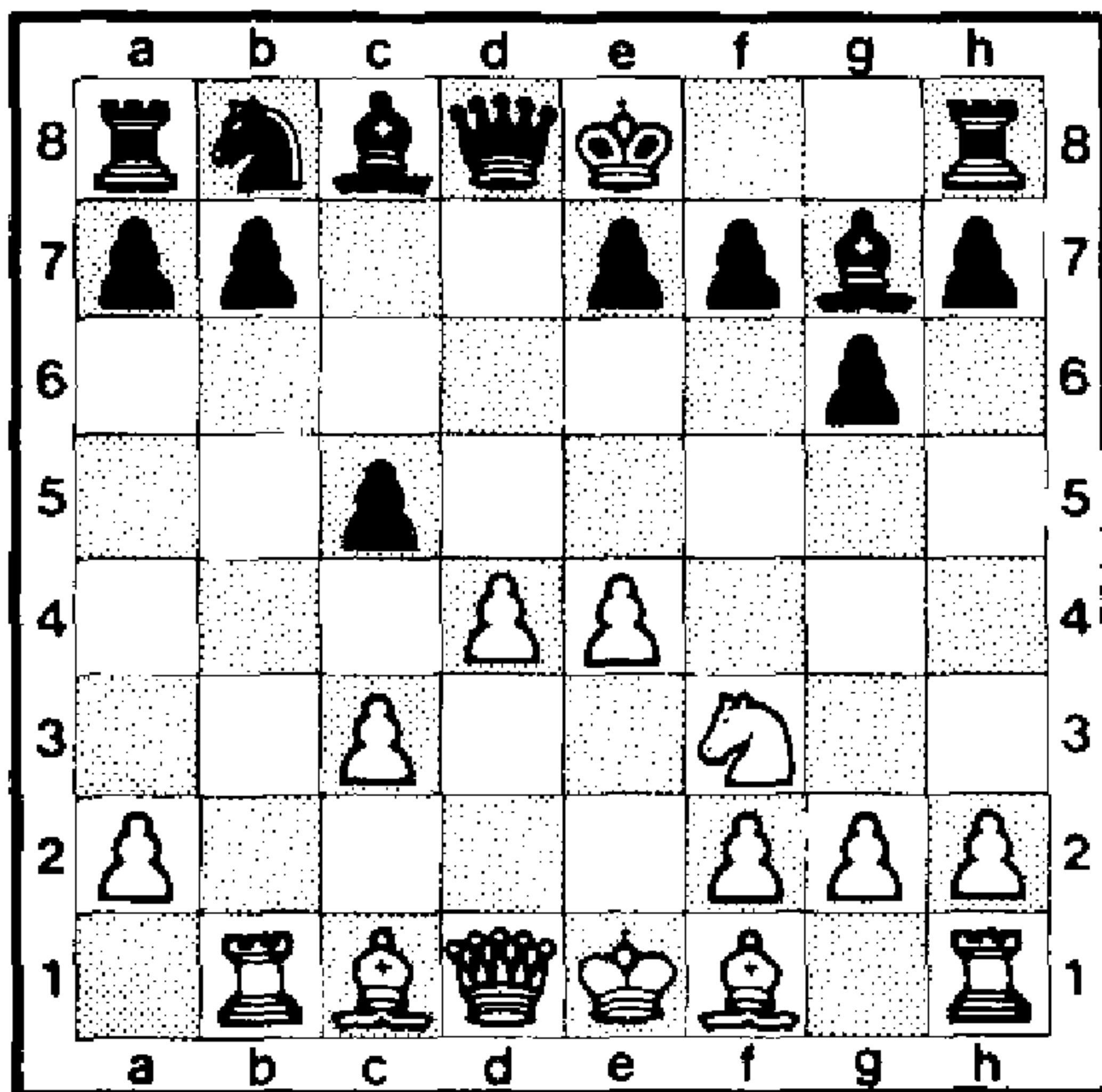
4. . . .	Nxd5
5. e4	Nxc3
6. bxc3	Bg7
7. Nf3	

The same position can be reached by transposition in a number of ways, but this particular move is Kasparov’s speciality. Only once, against Sax in 1986, has he played the ‘old’ 7. Bc4, but of course he could revert to this equally good move at any moment, thus making the present chapter partially redundant. It is like making a choice between red or black at roulette!

7. . . .	c5
-----------------	-----------

We meet the dubious 7. . . . b6?! in the supplementary game Kasparov – Pribyl.

8. Rb1	
---------------	--

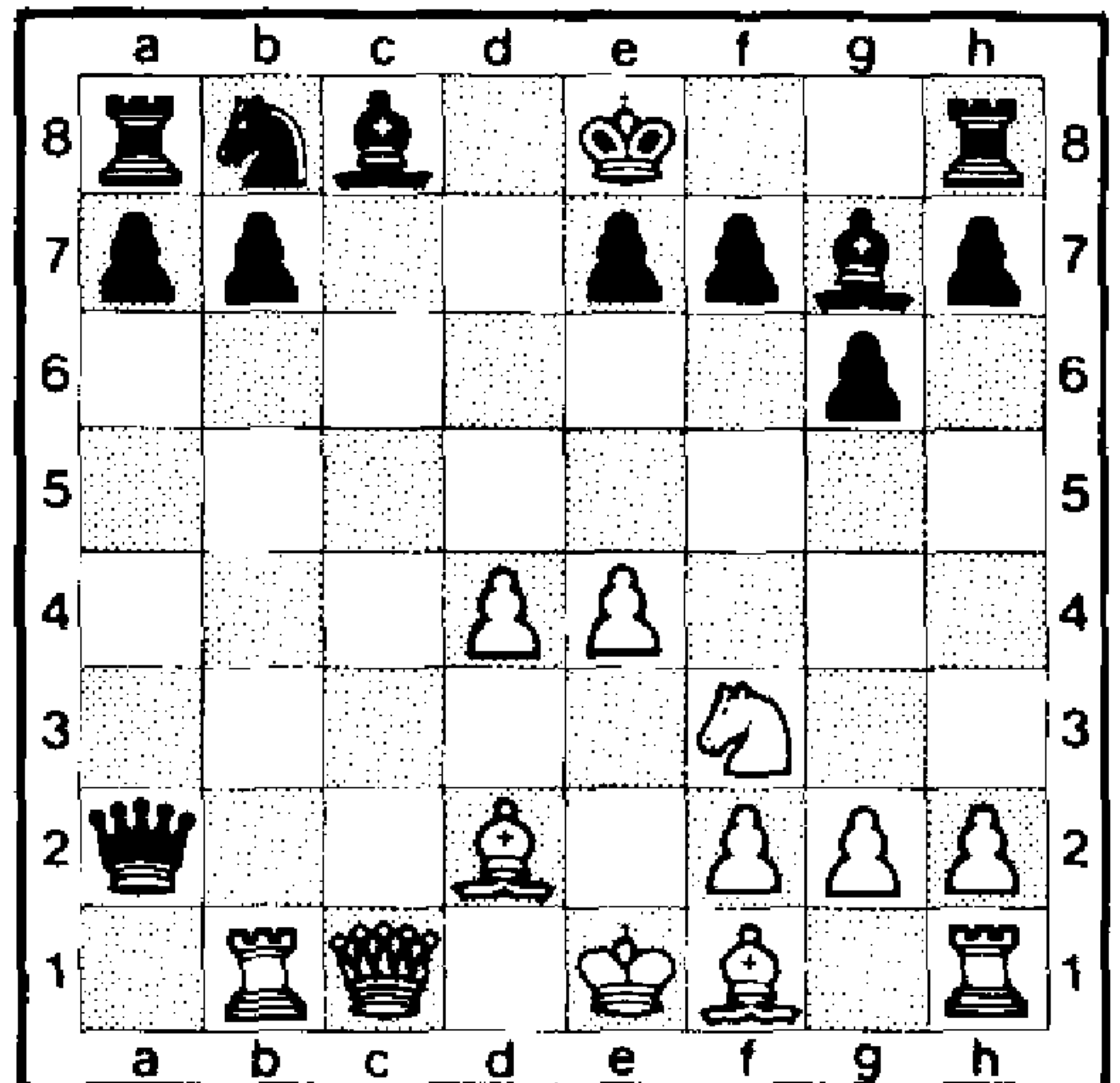


Another Kasparov patent. The rook moves away from the dangerous a1-h8 diagonal, thus allowing White to sacrifice temporarily his c3 pawn to gain space by playing d5 in many variations. The rook also seizes the half-open 'b' file, exerting pressure on b7 and thus making Black's development more awkward. Finally, in some variations the rook can rapidly be brought into play, as we can see from the diagram.

(i) **8. . . . Qa5?!** (attacking c3 and a2 but clearly premature as White now demonstrates) **9. Rb5! Qxc3+** (9. . . . Qxa2 10. Rxc5 is better for White who has eliminated one of the key pawns which could challenge his central position) **10. Bd2 Qa3 11. Qc2!** threatening Ra5 winning the queen. We then have:

- a) 11. . . . b6? 12. Bc1 Qa6 13. Rxc5 with a double attack on a6 and c8.
- b) 11. . . . Nc6? 12. Rb3 Nb4 (12. . . . Qa4 13. Bb5) 13. Bxb4 and Black can resign.
- c) 11. . . . c4 12. Bb4 Qa6 13. Bxc4 regaining his pawn with an excellent position.

(ii) **8. . . . cxd4 9. cxd4 Qa5+ 10. Bd2 Qxa2?** (Black's queen must make a dismal retreat which is equivalent to a declaration of bankruptcy) **11. Qc1!** attacking the c8 bishop and threatening to win the queen with Bc4. There is no good defence to be seen from the diagram position e.g.



- a) 11. . . . Nc6 12. Bc4 Qa4 13. d5 and the knight cannot move in view of Bb5+.
- b) 11. . . . 0-0 12. Bc4 Qa4 13. Bb5 Qa2 14. Rb2 Qa3 15. Bb4.
- c) 11. . . . Qe6 12. Ng5 Qd7 (12. . . . Qc6 13. Bb5) 13. Bb5 Nc6 14. d5 etc.

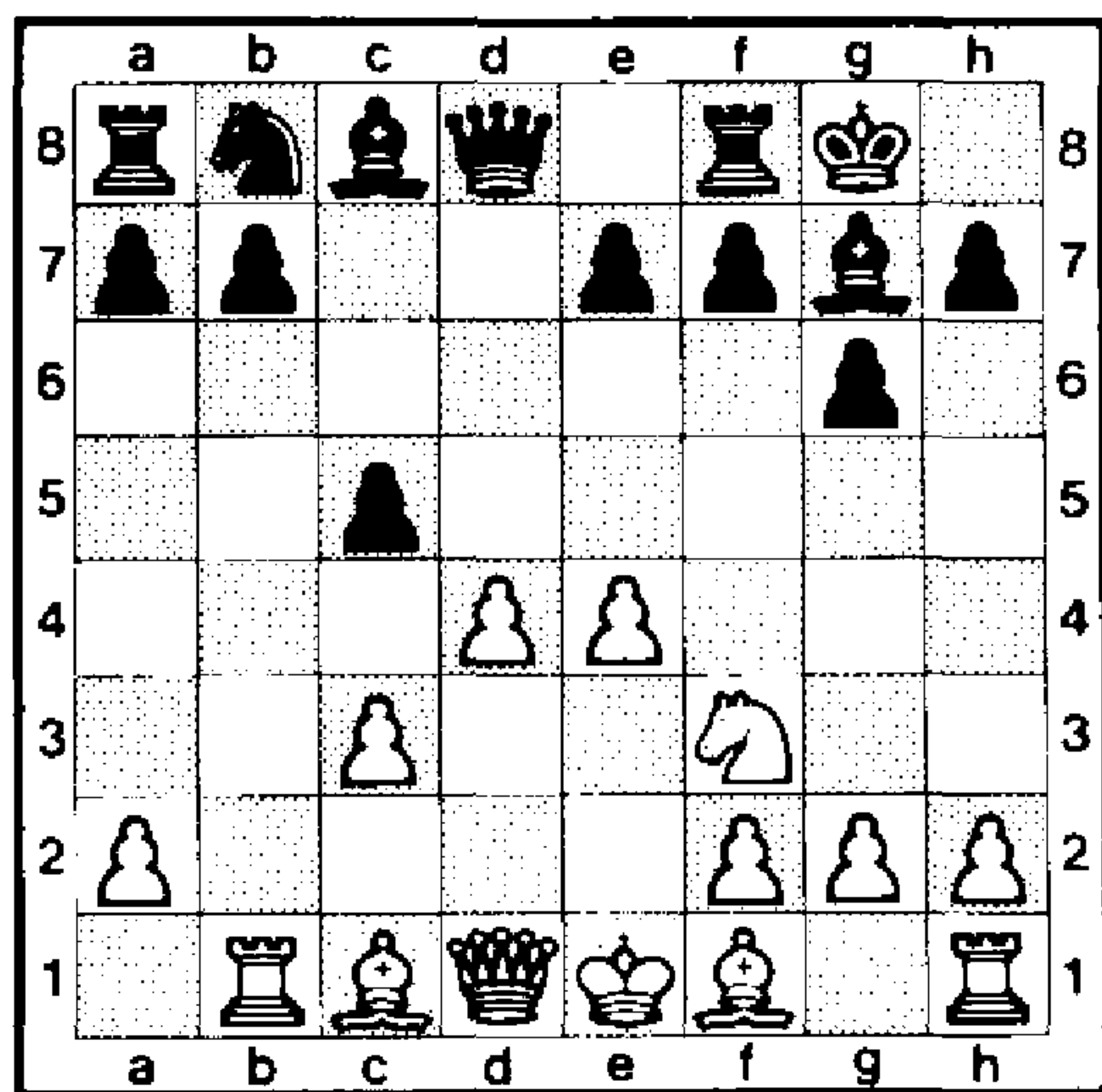
(iii) **8. . . . Nc6?! 9. d5 Bxc3+ 10. Bd2** (we now see why it was important for the white rook to vacate a1!) **10. . . . Bxd2+ 11. Qxd2** and now:

- a) 11. . . . Na5? 12. Bb5+ Kf8 (12. . . . Bd7 13. Qc3! f6 14. Bxd7+ Kxd7 15. Qxc5 winning back the pawn with a clear superiority, as his

knight is heading for e6) 13. Qc3 f6
14. Qxc5 with a winning game.

b) 11. . . . Nd4 12. Nxd4 cxd4 13.
Bb5+ Bd7 14. Bc4 b6 15. Qxd4 0-0
16. 0-0 with a situation similar to
our model game. White has better
chances of controlling the impor-
tant 'c' file (Rbc1, Ba6).

8. . . . 0-0



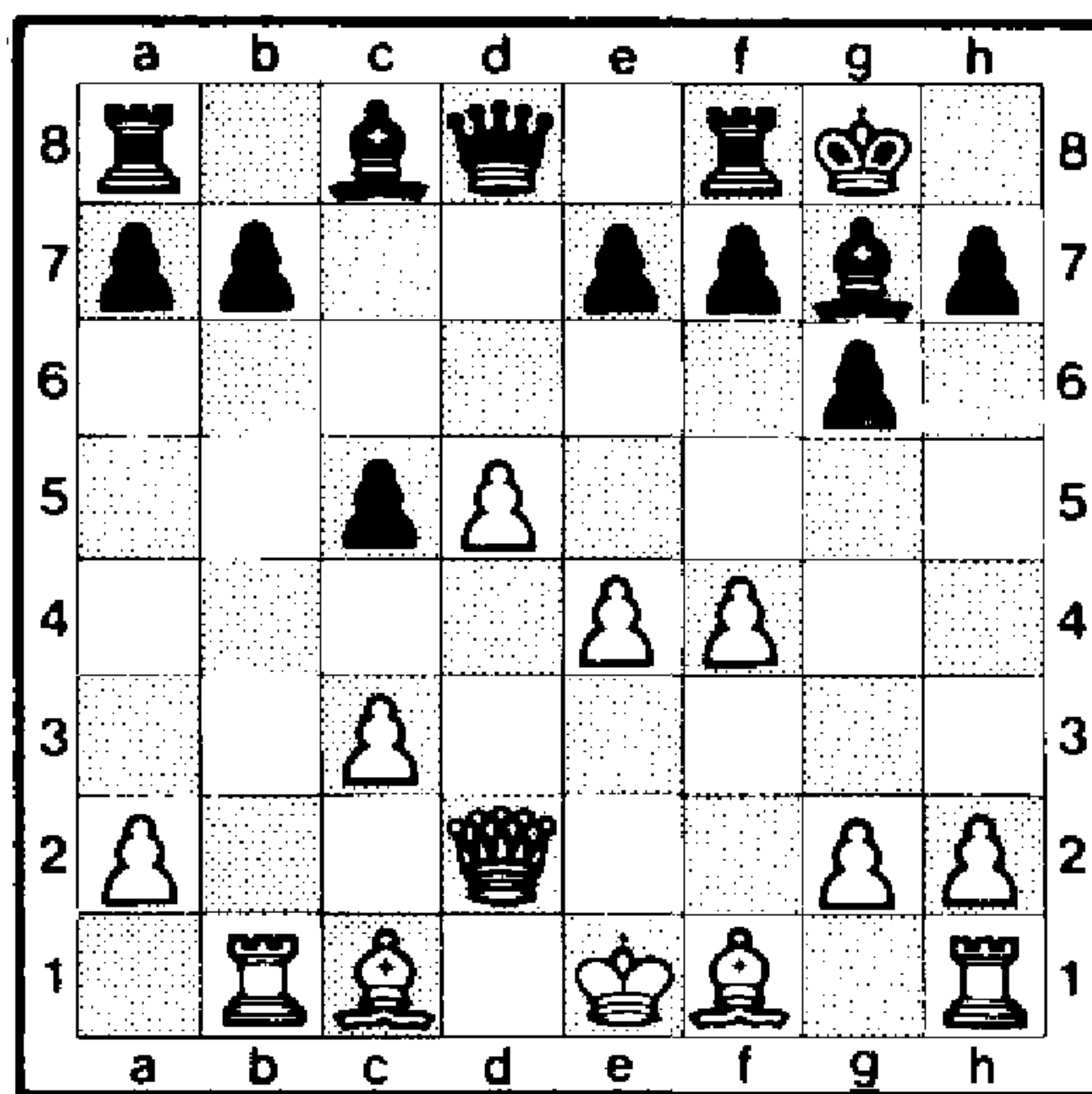
In this position there are hundreds of
games in which 9. Be2 is played, when
the game usually develops as follows:

- (i) 9. . . . cxd4 10. cxd4 Qa5+ when
White has a choice between ex-
changing queens by 11. Qd2 and the
unclear pawn sacrifice by 11. Bd2.
- (ii) 9. . . . b6 10. 0-0 Bb7 11. Qd3 Ba6 12.
Qe3 as in Khalifman – Lau (see
Supplementary Material).
- (iii) 9. . . . Nc6 10. d5 Ne5 (10. . . . Bxc3+
11. Bd2 Bxd2+ 12. Qxd2 Na5 13.
h4! gives White a strong K side
attack, as we shall see later) 11.
Nxe5 Bxe5 12. Qd2 e6 13. f4 Bg7 14.
c4.

This last variation in particular has been
tried out in many games but unfortuna-
tely, as yet, none by Kasparov!

If you wish to experiment with a
promising alternative to 9. Be2, I recom-
mend the cunning 9. Qd2!? which is no
better but has the advantage of cutting
out a number of defensive possibilities.
For example, 9. . . . Qa5? now just loses
a pawn to 10. Rb5 and after 9. . . . cxd4
10. cxd4 Black no longer has . . . Qa5
available, which immediately allows us
to consign our first variation to the
rubbish bin. Nor is variation two as
attractive to Black after 9. . . . b6 10. Bc4
e6 (10. . . . cxd4? 11. Bd5 wins a piece;
10. . . . Bb7 11. d5 seems good for White
and 10. . . . Nc6 11. d5 Ne5 transposes to
a line we examine later) 11. Ba3 (seri-
ously threatening the c5 pawn) 11. . . .
Bb7 12. Qe3 followed by 0-0 and Rfd1
with a promising position for White.

Of course, 9. . . . Nc6 is possible, in the
spirit of our third variation, giving us (9.
Qd2 Nc6) 10. d5 Ne5 11. Nxe5 Bxe5 12.
f4 Bg7.



You can now reach the third variation of the Be2 line by playing 13. c4, thus cutting out any calculation of the first two variations. Or else, without much danger, you can try the interesting 13. e5, a move used by the author in many simultaneous exhibitions without any of his opponents achieving equality against it. White stands well after 13. . . . e6?! 14. Bc4 or 13. . . . b6 14. Bc4 a6 15. 0-0 b5 16. Be2 Bb7 17. c4. In about a dozen games, my opponents played 13. . . . f6 14. e6 Qd6 15. c4 Rd8 16. Be2 b6 hoping for 17. 0-0? Bxe6! but after 17. Qe3 f5 18. Bb2 White is better.

If 13. e5 is successful, you will have acquired a good weapon against the Grünfeld with minimal expenditure of effort, and even if a defence to it is found you can always revert to 13. Be2 (see examples in Supplementary Material).

Now let us return to the game and see how Kasparov finished. Although this does not reveal the latest theory of the line, it is nevertheless an excellent example of how to handle a typical Grünfeld position.

9. Be2 Nc6

10. d5 Bxc3+

After 10. . . . Ne5 11. Nxe5 Bxe5 12. Qd2 we arrive at the variation just examined.

11. Bd2 Bxd2+

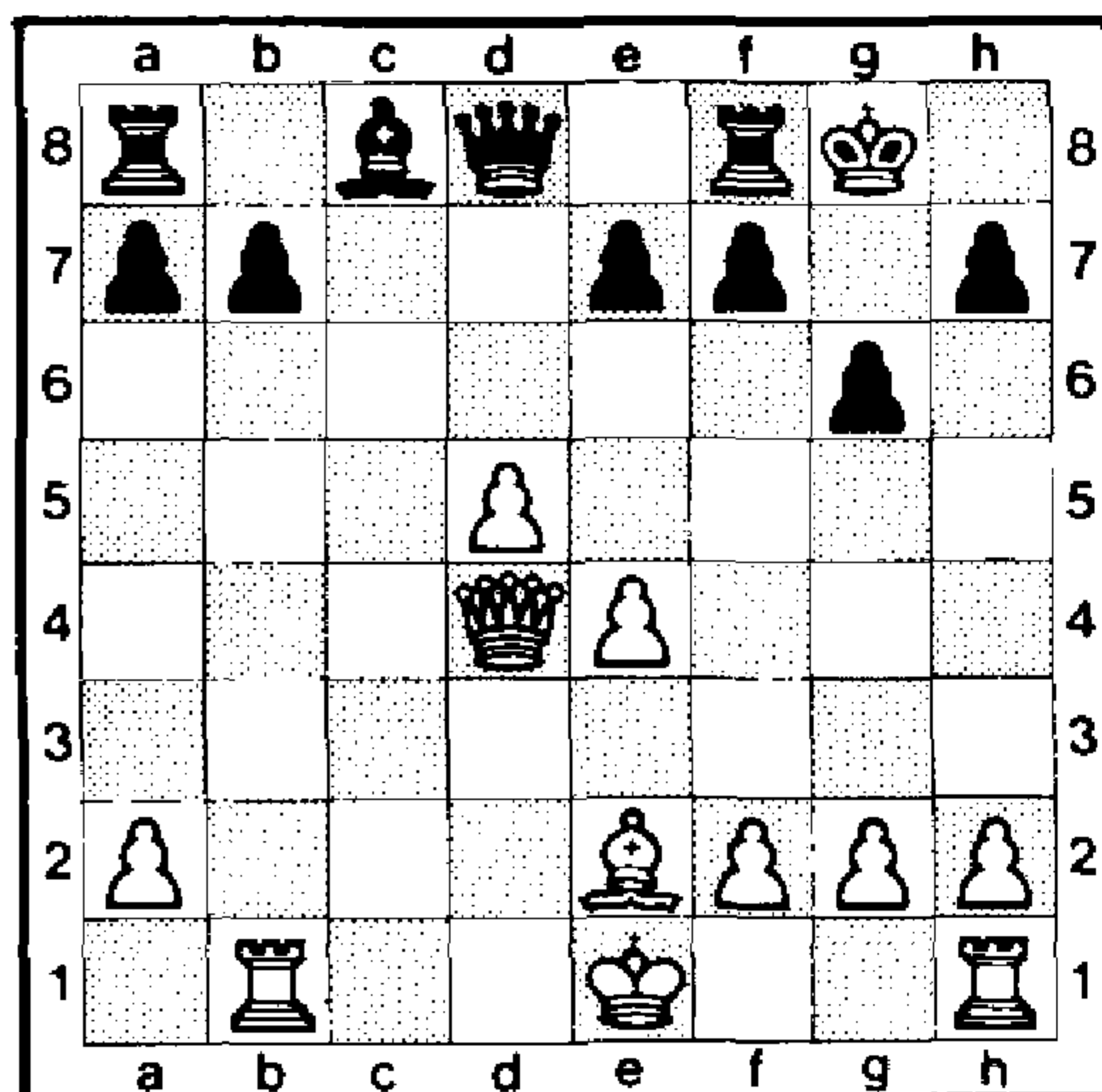
12. Qxd2 Nd4

It is hardly worth considering 12. . . . Na5 13. h4! (threatening h5, hxg6 and Qh6 with a decisive attack) 13. . . . Bg4 (13. . . . h5? 14. Qh6 f6 15. Qxg6+ etc.) 14. h5! followed by Qh6 when Black is lost.

13. Nxd4 cxd4

14. Qxd4

This is the typical set-up we mentioned, with its characteristic structure of black pawns on a7, b7 (or often a7, b6) and e7



facing white pawns on a2, d5 and e4. In practice, Black's Q side pawn majority is difficult to exploit, whereas in many variations White creates a strong passed 'd' pawn. If Black now decides not to exchange queens, he has basically two plausible continuations:

(i) 14. . . . e6? only helps White after 15. d6 followed by 0-0 and Rfd1 when not only is the d6 pawn very strong but the plan of Rc7 is unpleasant for Black e.g. 15. . . . b6 16. Rc1 Bb7 17. Rc7.

(ii) 14. . . . b6 15. 0-0 Bb7 16. a4! followed by a5 with great pressure down the 'b' file.

14. . . . Q25+

15. Qd2 Qxd2+

16. Kxd2 Rd8

After 16. . . . e6 then 17. Bc4 is strong.

17. Ke3 b6

18. Rbc1 e6

18. . . . Bb7? 19. Rc7 wins a pawn.

19. Bc4

Black remains under pressure. For example, after 19. . . . Kf8 20. Rfd1

Ke7, although he has stopped the threat of d6, he still loses at least a pawn to 21. e5! exd5 22. Bxd5 Rb8 23. Rc7+ Rd7 24. Rdc1! etc.

19. . . . e5
20. Bb3 Bd7
21. Rc7 a5

Black counts on his Q side pawn majority, but again White's central pawn is stronger.

22. d6 b5

White's advantage is indisputable. We give the last moves without comment.

23. f4 exf4+
24. Kxf4 Ra6
25. e5 a4
26. Bd5 a3
27. Rf1 Ra4+
28. Ke3 Be6
29. Bxe6 fxe6
30. Rff7 Rh4
31. Rg7+ Kh8
32. Rge7 1-0

There is no defence to d7 followed by Re8+

Supplementary Material

G Kasparov – J Pribyl

(European Team Championship, Skara 1980)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 d5 4. cxd5 Nxd5 5. e4 Nxc3 6. bxc3 Bg7 7. Nf3 b6 8. Bb5+ c6 9. Bc4 0-0 10. 0-0 Ba6 11. Bxa6 Nxa6 12. Qa4 Qc8 13. Bg5 Qb7 14. Rfe1 e6 15. Rab1 c5 16. d5 Bxc3 17. Red1 exd5 18. exd5 Bg7 19. d6 f6 20. d7 fxe5 21. Qc4+ Kh8 22. Nxe5 Bf6 23. Ne6 Nc7 24. Nxf8 Rxf8 25. Rd6 Be7 26. d8(Q) Bxd8 27. Qc3+ Kg8 28. Rd7 Bf6 29. Qc4+ Kh8 30. Qf4 Qa6 31. Qh6 **1-0**

A Khalifman – R Lau

(Europa Cup, Rotterdam 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 d5 4. Nf3 Bg7 5. cxd5 Nxd5 6. e4 Nxc3 7. bxc3 c5 8. Rb1 0-0 9. Be2 b6 10. 0-0 Bb7 11. Qd3 Ba6 12. Qe3 Qc8 13. d5 Bxe2 14. Qxe2 Bxc3 15. e5 Qf5 16. Rb3 Ba5 17. Nh4 Qd7 18. Bh6 Qxd5 19. Bxf8 Kxf8 20. Rd3 Qb7 21.



The Soviet grandmaster Artur Yusupov, several times World Championship Candidate, has a playing style which has earned him the nickname of 'The Russian wall'.

Rd8+ Kg7 22. Nf5+ gxf5 23. Qe3 Qc6
24. Qg5+ Qg6 25. Qxe7 **1-0**

A Yusupov – O Romanishin

(Jakarta, 1986)

1. d4 Nf6 2. Nf3 g6 3. c4 Bg7 4. Nc3 d5 5.
cxd5 Nxd5 6. e4 Nxc3 7. bxc3 c5 8. Rb1
0-0 9. Be2 Nc6 10. d5 Ne5 11. Nxe5
Bxe5 12. Qd2 e6 13. f4 Bg7 14. c4 Re8
15. e5 f6 16. d6 fxe5 17. Bb2 exf4 18.
Bxg7 Kxg7 19. 0-0 Rf8 20. Rxf4 Rxf4 21.
Qxf4 Qf6 22. Qd2 b6 23. Bf3 Rb8 24. d7
Ba6 25. Rd1 Qd4+ 26. Qxd4+ cxd4 27.
Rxd4 Rd8 28. Bc6 e5 29. Rh4 g5 30. Rg4
Kf6 31. h4 h6 32. Kf2 Ke6 33. hxg5 hxg5
34. Ke3 Kd6 35. Ba4 Kc5 36. Rxc5 Bxc4
37. Rxe5+ Kd6 38. Re8 Kc7 39. Bc6
Bxa2 40. g4 a5 41. g5 Bb1 42. Kf4 Rxd7
43. Bxd7 Kxd7 44. Re2 Bg6 45. Ke5 a4
46. Kf6 Bh5 47. Rh2 Be8 48. Re2 Bh5 49.
Re6 b5 50. Rb6 Be2 51. Ra6 Bc4 52. g6
Kc7 53. g7 Bg8 54. Ra8 Bc4 55. Ke5 **1-0**

A Geller – A Pereira

(Correspondence, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 d5 4. Nf3 Bg7

5. cxd5 Nxd5 6. e4 Nxc3 7. bxc3 c5 8.
Rb1 0-0 9. Be2 Nc6 10. d5 Ne5 11. Nxe5
Bxe5 12. Qd2 e6 13. f4 Bg7 14. c4 Re8
15. e5 f6 16. d6 fxe5 17. Bb2 Rf8 18. 0-0
e4 19. Be5 b6 20. Bg4 Qd7 21. Qc3 Ba6
22. Rbe1 Bxe5 23. Qxe5 Bxc4 24. Rxe4
Bd5 25. Rd1 Qf7 26. Rxd5 exd5 27. Be6
dxe4 28. h4 Rae8 29. Bxf7+ Kxf7 30.
Qd5+ Kg7 31. d7 Rd8 32. Qe5+ Kf7 33.
f5 gxf5 34. Qxf5+ Kg7 35. Qe5+ **1/2-1/2**

A Vaiser – M Pein

(Budapest, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 d5 4. cxd5 Nxd5
5. e4 Nxc3 6. bxc3 Bg7 7. Nf3 c5 8. Rb1
0-0 9. Be2 cxd4 10. cxd4 Qa5+ 11. Bd2
Qxa2 12. 0-0 b6 13. Qc1 Qe6 14. Bc4
Qxe4 15. Re1 Qb7 16. Bb4 Be6 17. Rxe6
fxe6 18. Ng5 Nc6 (18. . . . Kh8? 19. Rb3!)
19. Nxe6 Kh8 20. Bc3 Bf6 21. Qh6 Rg8?
(21. . . . Rf7!) 22. Re1 Rg7 (22. . . . Qc8
23. Re3 Rg7 24. d5 Ne5 25. Nxc7 Nf7 26.
Rxe7! Nxc7 27. Bxf6 Ng8 28. Ne8+ Nxf6
29. Nxf6 wins) 23. g4! Na5 24. Bd3 Qc6
25. Ba1 Rf7 26. g5 Bg7 27. d5 Qxd5 28.
Bxg7+ Kg8 29. Bxg6 **1-0**

5 King's Indian and Old Indian

We have considered Indian systems involving . . . e6 (Chapter 2), . . . c5 (Chapter 3) and . . . d5 (Chapter 4). Our fourth Indian system is characterised by the moves . . . d6 and . . . e5 and we distinguish between the development of the KB at g7 (King's Indian) and at e7 (Old Indian).

Although both systems are related enough for Kasparov to adopt a similar pawn structure and piece development against them with the white pieces, there are sufficient differences to warrant our using an illustrative game for each one.

Since our first model game sees Kasparov as White playing against the King's Indian, which is his own preferred defence, it is worth commenting on a situation which must inevitably arise when a player has a favourite opening: how do you play against your pet systems?

It is perhaps sound chess psychology as White to remember that the initiative granted by having the first move gives you the leeway to make good moves without necessarily adopting the most exact ones. Clearly, it is hardly advisable as White to reveal to opponents the variations or positions you would not be happy with if you were playing Black! This means that, as White, it is best to use solid systems which postpone the real battle until the middle-game, thus avoiding sharp theoretical clashes in the early stages, as a means of keeping your opening secrets for another day. This is

why Kasparov adopts the solid Classical System against the King's Indian.

A King's Indian

This defence is for fighters, so let us have a rapid look at Kasparov's opponent in our first model game. Perhaps one day I will write a book about Ilya Smirin whom ex-World Champion Mikhail Botvinnik, one of the leading chess trainers in the world, rates as one of the five or six most talented players in the USSR. In his case we are tempted to believe in the old Latin tag '*nomen est omen*'. The Russian verb '*smiritj*' means 'to overcome', so Ilya is on this basis a 'winner'. Furthermore, his Christian name crops up in many Russian legends. For example, 'Bogatyr Ilya' (there was a film of the same name about this character) is a kind of Hercules, a fearless and successful champion of just causes. As far as we know, our particular Ilya fights his battles solely over the chess-board, despite the fact that he is well-built, over six feet tall and capable of holding his own in less cerebral pursuits! At all events, a sound constitution is an asset to any chess professional.

As you might imagine from the above comments, Smirin's playing style reflects a need to conjure up complex combinations and a willingness to burn all bridges behind him as he launches his attacks. Admittedly, he loses our model game, but it is after all Garry Kasparov sitting opposite him . . .

G Kasparov – I Smirin

(USSR Championship, 1988)

- | | |
|--------|-----|
| 1. d4 | Nf6 |
| 2. c4 | g6 |
| 3. Nc3 | Bg7 |
| 4. e4 | d6 |
| 5. Nf3 | |

Kasparov has used this particular system since 1981, with only a few variations of late.

- | | |
|----------|-----|
| 5. . . . | 0-0 |
| 6. Be2 | e5 |

A typical King's Indian move. Occasionally, 6. . . . Bg4 is played, with the idea of applying pressure on d4 by . . . Nfd7, . . . Nc6 and . . . e5, but this slow method has few adherents. In the supplementary game against Vukic, Kasparov successfully adopts a promising counter-plan of 7. Be3 Nfd7 8. Ngl! etc.

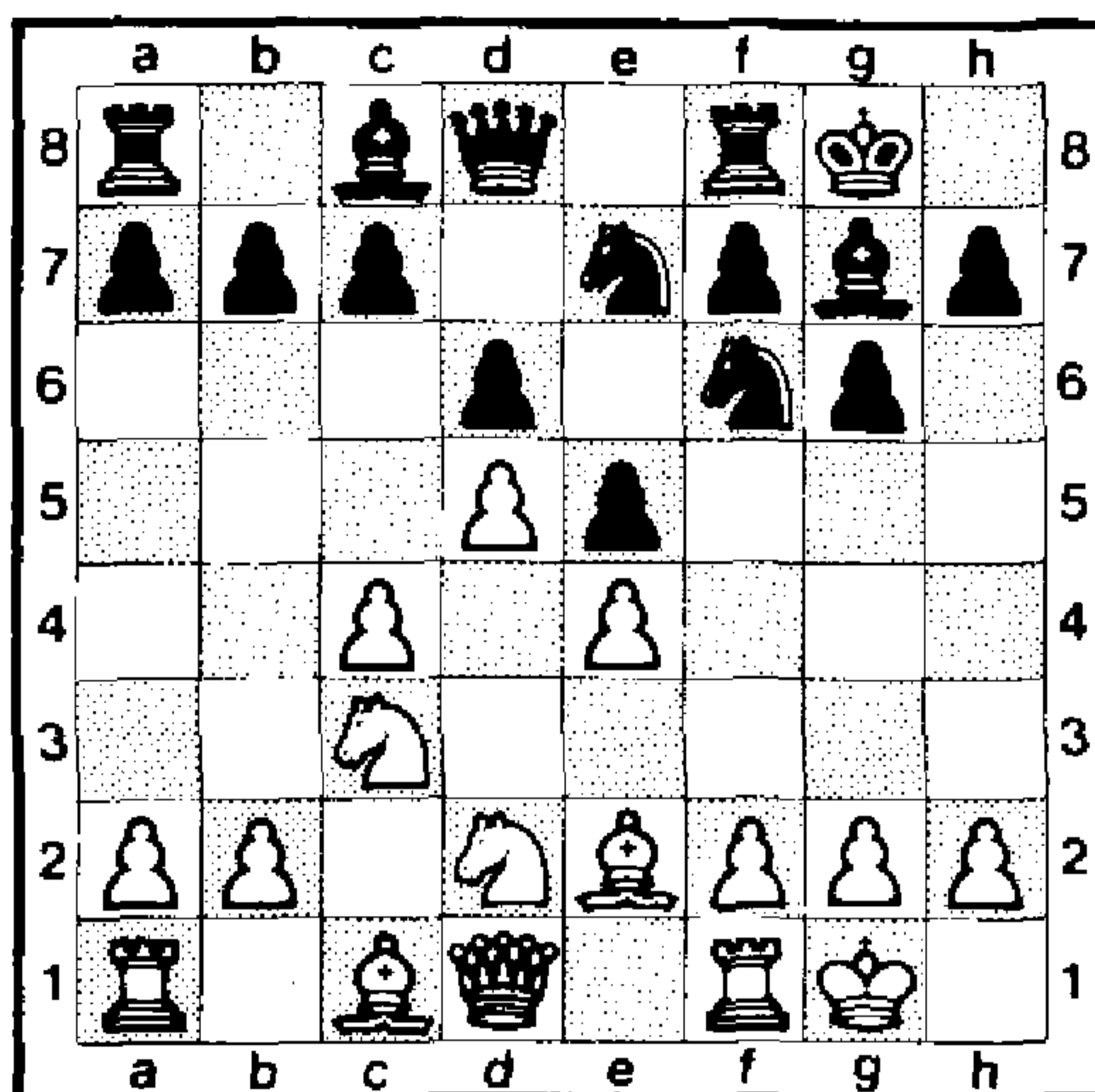
7. 0-0

This quiet continuation is played in most games with this system, but Petrosian's 7. d5 is also favoured by some players. In the early eighties, Kasparov played 7. Be3 twice, resulting in two beautiful wins, although the resistance of his opposition left something to be desired. In the World Cup (Reykjavik, 1988) he played 7. Be3 once again, but this time against a top grandmaster, Dr Nunn, obtaining little from the opening. You will find these three games in the Supplementary Material section.

7. . . . Nc6

The most common move here. Kasparov has met the alternative 7. . . . Nbd7 only once, in a simultaneous game, when he had the rare experience of missing a witty stalemate combination (see Supplementary Material game versus McDonald).

- | | |
|--------|-----|
| 8. d5 | Ne7 |
| 9. Nd2 | |



Let us remember what we said earlier about playing against one's own favourite defence.

Although the sharpest continuation here begins with 9. Ne1 and although Kasparov rarely avoids confrontations in the opening, he adopts the text move, presumably in order not to reveal any secrets about a line that could well be played against him!

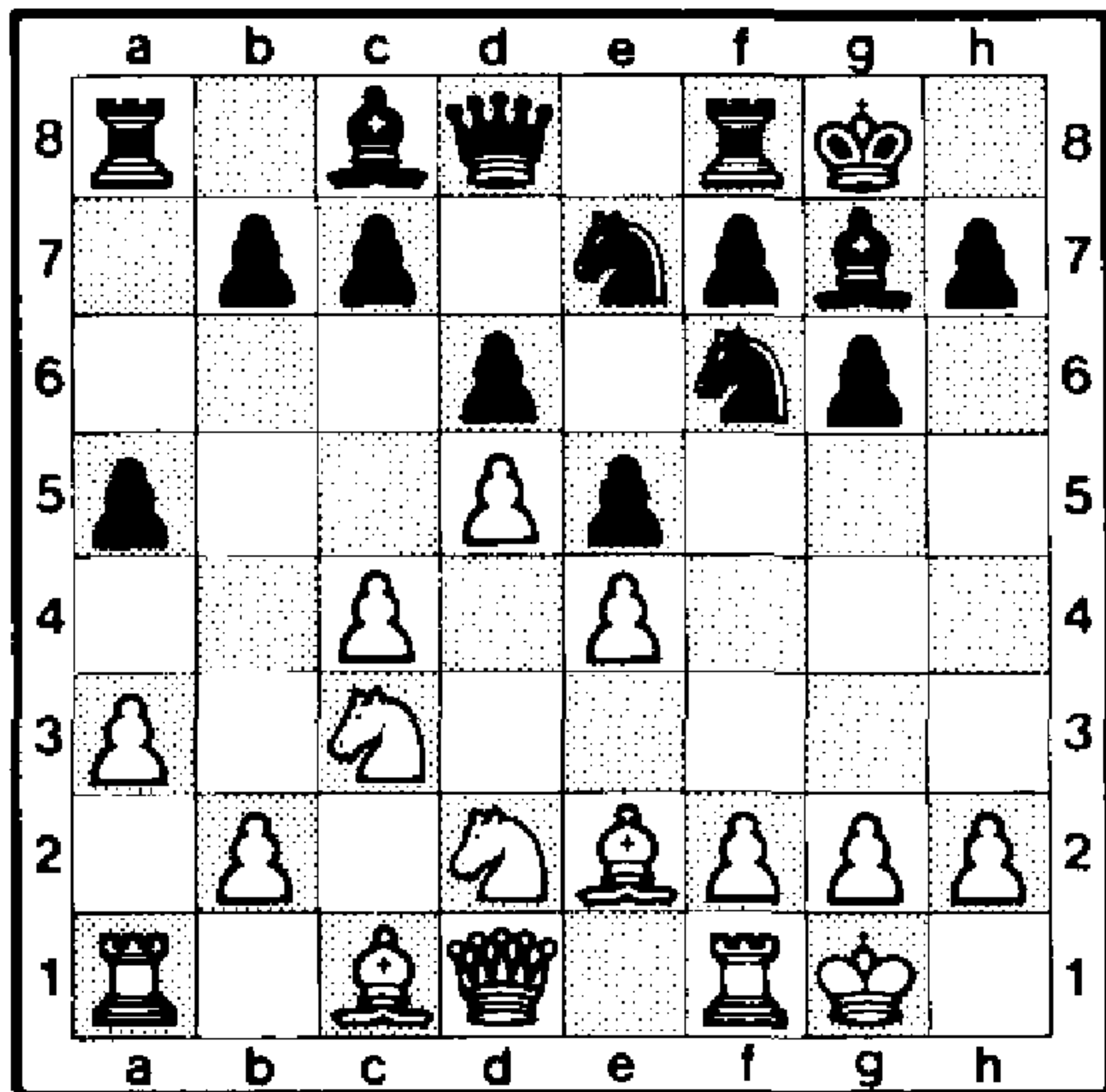
To anyone unacquainted with the King's Indian, it may seem strange to play a knight to d2 blocking the QB, but White intends to expand on the Q side with b4 and c5, when this knight will have a good post either on b3 or c4. The two supplementary games Gurevic – Uhlmann and Lputian – Akopian show how dangerous such a Q-side assault can be.

9. . . . a5

Temporarily preventing b4. A good alternative is 9. . . . c5 which is analysed in detail by Dr John Nunn in 64 (June 1989). We give five examples of this line to give you a total view of both possibilities.

10. a3

Planning to play b4 after Rb1.



10. . . . Nd7

Preparing immediate K side counterplay by . . . f5. There are two alternatives:

- (i) 10. . . . Bd7 11. Rb1 a4 12. b4 axb3 13. Nxb3 b6 (to stop c5) 14. Ra1! and the 'a' pawn is successfully advanced to a5, as in our pretty supplementary game Lputian – Kupreichik.
- (ii) 10. . . . c5 and play proceeds in similar fashion to our note to move 9.

11. Rb1 f5
12. b4 b6

The move 12. . . . Nf6 allows White to play 13. c5 and if Black plays 12. . . . Kh8 planning . . . Ng8-f6 then 13. Nb3 supports a possible c5. In a later round of the same championship, Kasparov himself played 12. . . . Kh8 against Gavrikov. He never managed to carry out the main idea of transferring the knight from e7 to f6 and only drew with difficulty (see Supplementary Material).

13. f3

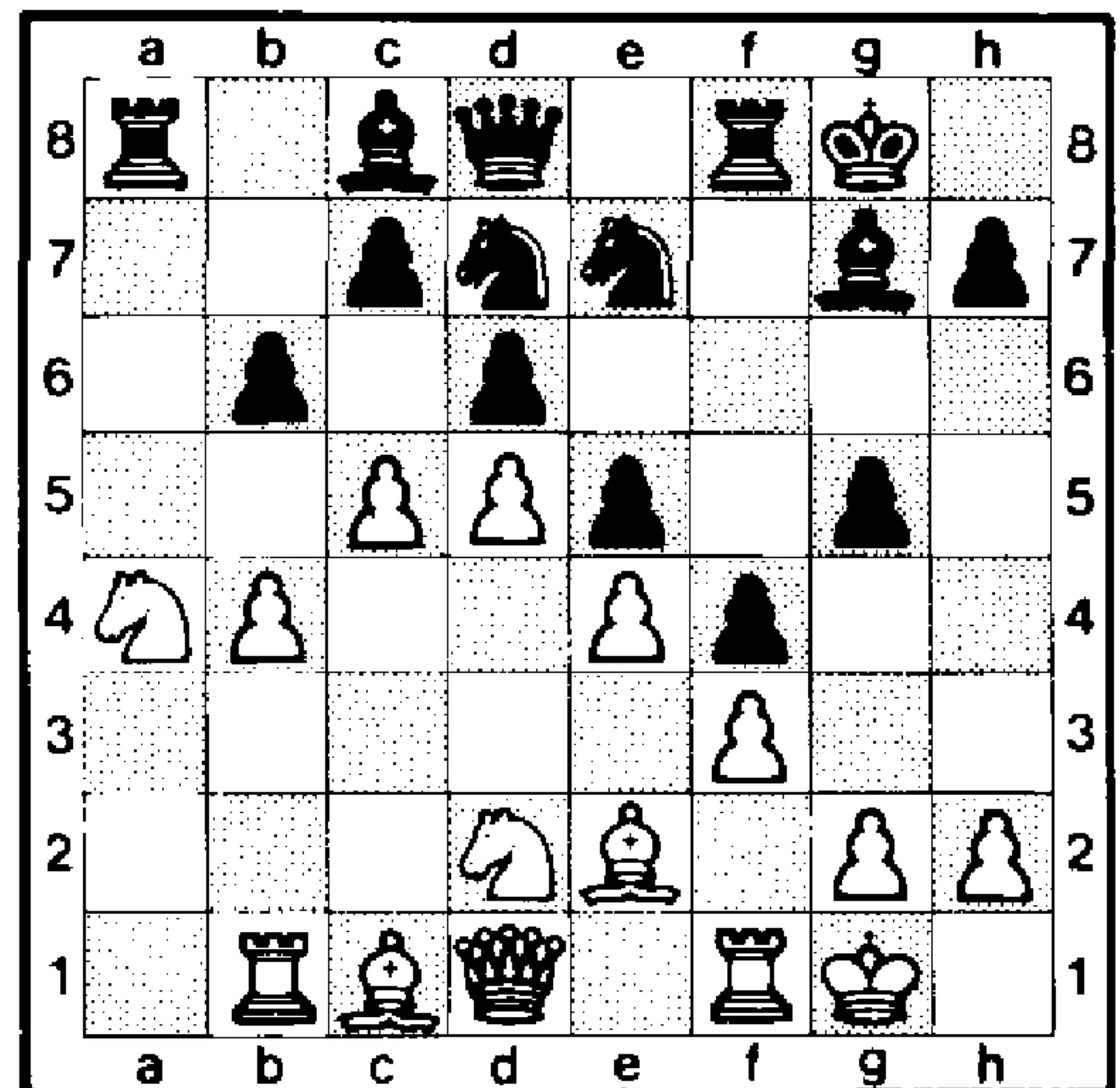
Securing e4 against later pressure from a black knight on f6 and freeing his QN to go to a4 and support the c5 thrust.

13. . . . f4

Momentarily leaving his knight on d7 to

prevent c5 and planning . . . g5, . . . Ng6, . . . h5 and . . . g4.

14. Na4 axb4
15. axb4 g5
16. c5!



Although Black is defending the key c5 square more than it is attacked, this temporary pawn sacrifice is typical of these pawn storms. After 16. . . . bxc5 17. bxc5 dxc5 (or 17. . . . Nxc5 18. Nxc5 dxc5 giving us similar positions) 18. Qb3, forcing Black to defend against d6+, White wins back the pawn at his leisure by Ba3 and Rfc1, when the weak c7 pawn will be exposed to an attack.

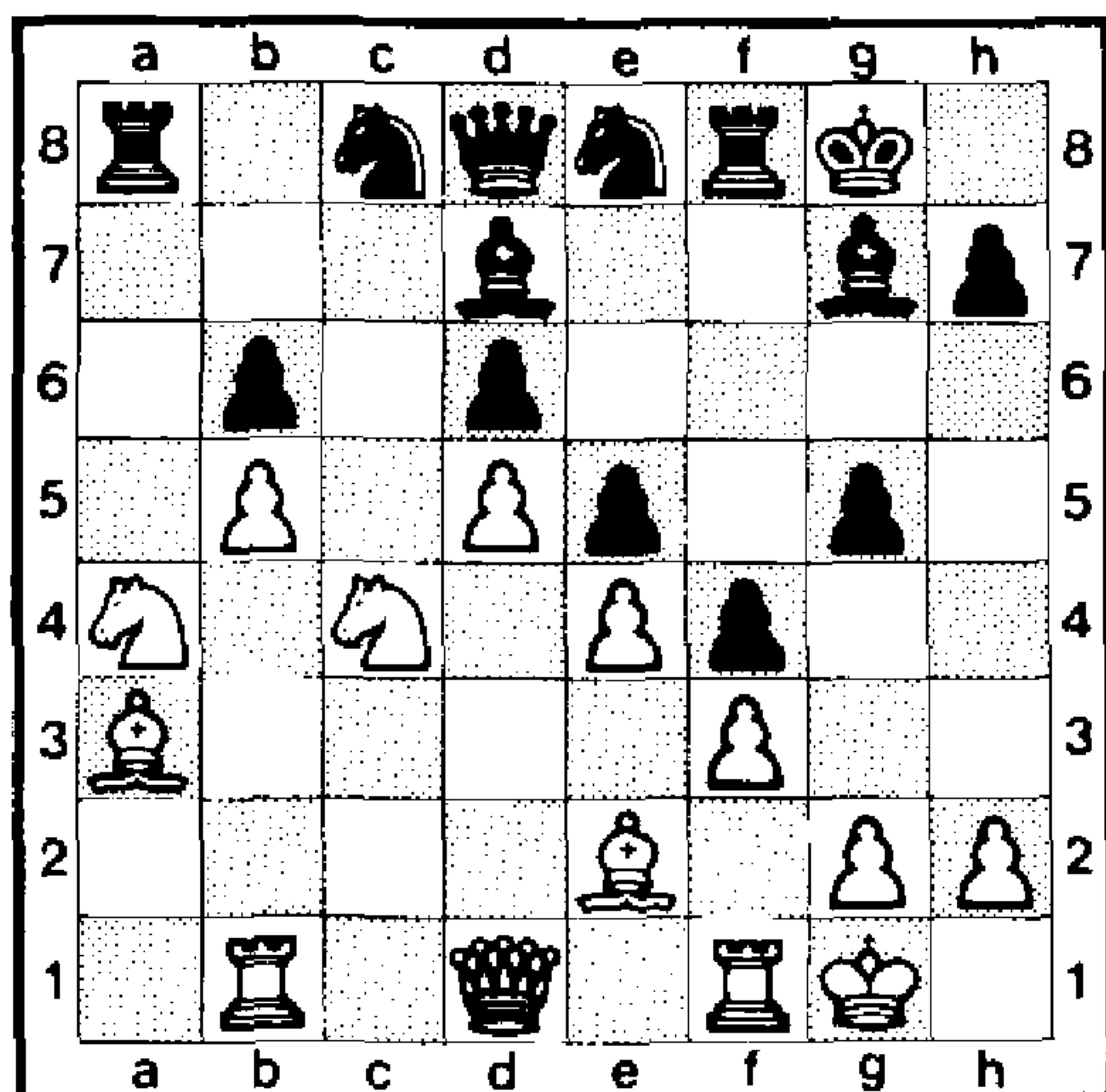
16. . . . Nf6
17. cxd6 cxd6

Not 17. . . . Qxd6? 18. Nc4 Qd8 19. d6 winning at least a pawn.

18. b5

Not of course 18. Nc4?? b5. Both the black pawns on b6 and d6 are now fixed objects of attack.

18. . . . Bd7
19. Nc4 Nc8
20. Ba3 Ne8



Black has opted for a passive defence of his weak points on the Q side whilst he prepares to play his rook to g6 followed by ... g4.

21. g4!

This typical blockading move ends the opening phase. If Black now leaves this pawn on g4 (21. ... h5 22. h3!), it brings his K side play to an abrupt end, allowing White to direct his energy to the Q side by Qb3, Nc3, Bb4, Ra1 and then, with or without the exchange of rooks, Ra6 with a hopelessly passive position for Black.

21. ... fxg3

22. hxg3 g4!

The best chance according to Kasparov. After 23. fxg4 Rxf1+ 24. Kxf1 Qf6+ 25. Kg2 Qg6 26. Bf3 Nf6 Black obtains strong counterplay.

23. Bc1!

A multi-purpose move. Firstly, it prevents the black bishop from becoming active on h6. Secondly, it plans to put pressure on the b6 pawn from e3, now that Black's f4 pawn has gone. Thirdly, this bishop can now take part in a K side attack as in the game.

23. ... gxf3

24. Bxf3 Nf6

Kasparov gives as worse 24. ... Rb8 25. Bg4 Rxf1+ 26. Kxf1 Qf6+ 27. Kg2 Bxg4 28. Qxg4 with advantage to White.

25. Bg5 Ra7

26. Rf2 Rb7

27. Rb3 Ra7

28. Rb1 Rb7

29. Rb3

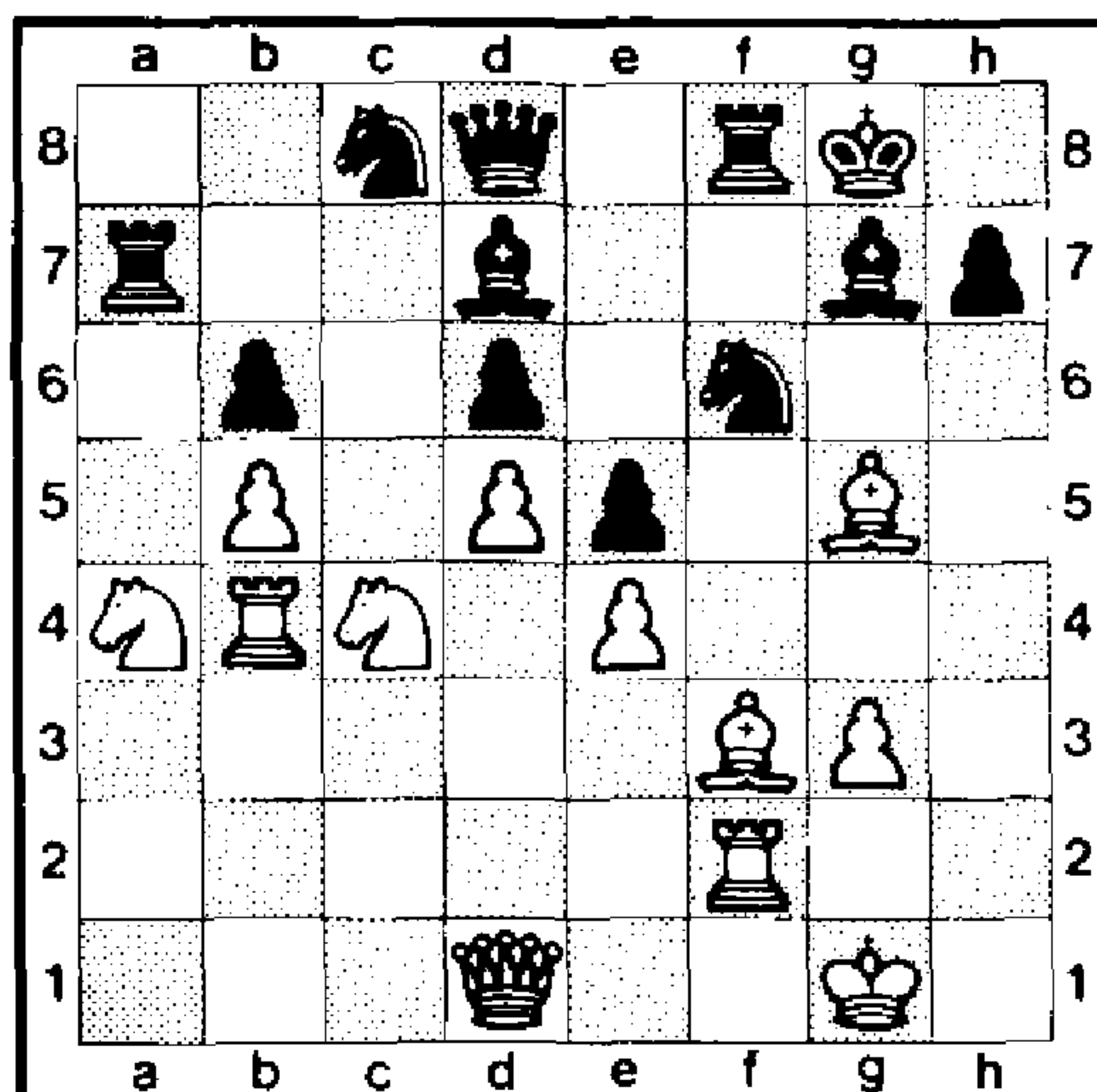
Gaining time on the clock by repeating moves.

29. ... Ra7

Normally, a fighter such as Ilya Smirin is not so peacefully inclined but in a difficult position and against the World Champion he would not be averse to a draw by repetition!

30. Rb4!

But Kasparov will have none of it!



30. ... Kh8?!

Only now does White's advantage become decisive. Black was hoping for play down the 'g' file after ... Rg8 but, since nothing comes of it, he should have adopted Kasparov's suggested 30. ... Qe8 31. Naxb6 Nxb6 32. Nxb6 Bxb5 33.

Qb1 when White stands a little better (plan: Nc4 and Rb8)

31. Qf1!

Intending (after 31. . . . Rb7) 32. Bh5 followed by Ne3-f5 (Kasparov).

31. . . . Bxb5

The spectators in the Moscow tournament hall were wondering if the World Champion had blundered away a pawn . . .

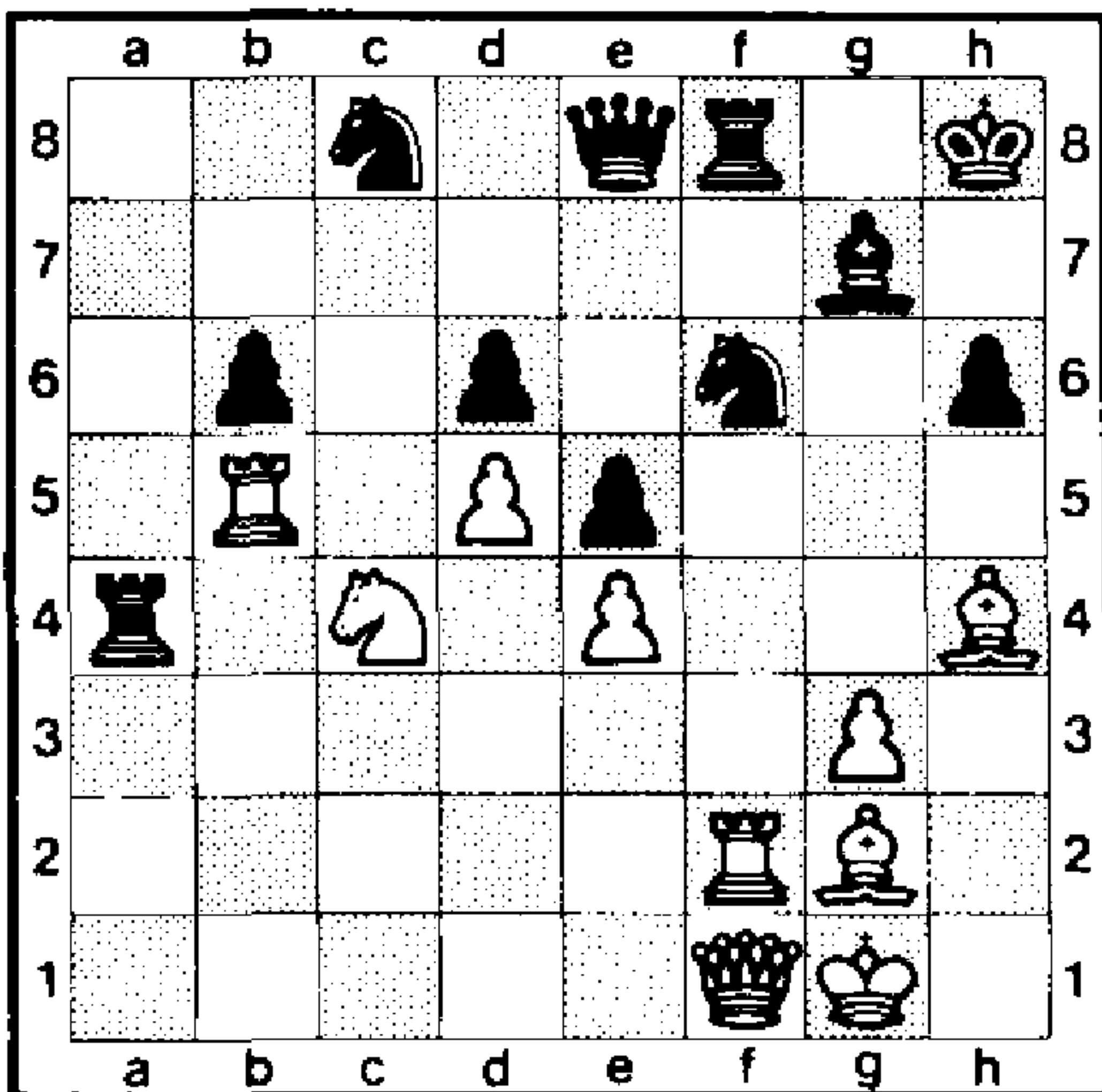
32. Rxb5 Rxa4

33. Bg2 h6

34. Bh4

We can now see the point of the pawn sacrifice. White simply intends to win a piece by Bh3 followed by Bxc8 or, if Black defends by the passive . . . Ra8, to post his bishop on e6 and attack down the 'h' file after advancing the 'g' pawn to g5. [There are even simpler options for White if Black does not immediately free himself from the pin, such as Rb3-f3 or Ne3-g4 piling up on the f6 knight.]

34. . . . Qe8



Unpinning the knight by attacking the rook on b5. If now 35. Nxb6 (protecting the rook by his queen) 35. . . . Nxb6 36.

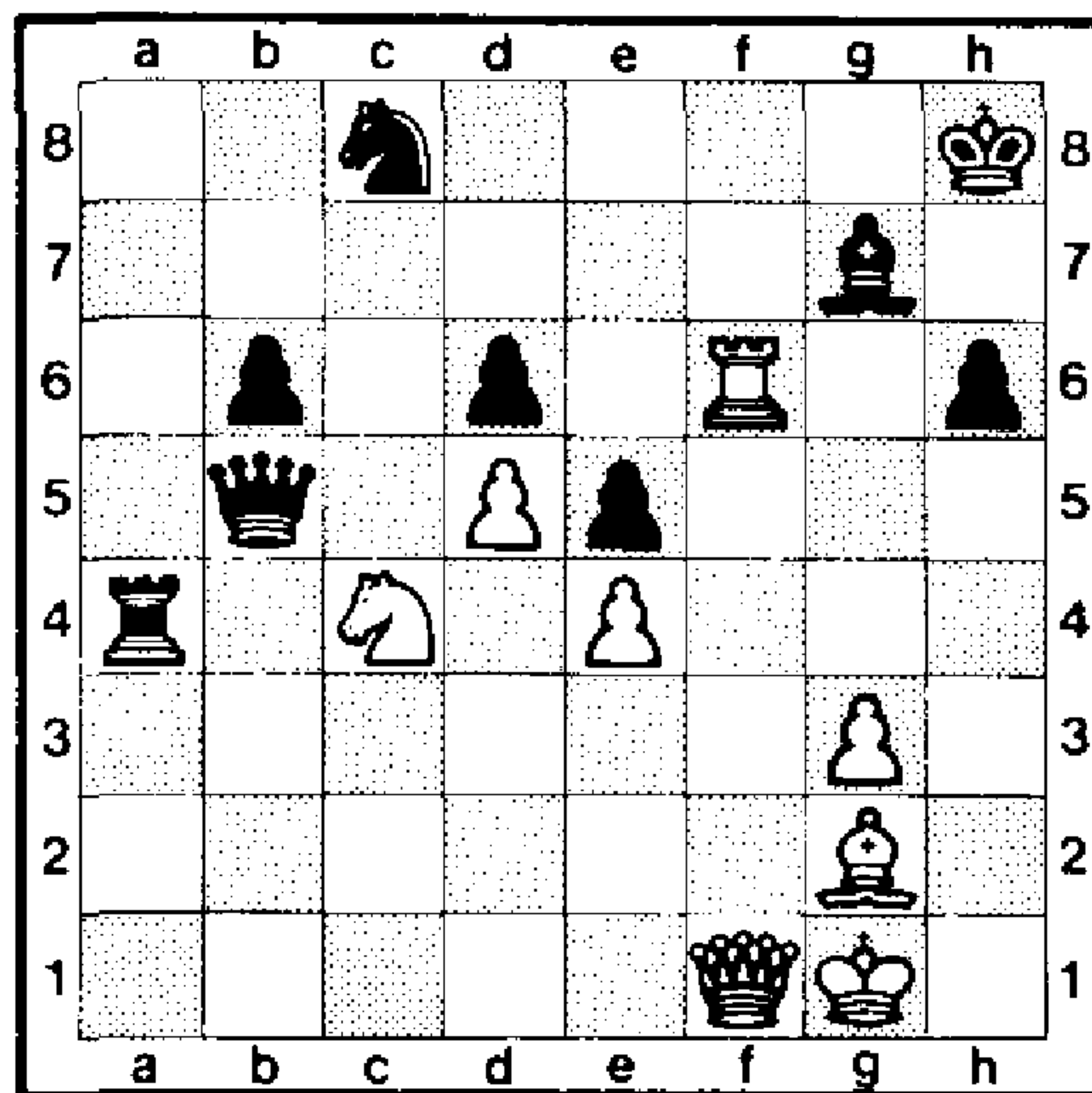
Rxb6 Nxe4! when Black could simply lean back comfortably and scrutinize his opponent's face. It seems incredible that, in fact, White can allow his rook to be captured . . .

35. Bxf6! Rxf6

If 35. . . . Qxb5 36. Bxg7+ Kxg7 37. Rxf8 Black is either mated or loses hopelessly after 37. . . . Ra1! 38. Rxc8 Rxf1+ 39. Bxf1 etc.

36. Rxf6! Qxb5

Attacking two white pieces and, according to Smirin's own statement, expecting Kasparov to take the perpetual check by 37. Rf8+ Bxf8 38. Qxf8+ etc.



37. Re6!!

Now the knight is taboo, since 37. . . . Qxc4 allows mate in three moves and 37. . . . Rxc4 loses to 38. Qf7 Qc5+ 39. Kh2 Rc1 40. Re8+ Kh7 41. Qf5 mate. [Even the dismal retreat 37. . . . Qd7 preventing Qf7 fails to 38. Qf5 (threatening to win the queen by 39. Rxh6+) 38. . . . Ra7 (38. . . . Qc7 allows mate in three) 39. Qh5! (threatening Re8+) 39. . . . Ne7 40. Bh3! and, since White's king can

escape rook checks by moving to e3 and Black's queen is threatened, the finish might be 40. . . . Qc7 41. Rxf6+ Bxf6 42. Qxf6+ Kg8 43. Be6 mate. So Black protects f7 with his king.]

37. . . . Kg8

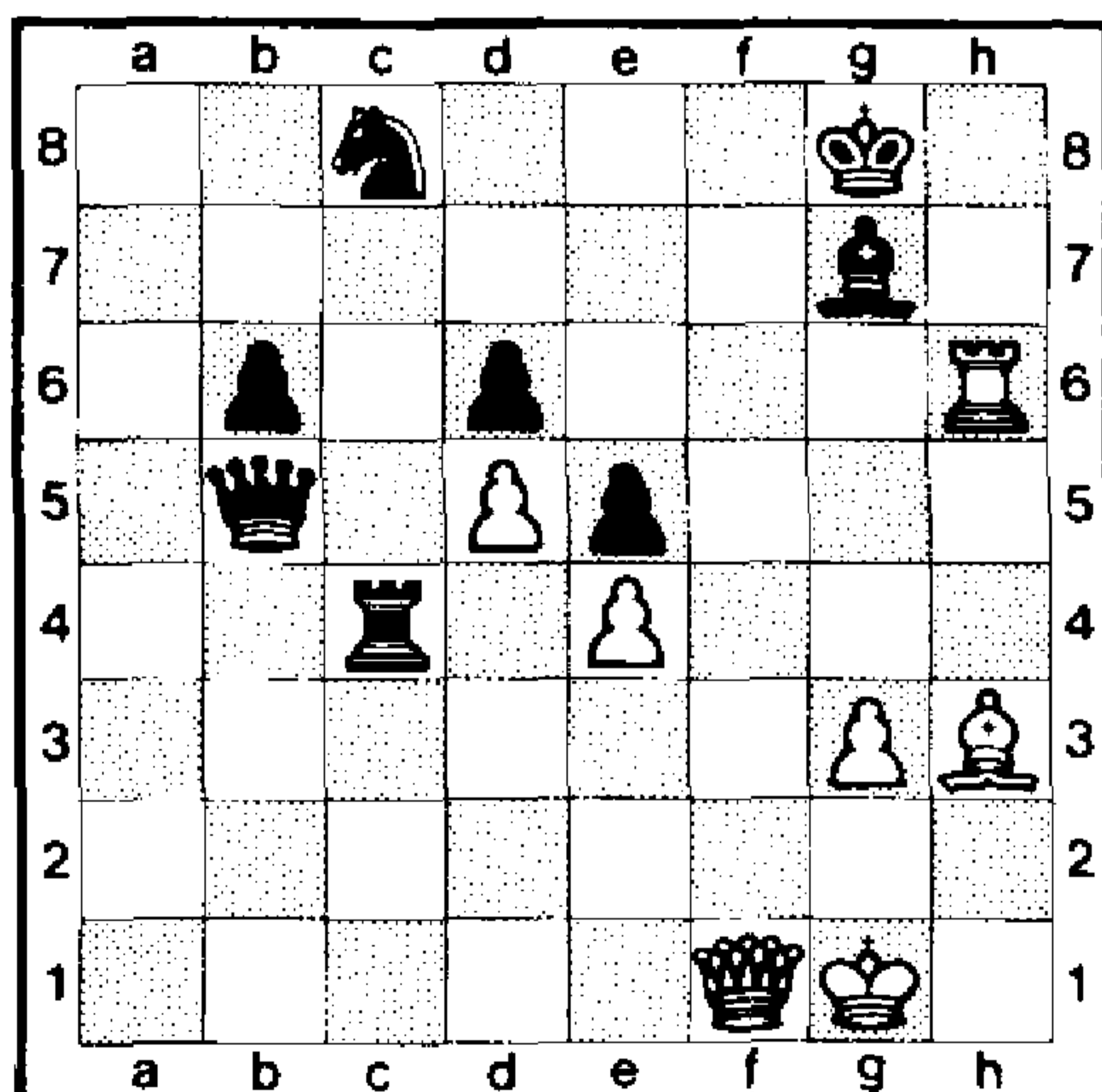
38. Bh3!

Threatening Rg6 and Be6+. Black should now defend with 38. . . . Ra7! because White must still be careful about his own king's position, but it is understandable that Smirin failed to take into account White's next diabolical move which must have been foreseen at least four moves before.

38. . . . Rxc4?

39. Rxf6!!

This beautiful move must have been one of the reasons why this game was awarded the Brilliancy Prize of the 1988 USSR Championship. The first important point is that, although Black can now win the queen by 39. . . . Qc5+ 40. Kh1 Rc1, White then has 41. Be6 mate!



39. . . . Bxf6

As in the romantic days of old, Black is a

rook and knight up but cannot prevent mate.

40. Be6+ Kh8

Or 40. . . . Kh7 41. Qf5+ Kg7 42. Qf7+ Kh8 43. Qg8 mate.

41. Qf6+ 1-0

If 41. . . . Bg7 42. Qh4+ Bh6 43. Qxf6 mate, and if 41. . . . Kh7 42. Qf7+ Bg7 43. Bf5+ Kh8 44. Qh5+ Kg8 45. Be6+ Kf8 46. Qf7 mate.

Supplementary Material

G Kasparov – M Vukic

(Banja Luka, 1979)

1. c4 Nf6 2. Nc3 g6 3. d4 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 Bg4 7. Be3 Nfd7 8. Ng1 Bxe2 9. Ngxe2 e5 10. 0-0 a5 11. Qd2 Nc6 12. f3 exd4 13. Nxd4 Nc5 14. Rad1 Ne6 15. Ndb5 Re8 16. Qc1 Qb8 17. Bh6 Bh8 18. Nd5 Nb4 19. a3 Na6 20. f4 c6 21. f5 cxd5 22. fxe6 Rxe6 23. exd5 Re7 24. Bf4 Rd7 25. Nxd6 Qd8 26. Nb5 Nc5 27. Qe3 b6 28. b4 axb4 29. axb4 Na6 30. Bg5 Qb8 31. d6 Nxb4 32. Be7 Qb7 33. Rxf7 Kxf7 34. Rf1+ Bf6 35. Bxf6 **1-0**

G Kasparov – M Chiburdanidse

(Baku, 1980)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. Be3 Qe7 8. d5 Ng4 9. Bg5 f6 10. Bh4 h5 11. h3 Nh6 12. Nd2 c5 13. Nf1 Nf7 14. g4 hxg4 15. Bxg4 g5 16. Bxc8 Rxc8 17. Ne3 gxh4 18. Nf5 Qd8 19. Qg4 Ng5 20. Nxh4 Rc7 21. Nf5 a6 22. h4 Nh7 23. Rg1 Qf8 24. Ke2 Ra7 25. a4 b6 26. Qh5 Kh8 27. Rg6 Rd7 28. Rag1 Rab7 29. Qg4 Rbc7 30. Rg2 Rb7 31. Kf1 Ra7 32. Kg1 Rf7 33. Ne2 Qc8 34. f4 b5 35. axb5 axb5 36. cxb5 Rab7 37. h5 Nf8 38. Qh3 Nxg6 39. hxg6+ Kg8 40. gxf7+ Kf8 **1-0**

G Kasparov – J Morrison

(Graz, 1981)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. Be3 Qe7 8. d5 Ng4 9. Bg5 f6 10. Bh4 h5 11. Nd2 c5 12. dxc6 bxc6 13. b4 Be6 14. 0-0 Nd7 15. Nb3 Nxe2 16. Kxe2 g5 17. Na5 Nb8 18. Bg3 h4 19. Bg4 Bxg4 20. Qxg4 hxe3+ 21. fxe3 a6 22. Nd1 d5 23. Ne3 Ra7 24. cxd5 Qxb4 25. Qe6+ Raf7 26. Nac4 Qe7 27. Nf5 **1-0**

G Kasparov – Dr J Nunn

(World Cup, Reykjavik 1988)

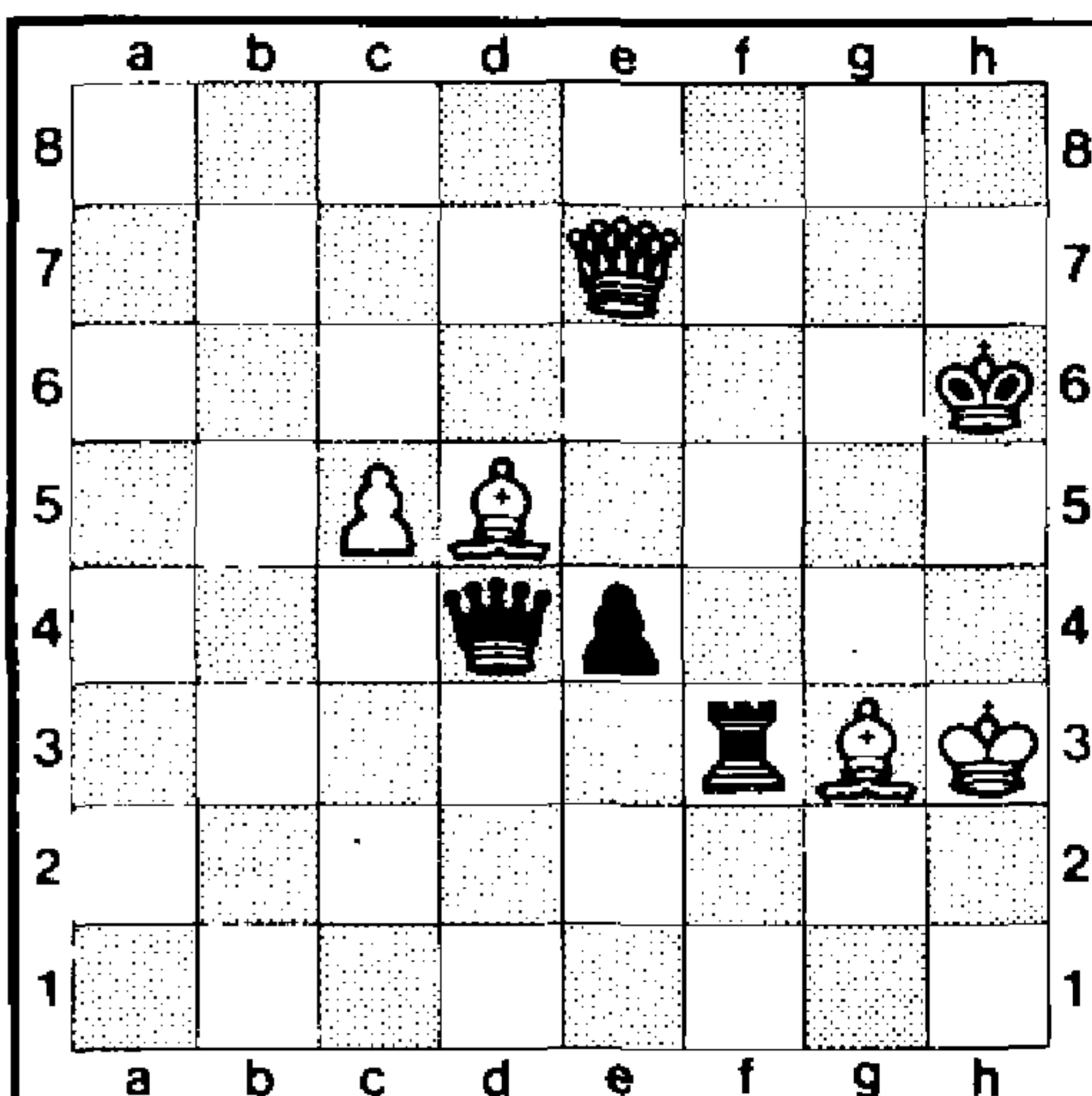
1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. Be3 h6 8. 0-0 Ng4 9. Bc1 Nc6 10. d5 Ne7 11. Nd2 f5 12. Bxg4 fxe4 13. b4 b6 14. Nb3 g5 15. a4 Ng6 16. a5 Bd7 17. c5 bxc5 18. bxc5 a6 19. Nd2 Nf4 20. Rb1 dxc5 21. Ba3 Rf7 22. Nc4 Qf6 23. Bxc5 Bf8 24. Bxf8 Raxf8 25. Rb4 h5 26. d6 Be6 27. Nd5 Bxd5 28. exd5 cxd6 29. Rb6 Rd7 30. Rxa6 Qg6 31. Re1 Nd3 32. Nxe5 Nxe5 33. Rxe5 Qf6 34. Re2 Re7 35. Rc6 Rxe2 36. Qxe2 Qa1+ 37. Qf1 Qxa5 38. Rxd6 Re8 39. Re6 Rxe6 40. dxe6 Qe5 41. Qc1 Kg7 **1/2-1/2**

G Kasparov – N McDonald

(Simultaneous, London 1986)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 Nbd7 7. 0-0 e5 8. Be3 Re8 9. Qc2 exd4 10. Bxd4 c6 11. Rfe1 Qc7 12. Rad1 b6 13. h3 Bb7 14. Bf1 Rad8 15. Be3 Ne5 16. Nxe5 dxe5 17. b4 Bc8 18. c5 b5 19. a4 a6 20. Ra1 Nh5 21. g3 f5 22. axb5 axb5 23. exf5 gxf5 24. Bg5 Rd4 25. Bxb5 e4 26. Be3 Rxb4 27. Nd5 cxd5 28. Bxe8 f4 29. gxf4 Nxf4 30. Ra8 Rb2 31. Qd1 Bc3 32. Rxc8 Qxc8 33. Bxf4 Qf5 34. Be3 Bxe1 35. Qxe1 Kf8 36. Qa1 Qxh3 37. Bf4 Qg4+ 38. Bg3 Qe2 39. Qa8 Qd1+ 40. Kh2 Qd4 41. Bc6+ Kg7 42. Qa7+ Kg8 43. Qd7 Rxf2+ 44. Kh3 Rf3 45. Bxd5+ Kf8 46. Qd8+ Kg7 47. Qg5+ Kf8 48. Qg8+ Ke7 49. Qxh7+ Kd8

50. Qg8+ Ke7 51. Qe6+ Kf8 52. Qd6+ Kg7 53. Qe7+ Kh6



54. Bxe4? (54. Qxe4!) 54. . . . Rxe3+!
55. Kxe3 Qe5+! (56. Qxe5 stalemate!)
1/2-1/2

M Gurevic – W Uhlmann

(Tallinn, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 Bc2 c5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 Nd7 10. b4 f5 11. a4 Bh6 12. Nb3 Bxc1 13. Rxc1 Nf6 14. f3 f4 15. c5 g5 16. Nb5 Ne8 17. Qc2 Ng6 18. cxd6 cxd6 19. Nc7 Nxc7 20. Qxc7 Qf6 21. Nd2 Rf7 22. Qa5 h5 23. Nc4 Bd7 24. Nb6 Raf8 25. Qxa7 g4 26. Nxd7 Rxd7 27. Qb6 Nh4 28. Rc7 Rff7 29. Rxd7 Rxd7 30. fxe4 Qg6 31. Qf2 Qxe4 32. Bb5 Rg7 33. Qxh4 Rxe4 34. Qf2 Qxd5 35. Be2 Rg7 36. Rd1 Qe6 37. Qf3 Qg6 38. Qd5+ Kh8 39. Bf3 Qc2 40. Qd2 **1-0**

S Lputian – V Akopian

(Erevan, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 Nd7 10. b4 f5 11. c5 dxc5 12. bxc5 Nxc5 13. Ba3 b6 14. Bxc5 bxc5 15. Nb3 Kh8 16. Qd2 fxe4 17. Nxc5 Nf5 18.

N5xe4 Bh6 19. Qd3 Nd4 20. Rab1 a5 21. Rfe1 Ba6 22. Qh3 Nxe2+ 23. Nxe2 Bg7 24. N2c3 Qe7 25. Red1 Rf5 26. d6 cxd6 27. Rxd6 Bc8 28. Nd5 Qf8 29. Qd3 Ra7 30. Ne3 **1-0**

S Lputian – A Khalifman

(USSR Championship, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 c5 10. Rb1 Nd7 11. Nb5 Qb6 12. b4 cxb4 13. a3 bxa3 14. c5 Nxc5 15. Bxa3 Qd8 16. Nxd6 b6 17. N2c4 Ba6 18. Bxc5 bxc5 19. Nb7 Bxb7 20. Rxb7 Nc8 21. d6 Nb6 22. Na5 Nc8 23. Nc4 Nb6 24. Qd2 Qf6 25. Rd1 Qe6 26. Qc2 Qf6 27. Na5 Rfd8 28. Bc4 Nxc4 29. Qxc4 Bf8 30. d7 Rab8 31. Qd5 Be7 32. Rxb8 Rxb8 33. Nc6 **1-0**

L Winants – P Scheeren

(Zonal, Budel 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 c5 10. Rb1 Ne8 11. b4 b6 12. bxc5 bxc5 13. Nb3 f5 14. Bg5 Nf6 15. exf5 gxf5 16. Qd2 Ng6 17. f3 Rf7 18. Kh1 Nf4 19. Rfe1 h6 20. Bh4 h5 21. Bf1 Ng6 22. Bg5 Qf8 23. Na5 Nh7 24. Be3 e4 25. f4 Nf6 26. h3 Bh8 27. Nc6 Rh7 28. Kg1 h4 29. Be2 Nh5 30. Bxh5 Rxh5 31. Rb3 Rh7 32. Reb1 Rf7 33. Nb5 Kh7 34. Qa5 Bf6 35. Bd2 a6 36. Nc7 Bd4+ 37. Kh1 e3 38. Bxe3 Bxe3 39. Rxe3 Nxf4 40. Nxa8 **1-0**

I Farago – W Watson

(Beersheva, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 0-0 5. Be2 d6 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 c5 10. Rb1 Ne8 11. b4 b6 12. bxc5 bxc5 13. Nb3 f5 14. Bg5 Kh8 15. exf5 gxf5 16. Nxc5 dxc5 17. d6 Nxd6 18. Nd5 Re8 19. Nxe7 Rxe7 20. Qd5 Bb7 21. Rxb7 Nxb7 22. Qxd8+ Rxd8 23. Bxe7

Rd2 24. Bh5 e4 25. Rb1 Rxa2 (White stands a little better but, according to Nunn, Black should be able to hold the ending. The following blunder, however, turns the game on its head) 26. g4?? (26. Bxc5 is the correct move) 26. . . . Ra1 27. Rxa1 Bxa1 28. Bf7 a5 29. Be8 Kg7 30. g5 a4 31. Bxa4 Kf7 32. Bf6 Bxf6 33. Bc6 Nd8 34. Bd5+ Ne6 35. gxf6 Kxf6 36. f3 e3 37. Kf1 Nf4 38. Bb7 Ke5 39. Bc8 h6 40. Ke1 Kd4 **0-1**

A Chernin – R Gunawan

(GMA Open, Belgrade 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 c5 10. Rb1 Ne8 11. b4 b6 12. bxc5 bxc5 13. Nb3 f5 14. Bg5 Rf7 15. exf5 Bxf5 16. Bd3 h6 17. Bxe7 Rxe7 18. Qc2 Rf7 19. Ne4 Nf6 20. Ng3 Bxd3 21. Qxd3 Kh7 22. Nd2 Rb8 23. Rb3 Rfb7 24. Ra3 a5 25. Nde4 Nxe4 26. Nxe4 Rb4 27. g3 a4 28. h4 Kh8 29. Kg2 Qf8 30. Re1 R8b7 31. Re3 Rd7 32. Rf3 Qe8 33. Qc2 Rd8 34. h5 g5 35. Nf6 Bxf6 36. Rxf6 Qxh5 37. Qf5 Kg7 **1-0**

I Farago – A Sznepik

(Zonal, Warsaw 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. Nd2 a5 10. Rb1 c5 11. a3 Ne8 12. b4 axb4 13. axb4 b6 14. bxc5 bxc5 15. Nb3 f5 16. f3 Nf6 17. Bd2 Nh5 18. Ra1 Rxa1 19. Qxa1 Nf4 20. Qa5 Qxa5 21. Nxa5 fxe4 22. fxe4 Bh6 23. Bxf4 exf4 24. Nb5 Bg7 25. Nxd6 Bd7 26. Kh1 Rb8 27. Nab7 Bd4 28. e5 Bc8 29. e6 Bxb7 30. Rb1 Be5 31. Nxb7 Nf5 32. Bd3 Nd6 33. Nxc5 Rxb1+ 34. Bxb1 Nxc4 35. Ba2 Nd6 36. Nd3 Bd4 37. Nxf4 Kg7 38. g3 Kf6 39. Kg2 Bc5 40. Kf3 Bb6 41. Nd3 Bd4 42. Nb4 Bc5 43. Nc6 Bg1 44. Bb1 Bc5 45. Bd3 Ba3 46. h4 Bc1 47. g4 Bd2 48. g5+ Kg7

49. Kg4 Bc1 50. h5 gxh5+ 51. Kxh5 Ba3
52. e7 Ne8 53. Bf5 Nc7 54. Bd7 Kf7 55.
Kh6 Bc1 56. d6 **1-0**

S Lputian – V Kupreichik

(USSR Championship, 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5.
Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9.
Nd2 a5 10. a3 Bd7 11. Rb1 a4 12. b4
axb3 13. Nxb3 b6 14. Ra1 Ne8 15. a4 f5
16. f3 Kh8 17. Be3 Ng8 18. a5 bxa5 19.
Nxa5 Bh6 20. Bxh6 Nxh6 21. Qd2 Nf7
22. c5 dxc5 23. Nb7 Qb8 24. Nxc5 Nf6
25. Rxa8 Qxa8 26. Kh1 Qa5 27. Nxd7
Nxd7 28. exf5 gxf5 29. f4 e4 30. g4 Nf6
31. g5 Ne8 32. Nxe4 Qxd2 33. Nxd2
Ned6 34. Rc1 Ra8 35. Bh5 Ra2 36. Nf3
Ne4 37. Bxf7 Nf2+ 38. Kg1 Nh3+ 39.
Kf1 Rf2+ 40. Ke1 Rxf3 41. d6 cxd6 42.
Rc8+ Kg7 43. Bd5 Re3+ 44. Kd2 Re2+
45. Kd1 h5 46. Rc7+ Kf8 47. g6 **1-0**

V Gavrikov – G Kasparov

(USSR Championship, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6
5. Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7
9. Nd2 a5 10. a3 Nd7 11. Rb1 f5 12. b4
Kh8 13. Qc2 b6 14. Nb3 axb4 15. axb4
fxe4 16. Nxe4 Nf6 17. Bd3 Nxe4 18.
Bxe4 Nf5 19. Qd3 Qh4 20. g3 Qf6 21. f3
Bd7 22. Bd2 Nd4 23. Nxd4 exd4 24. Ra1
Bh3 25. Rxa8 Rxa8 26. Rd1 Bf5 27. Re1
h5 28. Kf2 Bxe4 29. Qxe4 Ra3 30. Qf4
Qxf4 31. gxf4 Bf6 32. Re8+ Kg7 33. Rc8
Ra7 34. Ke2 Bh4 35. Kd3 Bf2 36. Bc1
Ra1 37. Rxc7+ Kf6 38. Bd2 Ra3+ 39.
Ke4 Ra2 40. Kd3 Ra3+ **1/2-1/2**

B Old Indian

Our model game comes from one of the most fascinating chess encounters ever. In 1987, Kasparov took on the whole of the Swiss Olympiad team (with

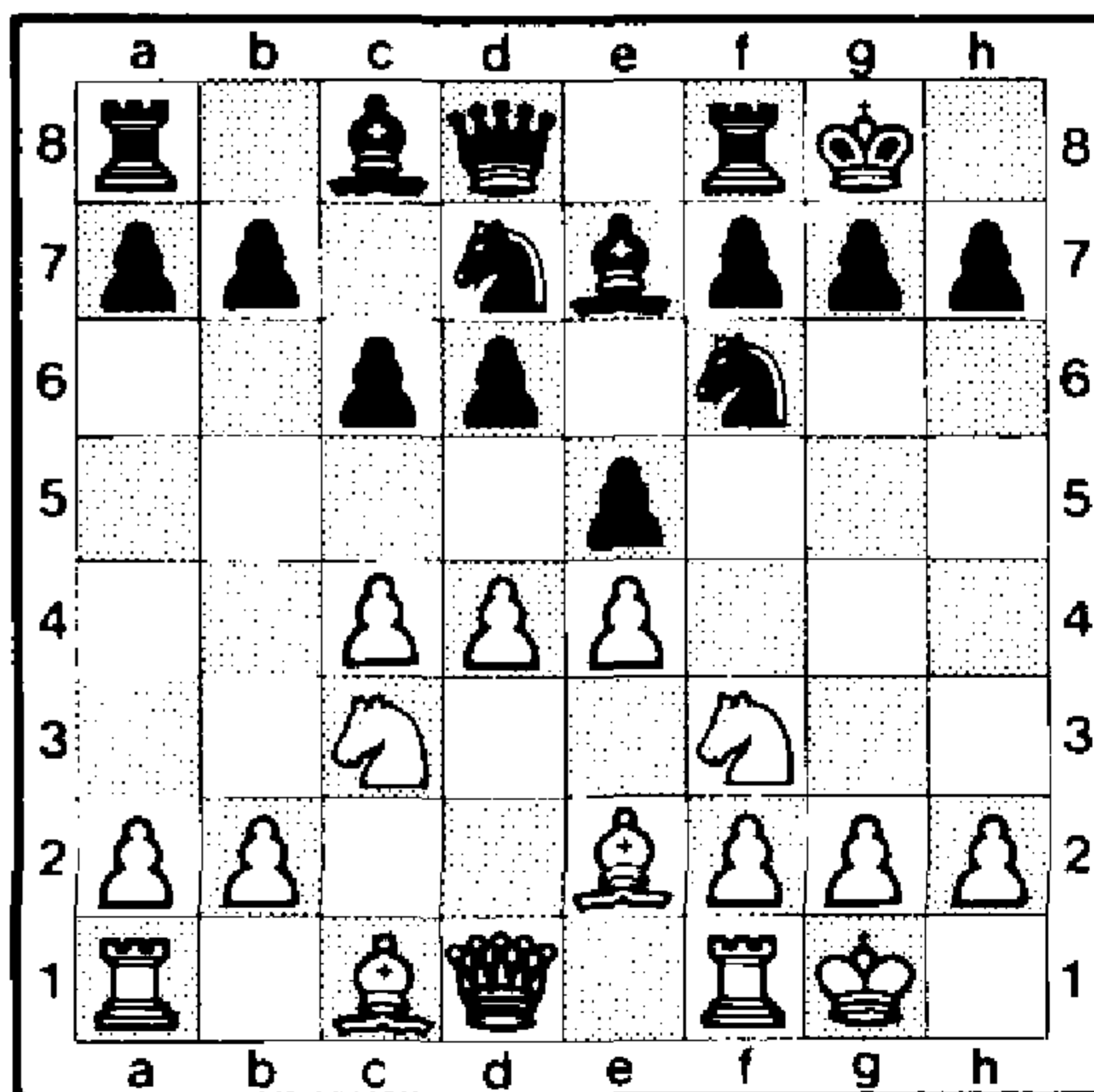
the exception of Korchnoi) in a simultaneous display. These were serious clock games, with each opponent having two and a half hours for the whole game, whilst Kasparov had to spread this time over six boards, giving him an average of twenty-five minutes per game, including the time it took him to move on to each player plus the readjustment time required to change over from one game to the next!

Since five of the Swiss team were themselves International Masters who were very strong players used to giving their own 'simuls', the experts predicted a resounding defeat for the World Champion. In the whole of chess history, no player had ever undertaken such a task, but Kasparov, after thorough preparation of his opponents' games, pulled off a tremendous 5½-½ victory . . .

G Kasparov – M Trepp

(Simultaneous, Zürich 1987)

1. d4 Nf6
2. Nf3 d6
3. c4 Nbd7



4. **Nc3** **c6**
 5. **e4** **e5**
 6. **Be2** **Be7**
 7. **0-0** **0-0**

The basic position of the Old Indian Defence.

8. Re1

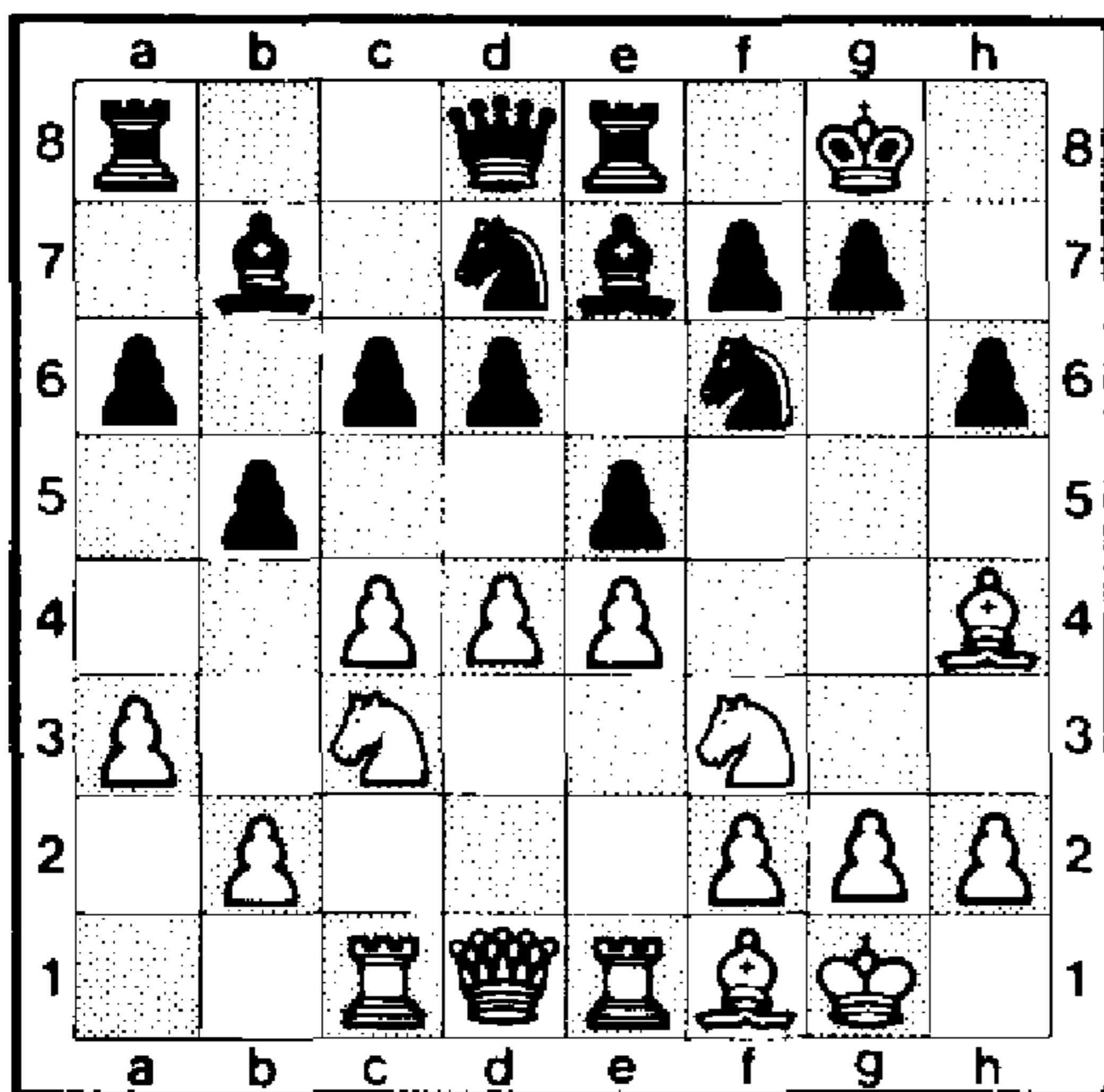
A waiting move, preparing to protect the e4 pawn in lines such as 8. . . . exd4 9. Nxd4 Nc5 10. Bf1 etc. In two other games, against Larsen (Bugojno, 1982) and Stein (Hamburg, 1987), Kasparov closed the centre with 8. d5 (see Supplementary Material).

8. . . . **a6**
 9. **Bf1** **b5**
 10. **a3**

Preventing . . . b4.

10. . . . **Bb7**
 11. **Bg5** **h6**
 12. **Bh4** **Re8**
 13. **Rc1**

White has reached an ideal set-up against this defence, with all his pieces poised for a struggle over the whole board. Note in particular the Re1, Bf1 manoeuvre. Black too has developed all



his pieces except the QR, but if he now plays 13. . . . Rc8 White gains more space with 14. b4, ready to answer 14. . . .

Bf8 with 15. dxe5 dxe5 16. c5 blocking out Black's QB. It is difficult for Black to untie the Gordian knot in the centre e.g.

(i) 14. . . . c5 15. bxc5 dxc5 16. d5 (threatening the b5 pawn) 16. . . . b4 17. Na4 and again Black's QB stands badly.

(ii) 14. . . . d5? 15. exd5 exd4 (otherwise a pawn is lost) 16. Nxd4 bxc4 (16. . . . cxd5 17. c5 is clearly good for White) 17. dxc6 Bxc6 18. Bxc4 followed by Qb3.

(iii) 14. . . . exd4 15. Nxd4 c5 16. Nf5 looks very good for White, as does 16. bxc5 Nxc5 17. cxb5.

Let us look more closely at the black pawn structure b5/c6/d6/e5. The b5 and e5 pawns are both under pressure from the c4 and d4 pawns respectively and protected by the c6 and d6 pawns. This means that any premature pawn advance by . . . c5 or . . . d5, however desirable, relinquishes vital protection of the other advanced pawn, whereas exchanging first on c4 or d4 brings a white minor piece into an attacking position (a bishop on c4 later backed by Qb3, or a knight on d4 heading for the ideal f5 square. This is the nature of the dilemma facing Black as he tries to form a suitable plan!

13. . . . Qa5?!

This move admittedly prevents b4 and frees d8 for his QR but in view of White's next move it would have been better to adopt Kasparov's recommendation of 13. . . . Nh5 to bring some relief by exchanging White's QB.

14. c5!! exd4

Black has no choice since, owing to the absence of the black queen's protection, 14. . . . dxc5 15. dxe5 wins a piece.

15. Nxd4 Qc7

Trepp sees the dangers of 15. . . . Nxc5 16. b4 or 15. . . . dxc5 16. Nf5 (threatening e5) and if 16. . . . Ne5 17. Nxe7+ Rxe7 18. f4 Ng6 19. Bxf6 gxf6 20. f5 Ne5 21. Qh5 followed by Re3 winning.

16. Nf5 Nxc5

If 16. . . . dxc5 17. Bg3 Qd8 (17. . . . Ne5 18. f4 and 19. e5) 18. e5 Nd5 19. Qg4 with a clear advantage for White after 19. . . . g6 (19. . . . Bf8?? loses to 20. Nxf6+ and 21. Nxf7, whilst 19. . . . Bg5 20. f4 is equally hopeless) 20. Nxf6+ Kg7 21. Nxf7! Kxf7 22. e6+ etc.

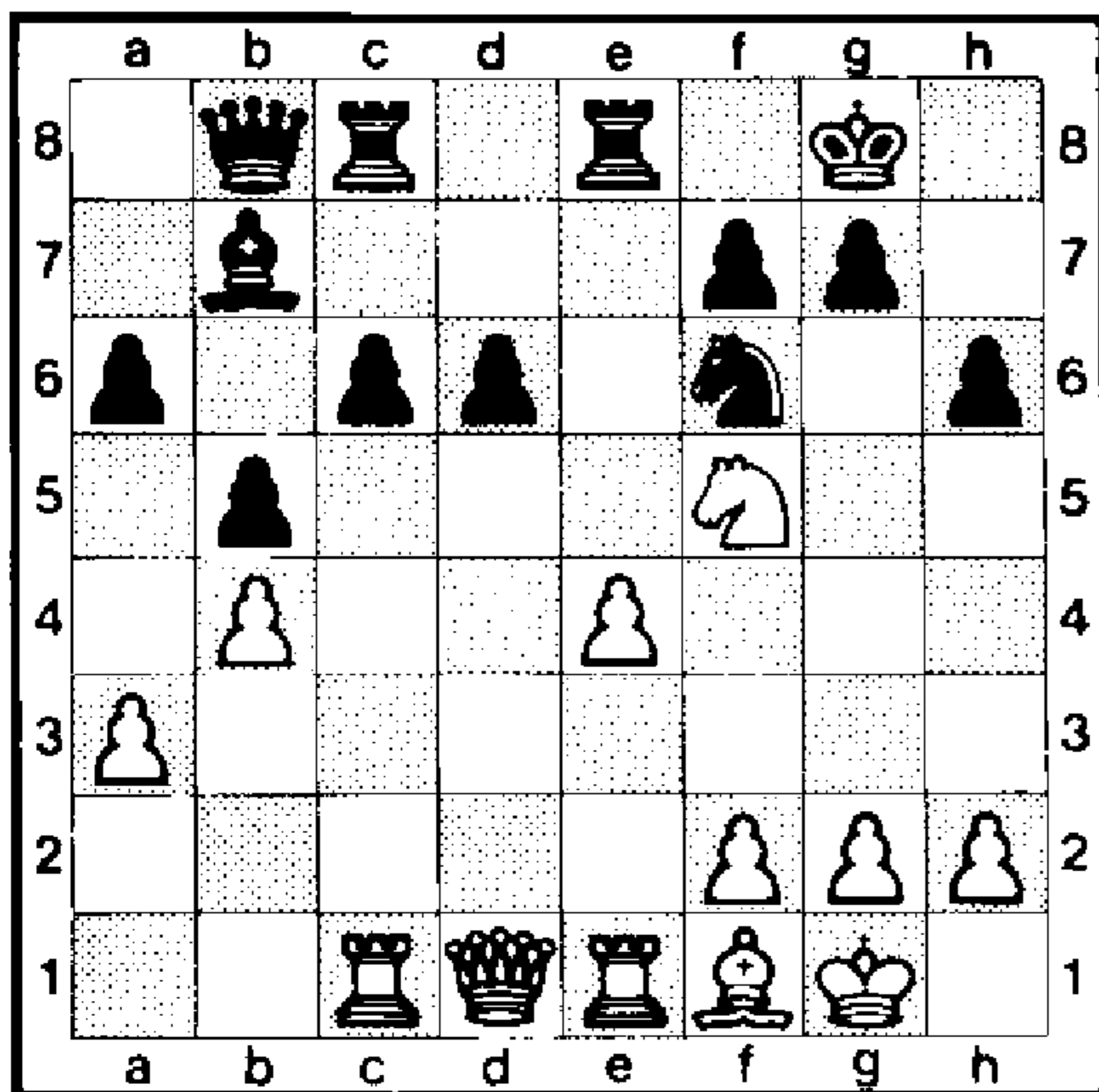
17. Bxf6 Bxf6

18. b4 Nd7

Not 19. . . . Bxc3 20. Rxc3 Nxe4? in view of the typical attacking move 21. Qg4 Ng5 22. h4 winning.

19. Nd5 Qb8

20. Nxf6+ Nxf6



21. Qxd6

Black has managed to avoid all direct threats but his poorly placed bishop and backward pawn on c6 give him a lost ending.

21. . . . Re6

Or 21. . . . Nxe4 22. Qd4 (another way of attacking g7) 22. . . . Qe5 (or 22. . . . Nf6 23. Nxf6+ etc.) 23. Qxe5 Rxe5 24. Nd6! winning material. Or 21. . . . Rxe4 22. Ne7+ winning the exchange (or 22. Rxe4 Nxe4 23. Qd4! etc.).

22. Qxb8+ Rxb8

23. e5 Nd7

23. . . . Nd5 24. Nd4 wins the c6 pawn (24. . . . Rg6 25. Bd3).

24. f4

Black's position is lost in view of the useless bishop, weak 'c' pawn and danger down the 'd' file after Red1. Little wonder that he capitulates very quickly.

24. . . . f6

25. Nd4 Ree8

26. e6 Nf8

27. f5 1-0

With the prospect of 27. . . . Rbc8 28. Rc5 followed by Rec1 or g3 and Bg2, White's win is only a matter of time, so IM Trepp decided to see how his teammates were faring . . .

Supplementary Material

G Kasparov – B Larsen

(Bugojno, 1982)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 d6 3. Nc3 e5 4. Nf3 Nbd7 5. e4 Be7 6. Be2 0-0 7. 0-0 c6 8. d5 Nc5 9. Qc2 cxd5 10. cxd5 Qc7 11. Nd2 Bd7 12. a4 Rac8 13. Ra3 Ne8 14. Rd1 Bg5 15. b4 Na6 16. Qb3 f5 17. Nc4 Bxc1 18. Rxc1 fxe4 19. Nxe4 Bf5 20. Ng3 Qd7 21. h3 Nf6 22. Raa1 Bg6 23. Ne3 Rxc1+ 24. Rxc1 Rc8 25. Rc6!! bxc6 (or 25. . . . Nc7 26. Rc3 Na6 27. Bb5 Qd8 28. Ngf5 Bxf5 29. Nxf5 Rxc3 30. Qxc3 Nxd5 31. Qc4; or 25. . . . Nb8 26. b5 Kh8 27. Rc4) 26. dxc6+ Qf7 27. Bc4 d5 28. Nxd5 Kh8 29. Nb6 Qc7 30. Nxc8 Qxc8 31. b5 Nc5 32. Qa3 Nce4 33. Qe7 Nxf3 34. c7 Bf5 35. fxg3 h5 36. a5 e4 37. b6 axb6 38.

axb6 Kh7 39. Qc5 (39. . . . Bd7 40. Qa5
Bc6 41. Ba6 Bb7 42. Bxb7 Qxb7 43.
Qf5+) **1-0**

G Kasparov – B Stein

(Simultaneous, Hamburg 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 d6 3. Nc3 Nbd7 4. e4 e5.
Nf3 c6 6. Be2 Be7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. d5 a6
9. Be3 cxd5 10. cxd5 b5 11. Nd2 Nxe4
12. Ncxe4 f5 13. a4 bxa4 14. Qxa4 fxe4
15. Nxe4 Nf6 16. Nxf6+ Rxf6 17. b4 Rf8
18. Qc2 Bg5 19. Bd3 h6 20. b5 Bb7 21.
bxa6 Bxe3 22. fxe3 Rxf1+ 23. Bxf1 Bxd5
24. Rd1 Bf7 25. Qe4 **1-0**

Badzarani – Sur

(USSR, 1989)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 d6 3. Nc3 Nbd7 4. Nf3 e5
5. e4 c6 6. Be2 Be7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. Re1 Qc7
9. Bf1 a6 10. Bg5 Re8 11. d5 h6 12. Be3
Nf8 13. h3 Ng6 14. Qd2 Bd7 15. b4 c5
16. Rab1 b6 17. Rb2 Rec8 18. Reb1 cxb4
19. Rxb4 b5 20. cxb5!! Qxc3 21. b6 a5
22. R4b3 Qxd2 23. Nxd2 Rc2 24. Ra3
Rb8 25. Bd3 Rcc8 26. b7 Rc7 27. Ba6
Rc2 28. Nc4 Nxe4 29. Nxa5 (29. Ba7!)
29. . . . Nc5 30. Nc6 Bxc6 31. dxc6 Bd8
32. Bd3 Nxd3 33. Ba7 **1-0**

6 The Sicilian Defence

In the previous five chapters we have been considering Kasparov's opening repertoire as **White**. We now turn to his choice of openings with **Black**. Against 1. e4 he plays almost exclusively the Sicilian Defence (around ninety per cent of his games), a fighting system which ideally suits his aggressive style and tactical skill.

The name 'Sicilian' goes back to two characters in chess history: the Italian master and first chess publicist, Giulio Cesare Polerio (1548–1612), who examined 1. e4 c5 in his writings around 1575 without giving the defence a name; and his compatriot, Gioacchino Greco (1600–1634), who in his manuscripts described the opening as '*il giuoco siciliano*', the Sicilian Game. Since then, the Sicilian Defence is not only firmly embedded in opening theory but has become in the 20th century the most commonly played of all the openings.

The Sicilian comprises many systems. Kasparov has tried out several of these but has gradually focussed his attention on systems involving . . . e6 and . . . d6, even going so far as to publish (with Nikitin) a Batsford book on this opening.

1. e4 c5
2. Nf3

This most commonly played move leads to the 'open' Sicilian. We shall consider at the end of the chapter alternatives such as 2. c3 and 2. Nc3.

2. . . . e6
3. d4

Opening up the position, in contrast to 3.

d3 (the 'King's Indian Attack') to which we devote a model game in our final chapter.

3. . . . cxd4
4. Nxd4 Nf6
5. Nc3 d6

We have reached the basic position of this opening. White can now adopt the classical continuation 6. Be2 (the Scheveningen System) which quietly develops a piece with a view to castling K side, as in our first model game. Or he can try the bold Keres Attack with 6. g4 (second model game). The latest attacking attempt is the 'English Attack' which consists of the moves Be3, f3, Qd2 and g4 (third model game).

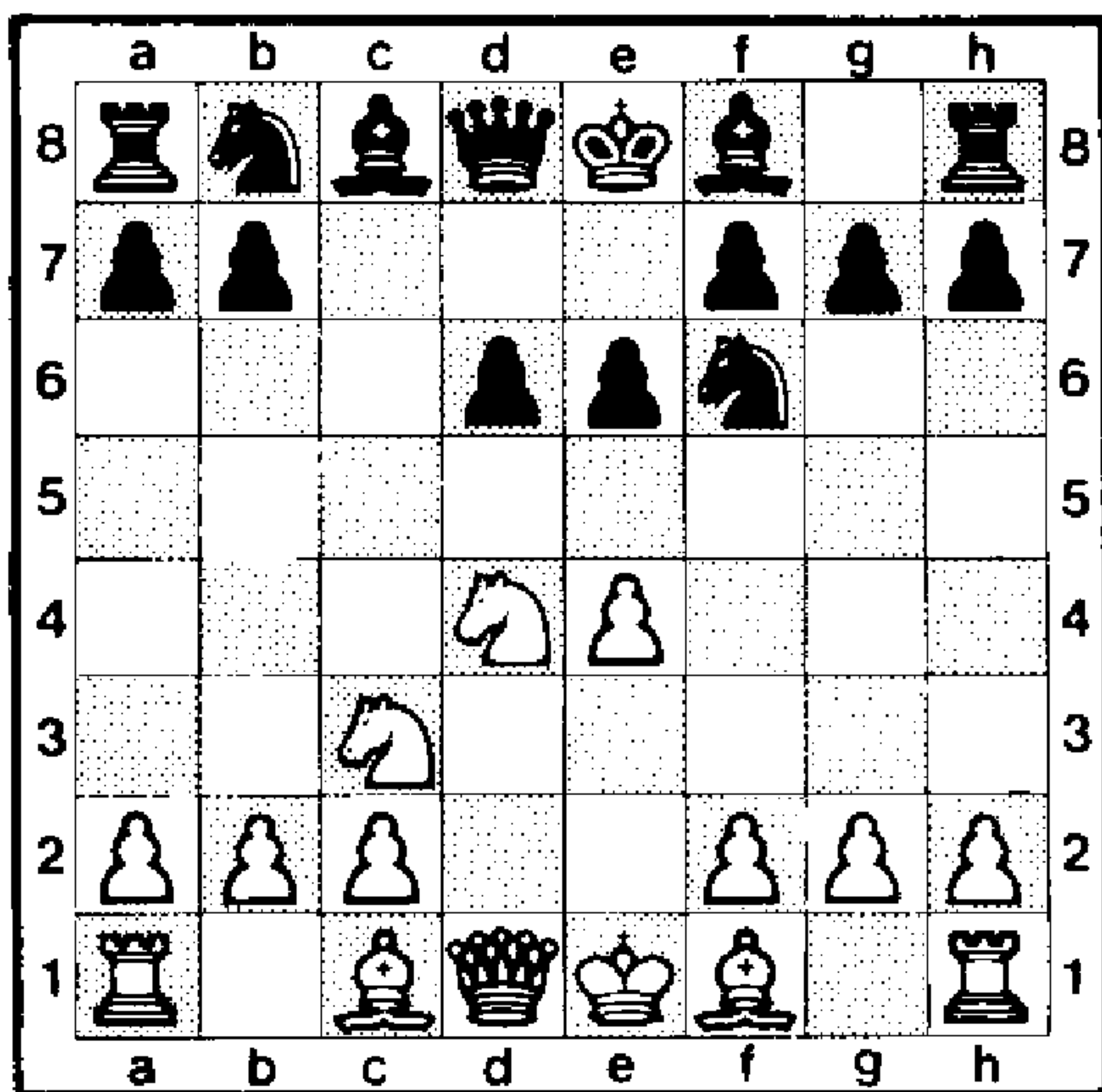
A The Scheveningen System

In the 1923 Scheveningen tournament, Max Euwe (World Champion 1935–1937) adopted the . . . e6/ . . . d6 set-up of the Sicilian for the first time, against Geza Maroczy. This was the origin of what was to become the most commonly played system in the Sicilian Defence. It is important to note that this flexible pawn structure can often be reached by transposition from other Sicilian systems. For example, the Najdorf System 1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 a6 only takes on special significance if linked with 6. Bg5, whereas alternatives such as 6. f4, 6. a4, 6. Be2 and 6. Be3 inevitably transpose into the Scheveningen System after the normal 6. . . . e6. We make this point because chess books and magazines usually fail

to take into account the fact that it is often not until the eighth or ninth move that a transposition into the Scheveningen occurs.

A Beliavsky – G Kasparov
(World Cup, Barcelona 1989)

1. e4 c5
2. Nf3 e6
3. d4 cxd4
4. Nxd4 Nf6
5. Nc3 d6



Our basic position. The elastic black pawn structure of d6/e6 is ready to face a pawn attack by f4 followed by e5 or f5. Black's KB will go to e7 and his QN to c6. His QB usually aims for the a8-h1 diagonal, either directly via ... a6, ... b5 and ... Bb7 or indirectly via ... Bd7, ... Nc6xd4 and ... Bc6. Black's queen belongs on c7. It is only the future placing of the black rooks which is unclear: the KR usually goes to e8 for reasons we shall explain later, whilst the QR normally backs up the queen's pressure down the open 'c' file from c8,

although in some cases, as we shall see, it can play a useful part from b8.

6. Be2

A word of warning! After 6. f4 Black must not automatically reply 6. ... Be7?! when 7. Bb5+ Bd7 8. e5! gives White the advantage e.g.

(i) 8. ... dxe5 9. fxe5 Nd5 (9. ... Ng8 10. Qg4 is most unpleasant for Black) 10. Nxd5 exd5 (10. ... Bxb5? loses a pawn to 11. Nxb5 exd5 12. Qxd5!) 11. Bxd7+ Qxd7 (11. ... Nxd7 12. e6 is also good for White) 12. e6 fxe6 13. Qh5+ g6 14. Qe5 0-0 15. Bh6 Rf7 16. 0-0-0 Nc6 17. Qxe6 with a clear advantage to White in view of the weak pawn on d5.

(ii) 8. ... Nd5? 9. Nxd5 exd5 10. e6! with even better chances than in Variation (i) e.g.

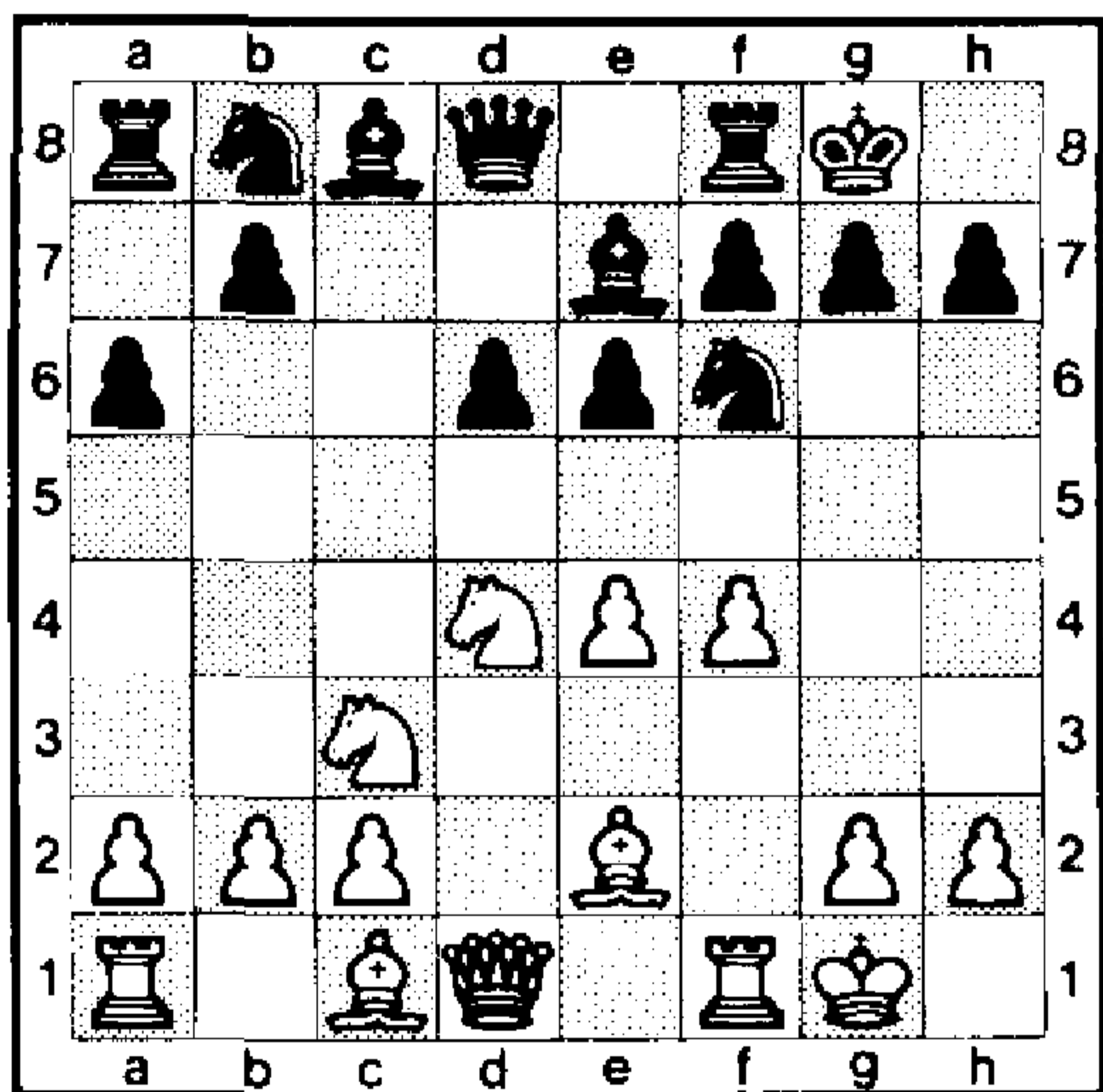
a) 10. ... fxe6 11. Nxe6 Qa5+ 12. Bd2! when 12. ... Qxb5?? loses the queen to 13. Nc7+.

b) 10. ... Bxb5 11. exf7+ Kxf7 12. Qh5+! Kf8 (after 12. ... g6 13. Qxd5+ and 14. Qxb5 White wins a pawn whilst maintaining his attack) 13. Nxb5 Qa5+ 14. Nc3 and the queen on h5 prevents the otherwise strong ... d4.

However, the devotees of the Scheveningen System need not unduly fear 6. f4, since after the correct reply 6. ... a6! (preventing Bb5+) the advance 7. e5?! dxe5 8. fxe5 Nfd7 only results in a weak pawn on e5. So White usually proceeds with 7. Be3 or 7. Be2 transposing into the variations of our model game. The move 6. f4 only takes on special significance with the follow-up Qf3 when the queen is not usually well placed facing Black's QB on the long white diagonal. We give two examples of this white set-up in our first two supplementary games

in which Kasparov is Black against Korzubov and Yudasin. Even though the first of these was played over twelve years ago, Kasparov's approach is modern enough. The moves 6. Bc4 and 6. g3 occur less frequently, but we give an example of each from Kasparov's games, versus Sarapu and Ceskovsky respectively (see Supplementary Material).

6. . . . **Be7**
 7. **0-0** **0-0**
 8. **f4** **a6**

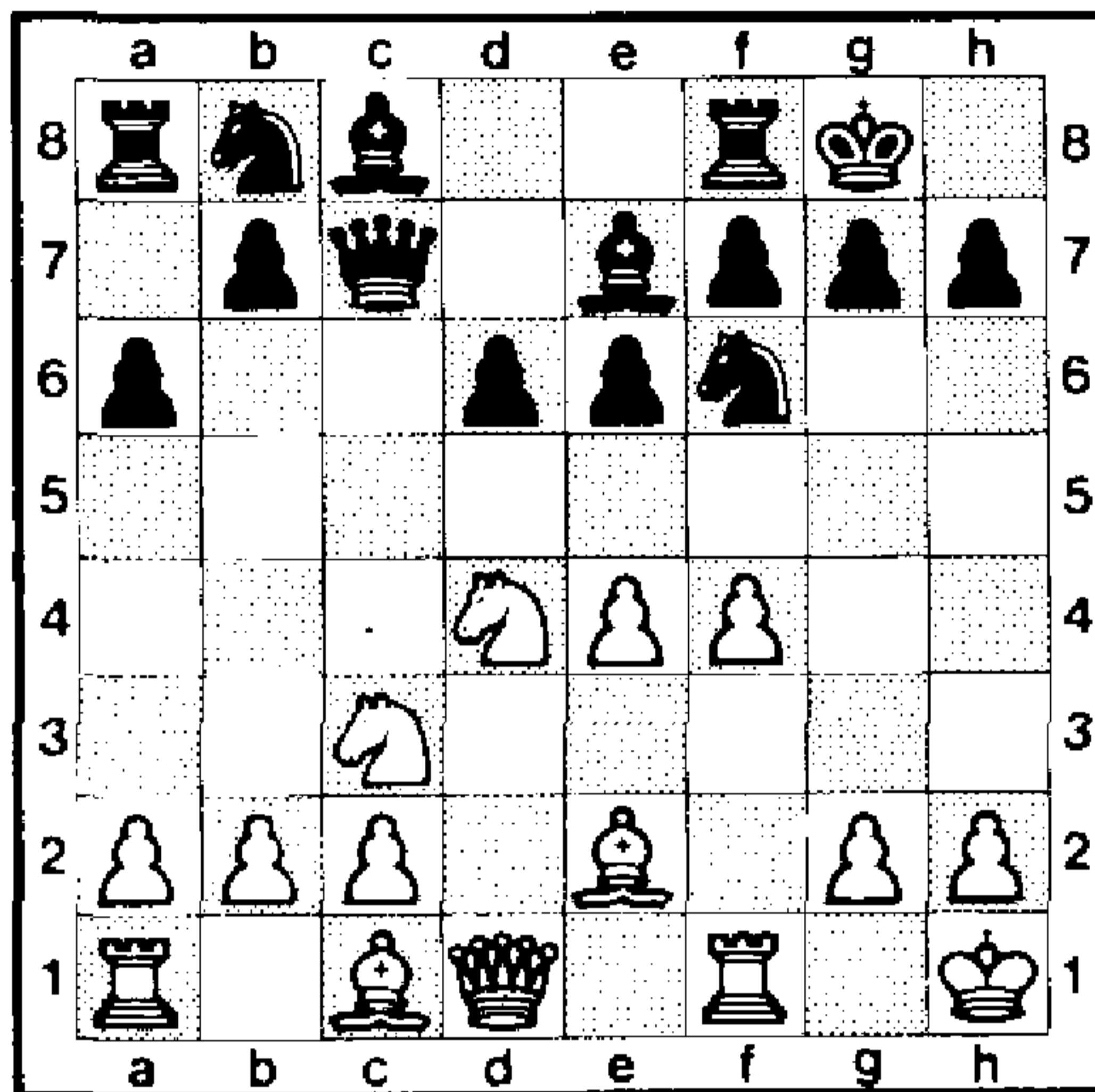


Once again, alternative moves for White in this position usually transpose rapidly into the game position e.g. 9. Be3 Nc6 10. Kh1 Qc7 or 9. Bf3 Qc7 10. Be3 Nc6. Although most players adopt the move of our model game, 9. Kh1, the nuances of the position are not always clear to the average player. Let us consider just one situation in which 9. Kh1 is superior to 9. Be3:

(i) 9. Be3 Nc6 10. Nxc6 bxc6 11. e5 dxe5 12. fxe5 Nd5 with approximate equality, since White's QB is under attack.

(ii) 9. Kh1 Nc6 10. Nxc6 bxc6 11. e5 dxe5 12. fxe5 Nd5 13. Ne4! followed by c4 with the better game.

9. Kh1 Qc7



10. a4

This popular continuation prevents immediate Q side expansion by Black (... b5). The latest evidence seems to be that, if White does not play this move, his chances of an opening advantage are minimal. For 10. Be3 b5 see the supplementary game Sokolov – Ivanchuk. White can also prevent ... b5 by the immediate 10. Bf3 (10. ... b5? 11. e5) when Black does best to play the universal move 10. ... Nc6 11. a4 (11. Be3 Na5 and ... Nc4) transposing to the present game. At one time 10. Qe1 was very popular, but after it became clear that 10. ... b5 11. Bf3 Bb7 12. e5 Ne8! was quite good for Black, both theoreticians and practitioners reverted to the move adopted by Beliavsky in this game.

10. . . . Re8

Kasparov's speciality which retains the flexibility of retreating the bishop to f8 or

the knight to d7 (if White advances his 'g' pawn to g5) e.g. 11. g4 b6 12. g5 Nfd7 13. Bf3 (13. f5 Bf8) 13. . . . Bb7 and Black is two tempi ahead of our model game (Kasparov's moves with his QB to d7, c8 and b7). If then 14. f5 Bf8 a black knight will settle on e5.

11. Be3 Nc6
12. Qd2 Bd7

Planning to post this bishop on c6 in lines such as 13. Rad1 Nxd4 14. Bxd4 e5 15. Be3 Bc6 16. Bf3 (not 16. Nd5? Nxd5 17. exd5 Bxa4) 16. . . . b5 when Black becomes active on the Q side. This is why White does not allow the exchange of knights.

13. Nb3

Threatening 14. a5 blockading the Q side which Kasparov quickly prevents.

13. . . . b6
14. Bf3

Also possible is 14. g4 Bc8 15. g5 Nd7 with a similar position to the game.

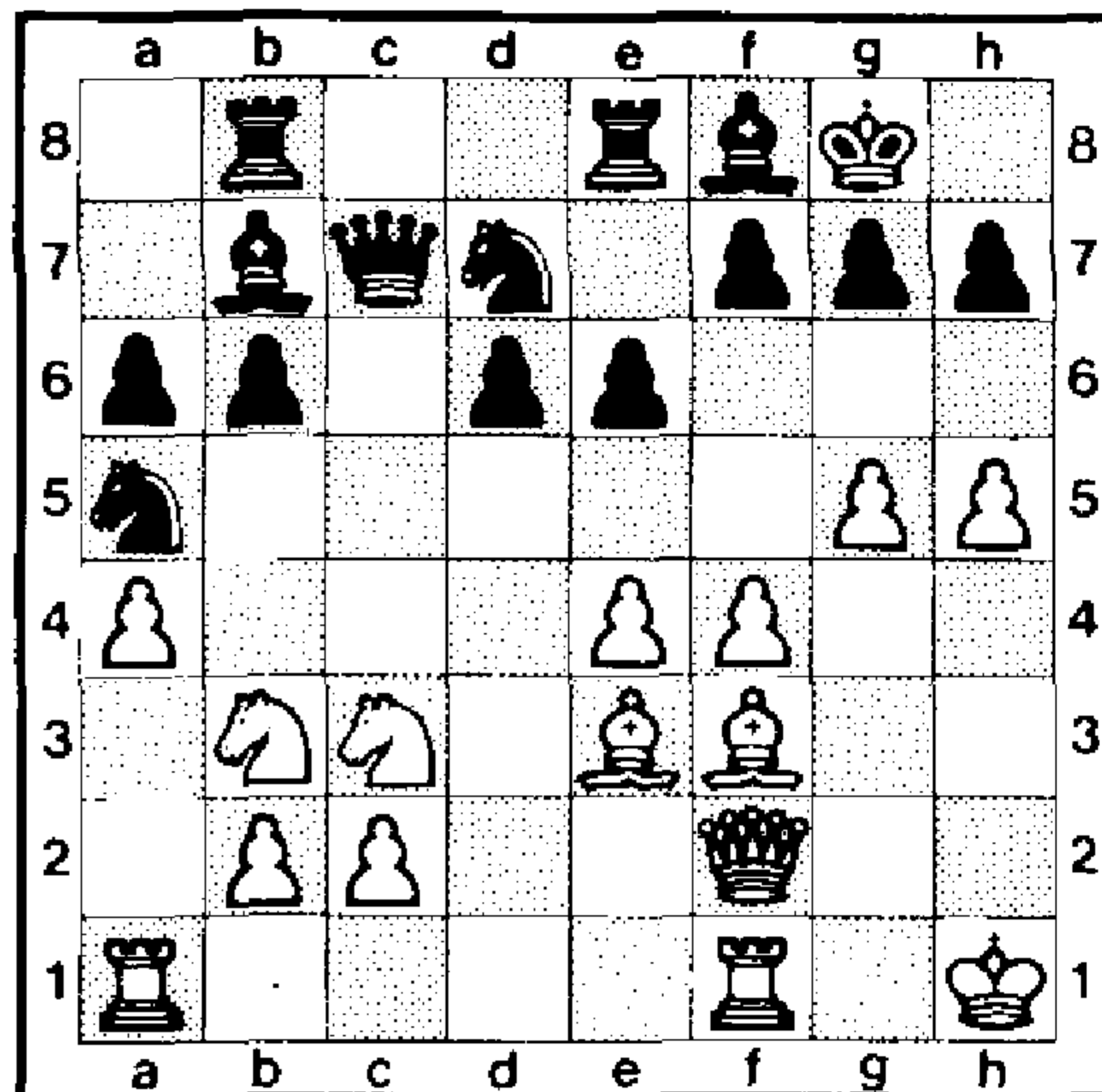
14. . . . Rab8
15. g4 Bc8
16. g5 Nd7
17. Qf2 Bf8

Kasparov used this plan for the first time in the famous twenty-fourth game of his World Championship match against Karpov which gave him the title. The latter continued here 18. Bg2 (see Supplementary Material).

18. h4

White launches a K side attack. The alternative 18. f5 is bad in view of 18. . . . Nde5 (intending to attack along the a8-h1 diagonal after . . . Nxf3, . . . Bb7 and . . . exf5) 19. Be2 (19. Bg2 Ng4 20. Qe2 Nxe3 21. Qxe3 Ne5 and . . . Nc4 is good for Black) 19. . . . Nb4 20. Rac1 Bb7 with the initiative (plan: . . . exf5 and . . . Nc4).

18. . . . Bb7
19. h5 Na5!

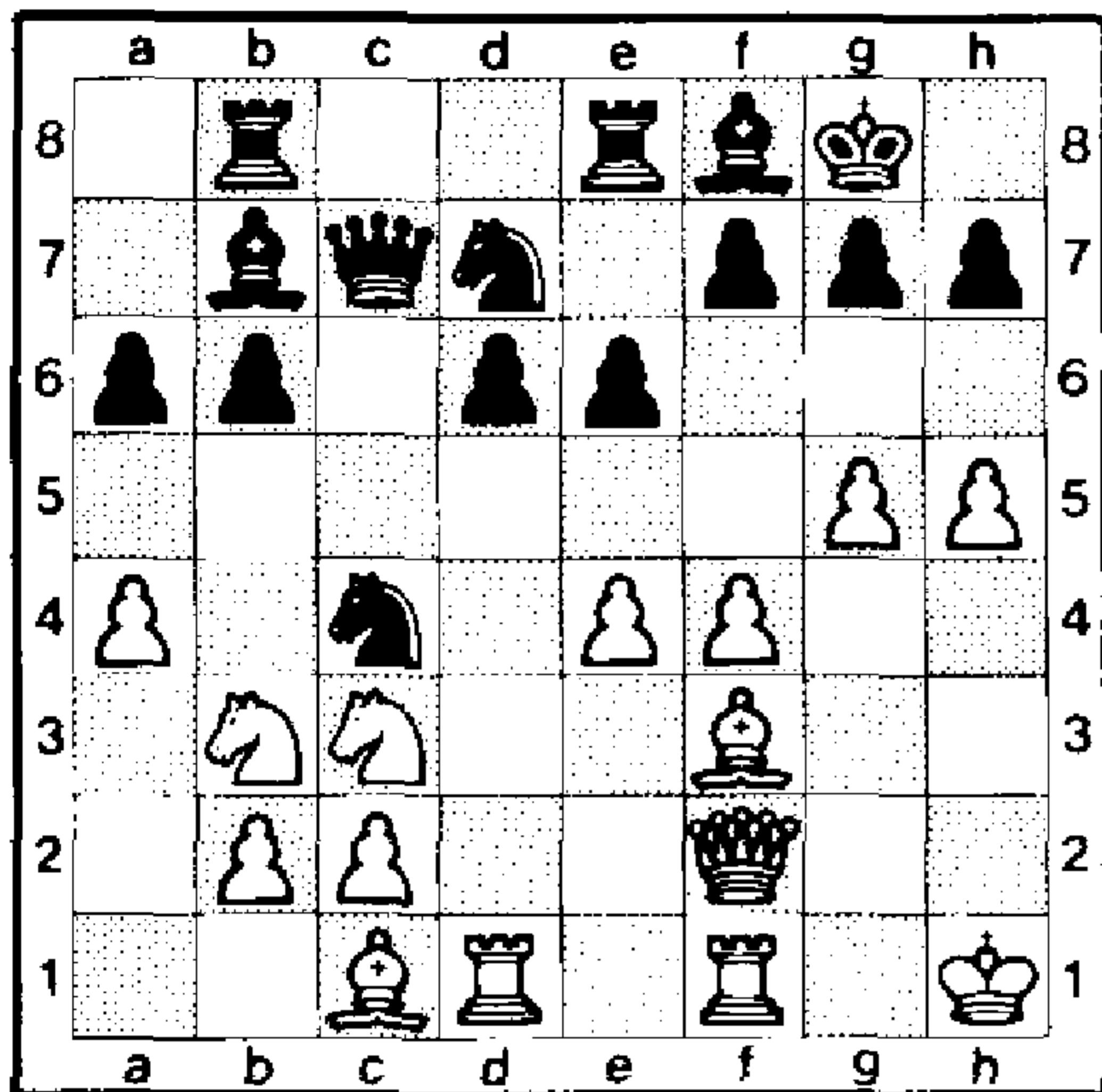


Very strongly played. White can hardly accept the proffered pawn e.g. 20. Bxb6 Nxb6 21. Nxa5 Ba8! (threatening . . . d5 followed by . . . Bb4) 22 Nb3 Nc4 23. Nd1 (23. Rab1 Nxb2 24. Rxb2 Qxc3) 23. . . . e5! 24. f5 (after 24 fxe5 Rxe5 attacks the e4 and g5 pawns) 24. . . . d5! and now:
(i) 25. exd5? e4 26. Bg2 e3 27. Qe2 Qg3! 28. Rf3 (28. Qxc4? Bd6) 28. . . . Qxg5 29. Rh3 (29. Qxc4? e2 30. Ne3 e1(Q)+ 31. Rxe1 Qh4+ 32. Rh3 Qxe1+ etc.) 29. . . . Nd6 followed by . . . Nxf5 with advantage for Black.
(ii) 25. Qg2 Rb4! (looking for 26. . . . dxe4 27. Bxe4 Ne3! 28. Nxe3 Bxe4) 26. exd5 Nd6 with many threats (. . . Nxf5/ . . . Rh4+/ . . . e4 followed by . . . e2 and if ever Be2 the c2 pawn hangs).

Nor is 20. Nxa5 bxa5 good for White in view of the great pressure down the 'b' and 'c' files e.g. 21. Rg1 Ba8 22. Rab1 Rb4 followed by . . . Reb8.

20. Rad1 Nc4
21. Bc1

The highly instructive opening phase is over and Kasparov has built up a typical Sicilian position in which he stands very



well. Later analysis reveals that he should now play 21... Ba8! followed by ... b5, so we could stop here with regard to the main purpose of this volume. However, the author has no intention of denying the reader the remainder of the game, even though both players, already in great time-trouble at this point, were hardly enamoured with their subsequent play. Perhaps Kasparov's final move in the game is some compensation.

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| 21. ... | Rbc8?! |
| 22. Bg2 | Nc5 |
| 23. Nd4 | d5?! |
| 24. e5 | Ne4 |
| 25. Nxe4 | dxe4 |
| 26. b3? | |

After 26. Qe2 White would pick up the e4 pawn, with Black's freer play giving him insufficient compensation. In the *post-mortem* Kasparov finally had to admit this fact. Black's break in logic occurred on move 21 and Beliavsky's corresponding blunder in some way evens out matters ...

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 26. ... | Na5 |
|---------|------------|

It is already too late for 27. Qe2 because of 27. ... Bc5 28. Bxe4 Bxd4 29. Rxd4

Bxe4 followed by 30. ... Qxc2.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 27. Be3 | g6 |
| 28. Rd2 | Red8 |
| 29. hxg6 | hxg6 |
| 30. Qh4 | Nc6 |
| 31. c3 | |

31. Bxe4? Nxd4 winning material.

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 31. ... | Ne7 |
| 32. c4 | Rxd4! |
| 33. Bxd4 | Nf5 |
| 34. Qh3? | |

White's game now goes downhill. After 34. Qf2 Nxd4 35. Rxd4! (not 35. Qxd4? Bc5 followed by ... Kg7 and ... Rh8+) 35. ... Bc5 Black wins back the exchange but the situation is unclear. Perhaps after 34. Qf2 he would do best to play 34. ... Bb4 followed by ... Kg7 and ... Rh8+

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 34. ... | Kg7 |
|---------|------------|

Threatening ... Bb4 and ... Rh8.

- | | |
|---------|-----------|
| 35. Qc3 | a5 |
| 36. c5 | |

Otherwise ... Bb4 is very unpleasant.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 36. ... | Nxd4 |
| 37. Rxd4 | Bxc5 |
| 38. Rc4 | Rh8+ |
| 39. Bh3 | e3+ |
| 40. Kh2 | Qc6 |

He could also play 40. ... Ba6, but the exchange will not run away, since mate is now the threat.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 41. Qc2 | Ba6 |
| 42. Kg3 | Bxc4 |
| 43. Qxc4 | Qd7 |
| 44. Bg4 | Qd2 |
| 45. Be2 | Rd8 |
| 46. Rc1 | |

After 46. Rd1 Black has a pretty queen sacrifice with 46. ... Qxd1 47. Bxd1 Rxd1 48. Kf3 Rd2 49. Qc1 (49. Kg4 e2 50. Qc1 Bb4 followed by ... Ra2 and ... e1(Q)) 49. ... Rf2+ 50. Kg3 Ra2 followed by ... e2 and ... Bb4.



The Soviet grandmaster Alexander Beliavsky, despite being a leading player for a number of years, has a catastrophic personal record against Kasparov.

46. . . . Rd4
47. Qc2 Qb4
48. Qc3

White leaves the f4 pawn to its fate, since 48. Rf1 Rd2 49. Qc4 Rb2 (or 49. . . . Qa3) offers him very little hope of survival.

48. . . . Rxf4
49. Qxb4 Rxb4
50. Bc4

Beliavsky is counting on the opposite-coloured bishops plus the fact that the black rook cannot quickly come into play. Let us see what happens!

50. . . . Be7!
51. Kf3

If he defends the pawn by 51. Kf4 Black has 51. . . . b5 52. axb5 a4 53. bxa4 e2 54. Ke3 Rxc4! winning.

51. . . . Bxg5
52. Ra1

52. Rc2 Kf8 transposes to the game.

52. . . . Kf8
53. Ra2 Ke7

54. Rg2 e2!
55. Rxe2

After 55. Kxe2 (55. Bxe2 Rxb3+) 55. . . . Bf4 wins the e5 pawn, thus creating three powerful connected passed pawns. Black's plan is then very simple: he plays his bishop to c5, sacrifices the exchange by . . . Rxc4 and proceeds to advance his three pawns supported by the king.

55. . . . b5
56. Bxb5

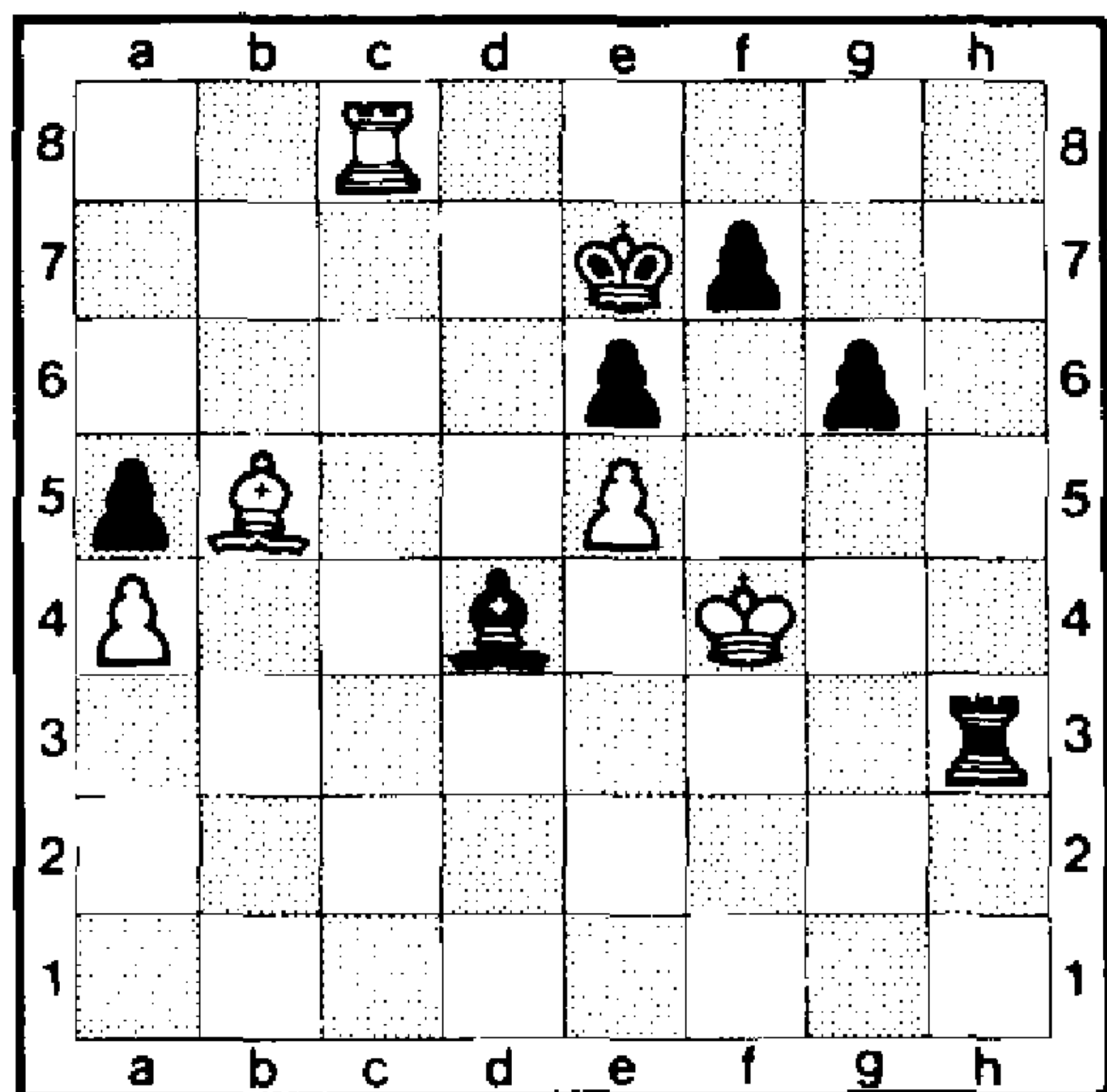
If 56. axb5 a4 57. Rb2 a3 58. Ra2 Bc1 followed by 58. . . . Bb2 when, although both rooks are in a tragi-comic situation, Black's K side pawns will prove the decisive factor.

56. . . . Rxb3+
57. Kg4 Be3
58. Rc2 Bd4
59. Kf4 Rh3

The e5 pawn is finally lost. The threat is simply . . . Rh4+ and after 60. Re2 Rh5 followed by . . . Rf5+ still wins the

pawn. So White produces the threat of mate in one move, only to find that Kasparov has catered for it in a most diabolical fashion.

60. Rc8



60. . . . Rh4+

61. Kg3 Rh8!!

1-0

After 62. Rxh8 Bxe5+ 63. Kf3 Bxh8 it is all over.

Supplementary Material

M Korzubov – G Kasparov

(Moscow, 1977)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 e6 6. Be3 a6 7. f4 b5 8. a3 Bb7 9. Qf3 Nbd7 10. Bd3 Rc8 11. 0-0 Be7 12. Rae1 0-0 13. Qg3 Rxc3 14. bxc3 Nxe4 15. Bxe4 Bxe4 16. f5 Bh4 17. Qxd6 exf5 18. Rd1 Qe8 19. Bf4 Be7 20. Qxa6 Nc5 21. Qxb5 Qa8 22. Rd2 Qxa3 23. Nb3 Ne6 24. Be3 g6 25. Qe5 Rc8 26. Rd7 Bd8 27. Nc5 Bg5 28. Nxe6 Bxe3+ 29. Kh1 Bh6 30. Qf6 Rf8 31. Nxf8 Qa2 32. Qe7 Qc4 33. Rfd1 Be3 34. Qh4 Bxg2+ 35. Kxg2 Qxh4 **0-1**

L Yudasin – G Kasparov

(USSR Championship, 1988)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 d6 6. f4 a6 7. Be3 b5 8. Qf3 Bb7 9. Bd3 Nbd7 10. a3 Rc8 11. 0-0 Be7 12. Rae1 0-0 13. Qh3 Nc5 14. Bf2 Nfd7 15. Kh1 Bf6 16. Rd1 Re8 17. Bg1 g6 18. Nde2 Bg7 19. f5 Qe7 20. Bd4 Nf6 21. Qg3 e5 22. fxg6 hxg6 23. Be3 Nfxe4 24. Bxe4 Nxe4 25. Nxe4 Bxe4 26. Nc3 Bb7 27. h4 Rc4 28. Bg5 Qe6 29. Rd2 Rg4 30. Qd3 f6 **0-1**

O Sarapu – G Kasparov

(Lucerne Olympiad, 1982)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 a6 6. Bc4 e6 7. Bb3 Be7 8. 0-0 b5 9. a3 0-0 10. Be3 Bb7 11. f3 Nc6 12. Nxc6 Bxc6 13. Qd2 Nd7 14. Rfd1 Qc7 15. Qf2 Rfe8 16. Ne2 Ne5 17. Nd4 Bd7 18. c3 Nc4 19. Bc1 Bf8 20. h3 Qb7 21. Bc2 Rac8 22. Kh1 g6 23. Nb3 Bg7 24. Nd2 d5 25. Nxc4 bxc4 26. Rb1 Bc6 27. exd5 Bxd5 28. Be3 Red8 29. Bb6 Rd7 30. Ba4 Bc6 31. Rxd7 Bxd7 32. Bc2 Bc6 33. Be3 Bd5 34. Kg1 Qb8 35. Qe2 Rd8 36. Bf2 h5 37. Qe1 Rd7 38. Ba4 Rb7 39. Qd2 Be5 40. Bd1 Bh2+ 41. Kf1 Bd6 42. Bd4 Bxa3 43. Ra1 Bd6 44. Rxa6 Bf4 45. Be3 Bxe3 46. Qxe3 Rxb2 **0-1**

W Ceskovsky – G Kasparov

(USSR Championship, 1981)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nc6 5. Nc3 d6 6. g3 Nf6 7. Bg2 Bd7 8. 0-0 Be7 9. a4 0-0 10. Nce2 Rc8 11. c3 a6 12. h3 Qc7 13. g4 (13 Be3 Na5 14. b3 b5 with counterplay) 13. . . . d5 14. exd5 Nxd5 15. Bxd5 exd5 16. Nf4 Bc5 17. Nb3 (17. Be3 Bxd4 18. cxd4 Qd6) 17. . . . Ba7 18. Qxd5 Be6 19. Nxe6 fxe6 20. Qe4 (20. Qxe6+ Kh8 21. Be3 Bb8 22. f4 Rce8 winning) 20. . . . Rxf2 21. Rxf2 Qg3+ 22. Qg2 (22 Kh1 Qxh3+ 23. Kg1 Bxf2+ 24.

Kxf2 Rf8+ 25. Ke2 Qf1+ 26. Ke3 Qe1+ 27. Kd3 Rd8+ 28. Nd4 Ne5+) 22. . . . Bxf2+ 23. Kf1 Qe5 24. Bf4 Qxf4 25. Qxf2 Qc4+ **0-1**

A Sokolov – W Ivanchuk

(Linares, 1989)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 Nc6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 e6 5. Nc3 Qc7 6. Be2 a6 7. 0-0 Nf6 8. Be3 Be7 9. f4 d6 10. Kh1 0-0 11. Qe1 Nxd4 12. Bxd4 b5 13. e5 dxe5 14. Bxe5 Qb6 15. Qg3 Bb7 16. f5 exf5 17. Rxf5 g6 18. Raf1 Ne4 19. Nxe4 Bxe4 20. R5f2 Qe6 21. b3 Bxc2 22. Bf3 Rac8 23. Bb7 Rc5 24. Bd4 Bd6 25. Qe3 Qxe3 26. Bxe3 Rc7 27. Bxa6 Bd3 28. Rd1 Re8 29. Bh6 Rce7 30. Bd2 Ra7 31. Bc3 Rxa6 32. Rxd3 b4 33. Bd2 Rxa2 34. Rf1 Re2 35. Rd1 Be7 36. g4 h6 37. Bf4 Bf6 38. R3d2 Raxd2 39. Rxd2 Re4 40. Bxh6 Rxc4 41. Be3 Re4 42. Rd3 Bc3 43. Kg2 Re8 44. Kf3 Ra8 45. h3 f6 46. Bc5 Ra5 47. Bd6 Ra2 48. Ke4 Rb2 49. Kd5 Rxb3 50. Bxb4 Rxb4 51. Rxc3 Kg7 52. Rc7+ Kh6 53. Ke6 Rb6+ 54. Kd5 Rb3 55. h4 Re3 56. Rc8 f5 **0-1**

A Karpov – G Kasparov

(Twenty-fourth Game, World Championship, 1985)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 a6 6. Be2 e6 7. 0-0 Be7 8. f4 0-0 9. Kh1 Qc7 10. a4 Nc6 11. Be3 Re8 12. Bf3 Rb8 13. Qd2 Bd7 14. Nb3 b6 15. g4 Bc8 16. g5 Nd7 17. Qf2 Bf8 18. Bg2 Bb7 19. Rad1 g6 20. Bc1 Rbc8 21. Rd3 Nb4 22. Rh3 Bg7 23. Be3 Re7 24. Kg1 Rce8 25. Rd1 f5 26. gxf6 Nxf6 27. Rg3 Rf7 28. Bxb6 Qb8 29. Be3 Nh5 30. Rg4 Nf6 31. Rh4 g5 32. fxg5 Ng4 33. Qd2 Nxe3 34. Qxe3 Nxc2 35. Qb6 Ba8 36. Rxd6 Rb7 37. Qxa6 Rxb3 38. Rxe6 Rxb2 39. Qc4 Kh8 40. e5 Qa7+ 41. Kh1 Bxg2+ 42. Kxg2 Nd4+ **0-1**

B The Keres Attack

The Estonian, Paul Keres (1916–1975), belongs to the greatest personalities of chess history. From Nottingham 1936 (a tournament in which the elite of the chess world took part and which Keres won together with the American Reuben Fine) until his death, Keres was one of the best players in the world. He also enriched the game with a wealth of opening ideas, including the 6. g4 attack which has given Scheveningen players so much trouble over the years.

L Ljubojevic – G Kasparov

(World Cup, Belfort, 1988)

1. e4 c5
2. Nf3 d6

Kasparov varies the order in which he plays . . . e6 and . . . d6 but usually favours the former.

3. d4 cxd4
4. Nxd4 Nf6
5. Nc3 e6
6. g4

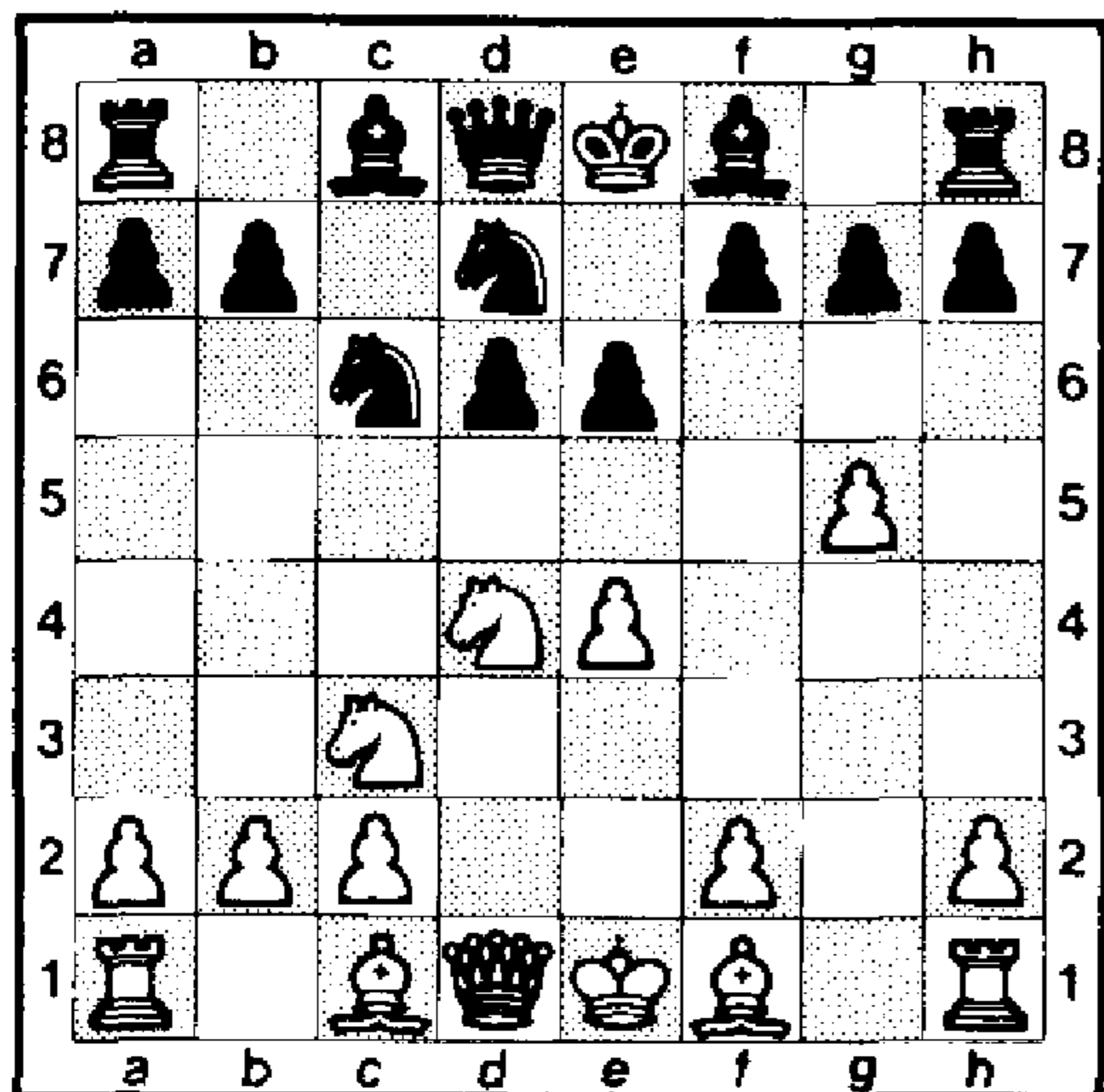
White's plan is to gain space on the K side by advancing this pawn to g5. Should Black castle on this wing, then the advanced pawn can form the basis of a pawn storm against the king by h4-h5 and g6. Black can temporarily hold back g5 by playing 6. . . . h6 but this weakening of his K side pawns practically excludes the possibility of castling short and, at all events, White can always prepare g5 by Rg1 and h4.

6. . . . Nc6

In his book *Sicilian with . . . e6/ . . . d6* (1983), Kasparov gives this move as best.

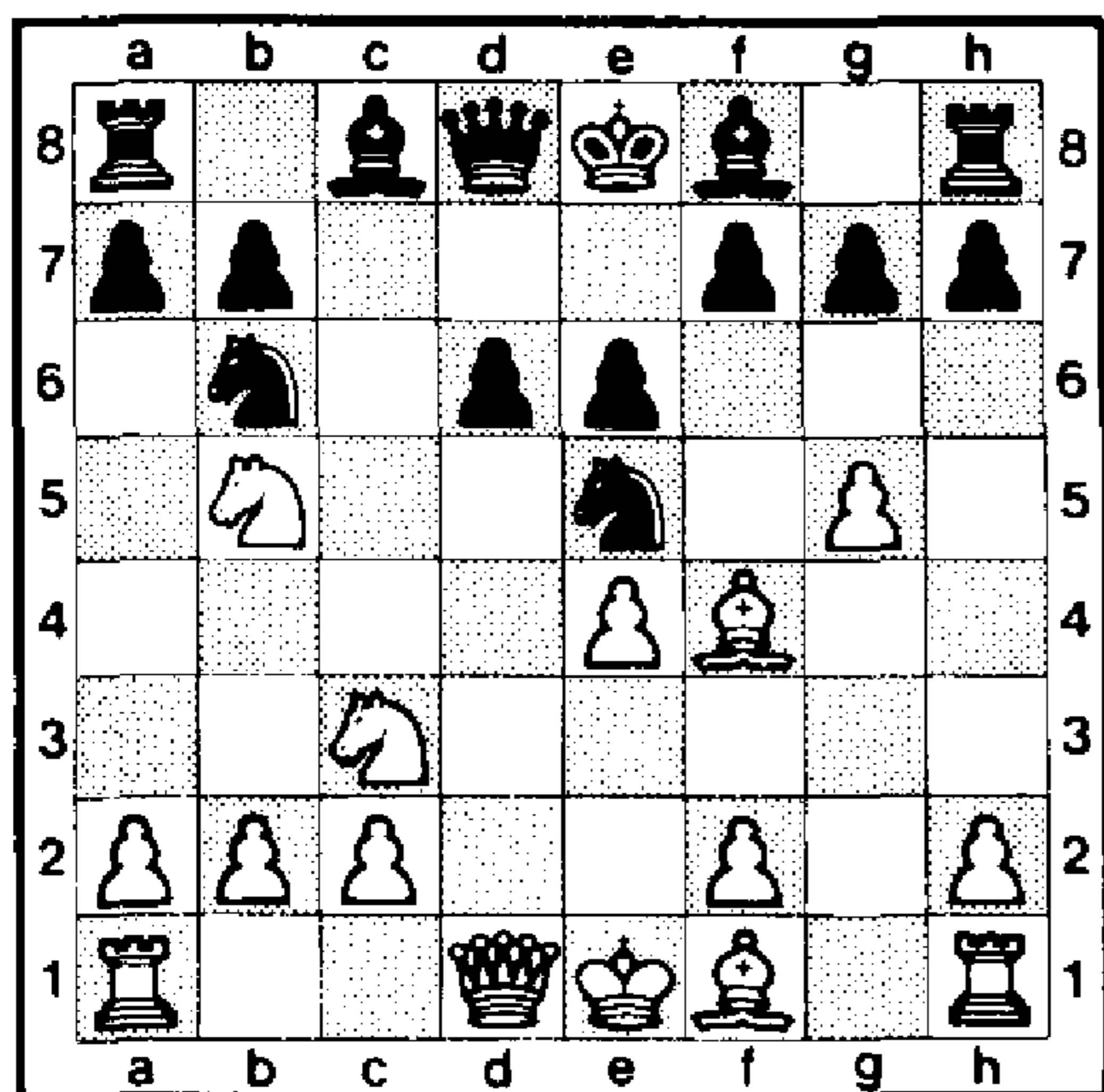
7. g5 Nd7

Now an attack on the d6 pawn by **8. Ndb5** would yield White nothing.



Kasparov gives the following variations:
 8. . . . Nb6 9. Bf4 (otherwise 9. . . . a6 would gain time by forcing the knight to retreat) 9. . . . Ne5 giving us the following possibilities (see diagram below):

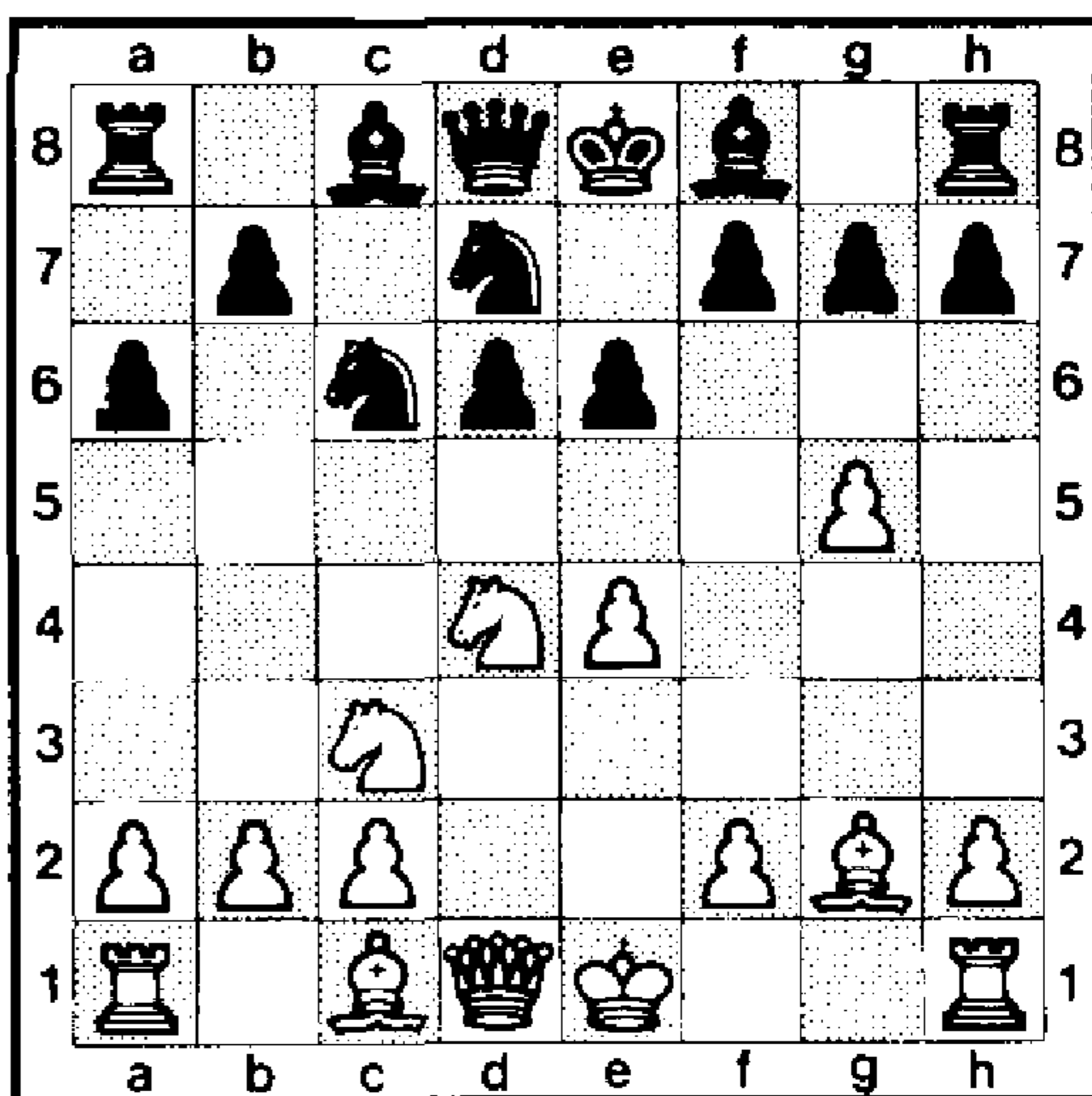
- (i) 10. Bxe5 dxe5 11. Qxd8+ Kx8 12. 0-0-0+ Bd7 planning . . . Bc5 and . . . Ke7 with good play on the black squares e.g. 13. Nd6 Bxd6 14. Rxd6



Kc7 15. Rd2 h6 16. gxh6 Rxh6 followed by . . . Rah8 with good chances in the ending.

- (ii) 10. Qh5 contains some venom in the line 10. . . . a6? 11. 0-0-0! axb5 12. Bxe5 but Black can play instead 10. . . . Ng6! 11. Bg3 a6 12. Nd4 d5 (threatening . . . e5 and . . . d4) with good counterplay.

Another idea is 8. Bg2 preventing a possible . . . d5 counter by Black, but Kasparov is optimistic about the defensive possibilities after 8. . . . a6 e.g.

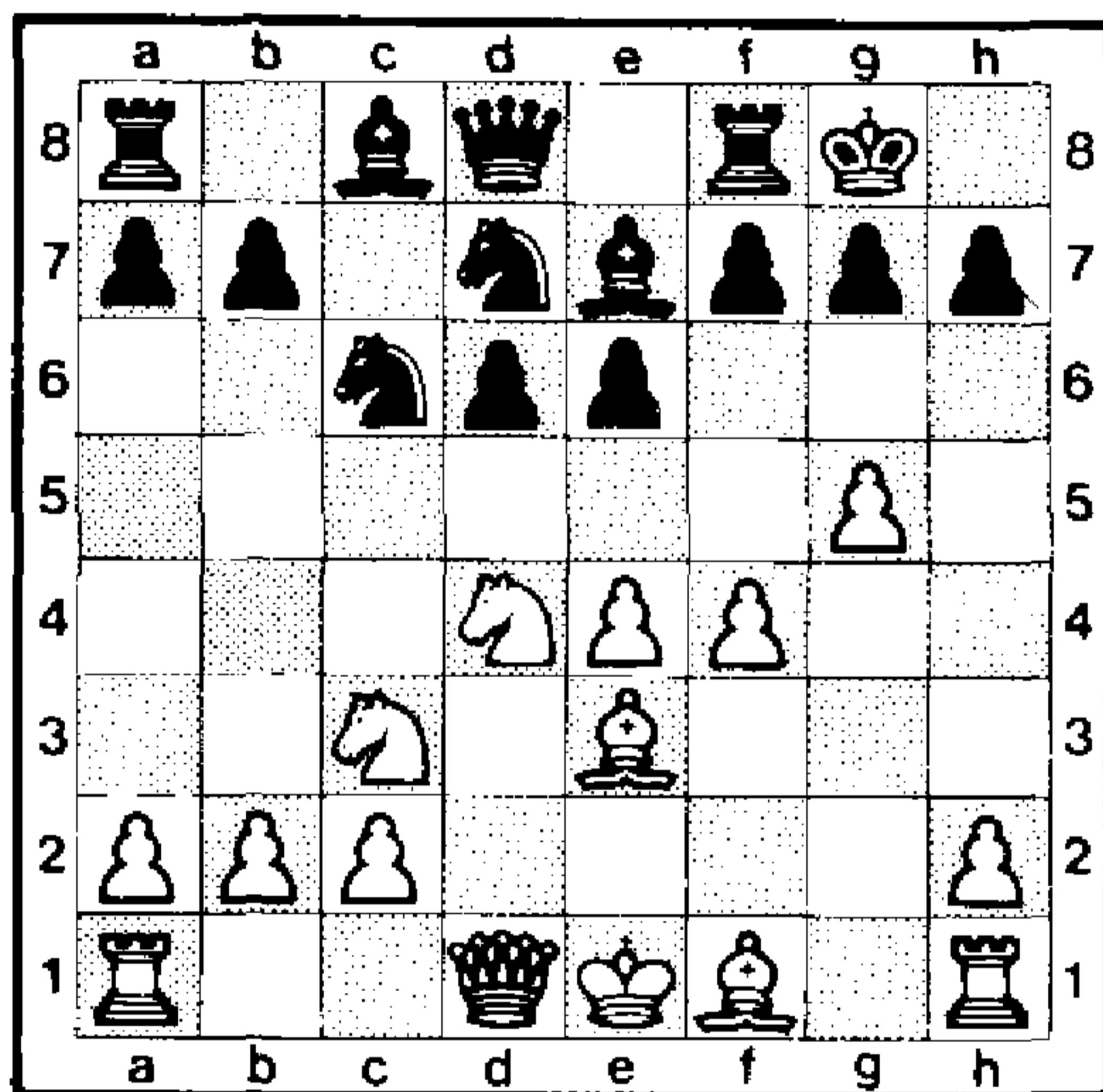


- (i) 9. Be3 Nde5 10. 0-0 h6 11. gxh6 Qh4 12. Nf3 Nxf3+ 13. Qxf3 g6 14. Rad1 Bxh6 (Ubilava – Anikaev, USSR 1976) and after 15. Bxh6 Qxh6 16. h3 Ke7 followed by . . . Bd7 and . . . Rad8 Black is fine.
- (ii) 9. h4 Be7 10. f4 0-0 11. Be3 (11. f5 here and in similar situations allows 11. . . . Nde5) 11. . . . Re8! (again this Kasparov regrouping removes the sting from the pawn advance) 12.

Qd2 (planning to castle long; if 12. 0-0 then 12. . . . b5 gives Black excellent counterplay after both 13. f5 Nde5 followed by . . . Bd7 and . . . Rc8 and 13. a3 Bb7 and 14. . . . Rc8) 12. . . . Nxd4 13. Bxd4 b5 14. a3 (14. e5 d5) 14. . . . Bb7 and after . . . Qa5 and . . . Rac8 Black has enough play against White's king.

(iii) 9. f4 Be7 10. h4 transposing to the 9. h4 variation.

Finally, White can try 8. Be3 when 8. . . . Be7 9. h4 0-0 gives us two main lines:



- (i) 10. Qd2 Nde5! (intending . . . Nc4) 11. Qe2 Na5. In Akopian – Shabalov White allowed the knight to go to c4 when Black stood well, whilst in Kontronias – Astrom White prevented this by 12. b3 (see Supplementary Material).
- (ii) 10. Qe2 anticipates the above knight manoeuvre but in Quillan – Buckley Black still managed to organize good counterplay.

Let us now return to our model game position in diagram 70.

8. Rg1

In many games the transposition 8. Be3 Be7 9. Rg1 occurs.

8. . . . Be7

9. Be3 0-0

10. Qd2

White wishes to castle long and begin a pawn storm on the K side.

10. . . . a6

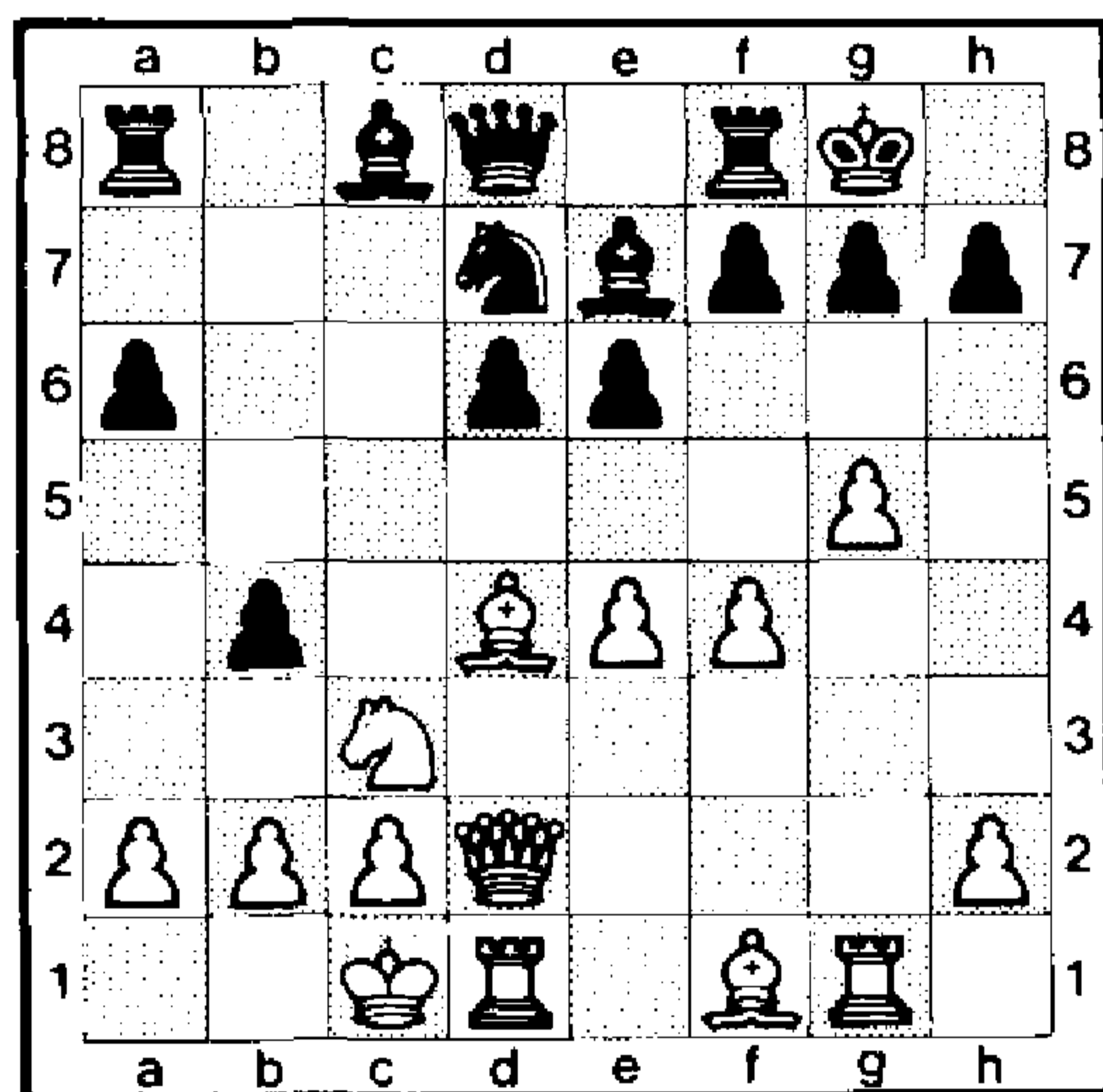
11. 0-0-0 Nxd4

12. Bxd4 b5

13. f4

The cautious 13. a3 is answered by 13. . . . Rb8 14. Rg3 Re8! 15. f4 Bf8 16. f5 Qa5 when the break by . . . b4 gives Black good chances, according to Kasparov.

13. . . . b4



Where should the knight go now? After 14. Na4 Kasparov gives in the above-mentioned book 14. . . . Qa5 15. b3 Bb7 16. Bg2 e5 17. Be3 exf4 18. Bxf4 Ne5 followed by . . . Rc8 with good play for Black.

14. Ne2 Qa5

15. Kb1 e5
16. Bf2 Nc5

The standard manoeuvre 16. . . . exf4 to seize e5 for the knight is not good here because White's knight can recapture and reach d5.

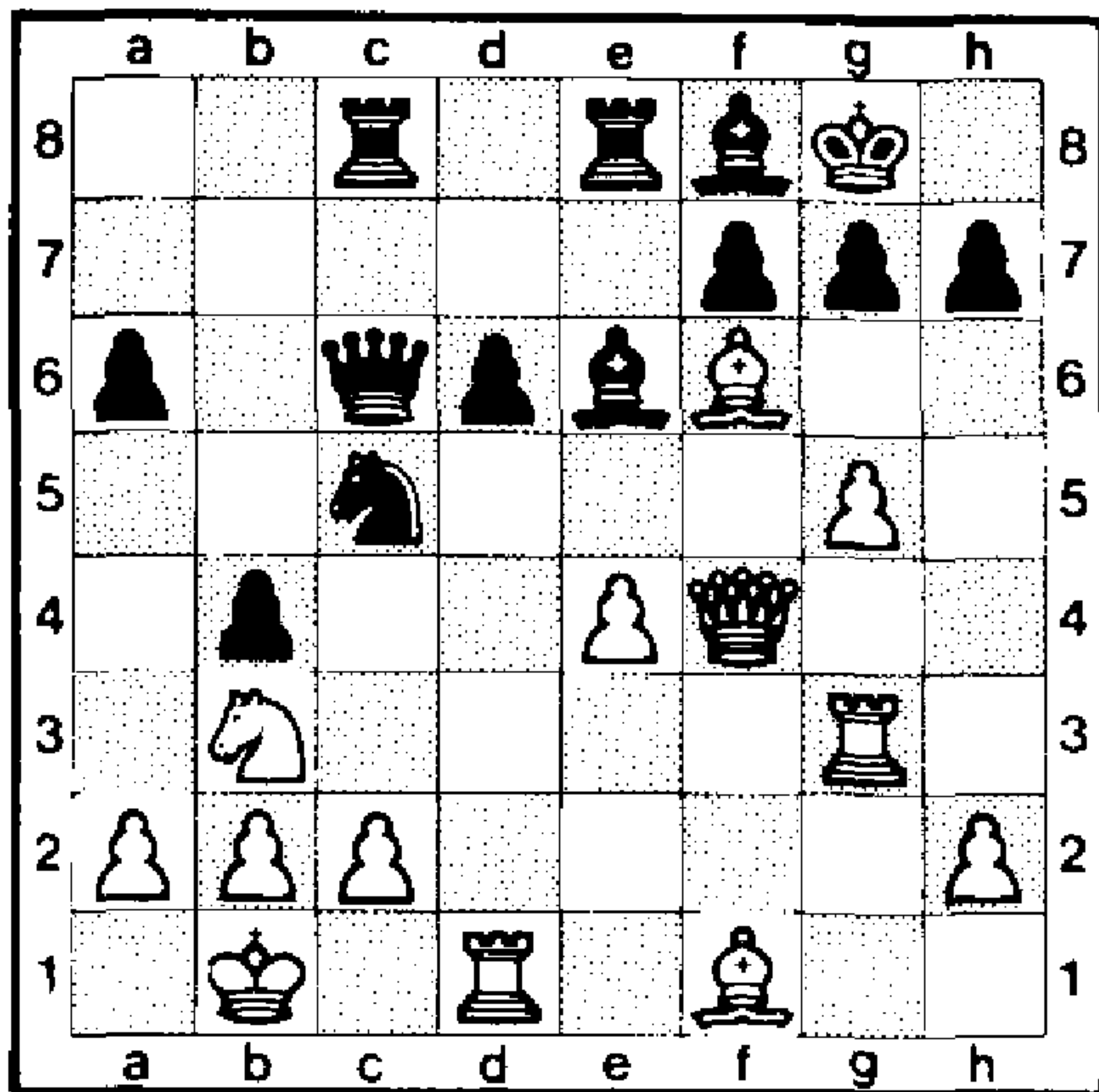
17. Qe3 Be6
18. Nc1

Ljubojevic was not keen on 18. b3 Qb6 followed by . . . a5-a4.

18. . . . exf4
19. Qxf4 Rac8
20. Bd4 Rfe8
21. Nb3 Qa4
22. Bf6 Bf8

Not of course 22. . . . gxf6?? 23. gxf6+ winning.

23. Rg3 Qc6



The opening stage is over and Black has obtained a good position. His threat against the e4 pawn cannot be countered by 24. Bg2?? in view of the weakness of c2 (24. . . . Nxb3), so White is forced to exchange on c5.

24. Nxc5 dxc5
25. Be5 c4

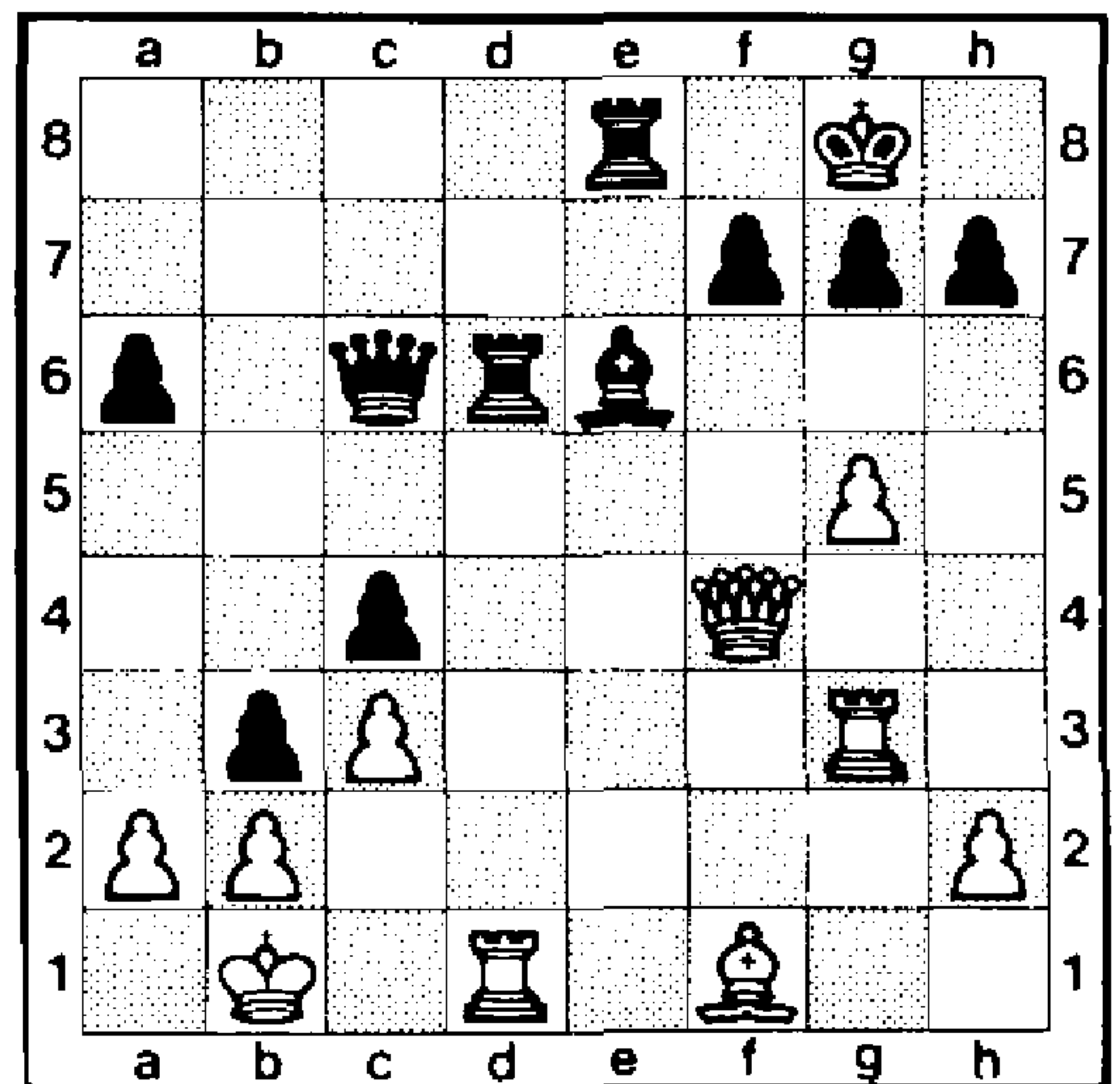
26. Bd6 b3!
27. c3?

27. axb3 cxb3 28. c3 (28. cxb3?? Qc2+) fails to 28. . . . Qa4 and . . . Qa2+ but after 27. Rc3 the position would still be unclear. Kasparov's next move forces White to open up the vital b1-h7 diagonal.

27. . . . Rcd8!
28. e5 Bxd6
29. exd6

After 29. Rxd6 Rxd6 30. exd6 Bf5+! 31. Kc1 bxa2 wins at once.

29. . . . Rxd6!!



Like lightning out of a clear sky, Kasparov produces a rook sacrifice which cannot be accepted by the rook or queen:

- (i) 30. Rxd6 Bf5+ 31. Kc1 (31. Qxf5 allows mate in two moves) 30. . . . bxa2! 32. Rxc6 a1(Q)+ 33. Kd2 Qe1 mate!
- (ii) 30. Qxd6 Bf5+ 31. Kc1 (31. Ka1 Qxd6 and White cannot recapture because of the back rank mate; 31. Bd3 or 31. Rgd3 simply lose the queen) 31. . . . bxa2! 32. Qa3 (32. Qxc6 a1(Q)+ 33. Kd2 Qxb2 mate is a



Garry Kasparov in conversation with his trainer Alexander Nikitin who is a leading expert in the Sicilian Defence. The photograph was taken at the 1986 Dubai Olympiad.

self-block!) 32. . . . Qe4 33. Bd3 (otherwise 33. . . . Qc2 mate or 33. Rd2 Qb1 mate, another self-block) 33. . . . Qf4+ 34. Rd2 (34. Kc2 Re2+ followed by mate) 34. . . . cxd3 35. Rgxd3 (35. Qxa2 Re1 mate) 35. . . . Bxd3 and the curtain falls.

This was the most beautiful combination at Belfort, a tournament which Kasparov won a point ahead of Karpov.

The rest of the game is something of an anti-climax:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 30. Rc1 | Qc5 |
| 31. Ka1 | Red8 |
| 32. Re3 | Rd1 |
| 33. Re1 | Rxe1 |
| 34. Rxe1 | Qa5 |
| 35. a3 | Qd5 |
| 36. Be2 | g6 |
| 37. h4 | Qd2 |
| 38. Qf1 | Bh3 |
| 39. Qg1 | Re8 |

40. Qf2 Bg4 wins material **0-1**

Supplementary Material
V Kotronias – R Astrom

(Rilton Cup, Stockholm 1988)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6 5. Nc3 d6 6. g4 Nc6 7. g5 Nd7 8. Be3 Be7 9. h4 a6 10. Qd2 Nde5 11. Be2 Na5 12. b3 0-0 13. f4 Nec6 14. Nf3 Re8 15. a3 b5 16. h5 Bf8 17. g6 fxg6 18. hxg6 h6 19. f5 d5 20. Bg5 hxg5 21. Bd3 Bd6 22. e5 Bxe5 23. Nxe5 Nxe5 24. 0-0-0 Nf3 25. Qe3 Nh4 26. Qe2 Qf6 27. Nxd5 Nxb3+ 28. cxb3 Qa1+ 29. Kd2 Qb2+ 30. Bc2 Bb7 31. f6 Bxd5 32. f7+ Kf8 33. Rxh4 gxh4 34. fxe8(Q)+ Kxe8 35. Qf2 Qf6 36. Qc5 Qf4+ 37. Kc3 Qe5+ 38. Rd4 Kd7 39. Kb2 Rc8 40. Qb4 h3 41. Qd2 h2 42. Be4 Qxe4 43. Rxe4 h1(Q) 44. Rf4 Qg2 45. Rf7+ Kd6 46. Rf2 Qe4 47. Re2 Qxg6 48. Qa5 Qf6+ **0-1**

G Quillan – J Buckley

(British Championship 1987)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6
5. Nc3 d6 6. g4 Nc6 7. g5 Nd7 8. Be3
Be7 9. h4 0-0 10. Qe2 a6 11. 0-0-0 Nxd4
12. Bxd4 b5 13. Rd3 b4 14. Nd1 Bb7 15.
f4 Qa5 16. Kb1 e5 17. Bh3 f5 18. Nf2
exd4 19. exf5 Bxh1 20. Qxe7 Nc5 21. f6
Rf7 22. Qe2 Nxd3 23. Nxd3 Bd5 24. f5
gxf6 25. g6 Rc7 26. gxh7+ Kh8 27. Nf4
Qxa2+ 28. Kc1 Qa1+ 29. Kd2 Rxc2+ 30.
Kxc2 Rc8+ **0-1**

V Akopian – A Shabalov

(Vilnius, 1988)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6
5. Nc3 d6 6. g4 Nc6 7. g5 Nd7 8. Be3
Be7 9. h4 0-0 10. Qd2 Nde5 11. Be2 Na5
12. 0-0-0 Bd7 13. Nb3 Nac4 14. Bxc4
Nxc4 15. Qd4 b5 16. Nd2 Nxe3 17. fxe3
Qc7 18. Nf3 Rfc8 19. h5 Be8 20. h6 Bf8
21. Rd2 g6 22. Kb1 Qb7 23. Rh4 b4 24.
Nd1 a5 25. Qf6 a4 26. Nd4 e5 27. Ne2
Rab8 28. Nc1 Qc6 29. Qf2 Bd7 30. Ka1
Be6 31. Qg2 b3 32. Rh2 a3 33. axb3
Bxb3 34. Nxb3 Rxb3 35. c3 Qa4 36. Kb1
Ra8 37. Qe2 Qxe4+ 38. Qd3 axb2 39.
Nxb2 Qa4 40. Kc1 Qa1+ **0-1**

C The English Attack

The youngest child in the Sicilian family is the English Attack introduced into tournament practice in the eighties by the London grandmaster Dr John Nunn, a renowned player and theoretician, and immediately taken up enthusiastically by the leading English players Nigel Short and Murray Chandler. The new system was adopted by the rest of the world as soon as the excellent results of this trio were known.

The English Attack is a close relative of the Keres Attack, since in principle White

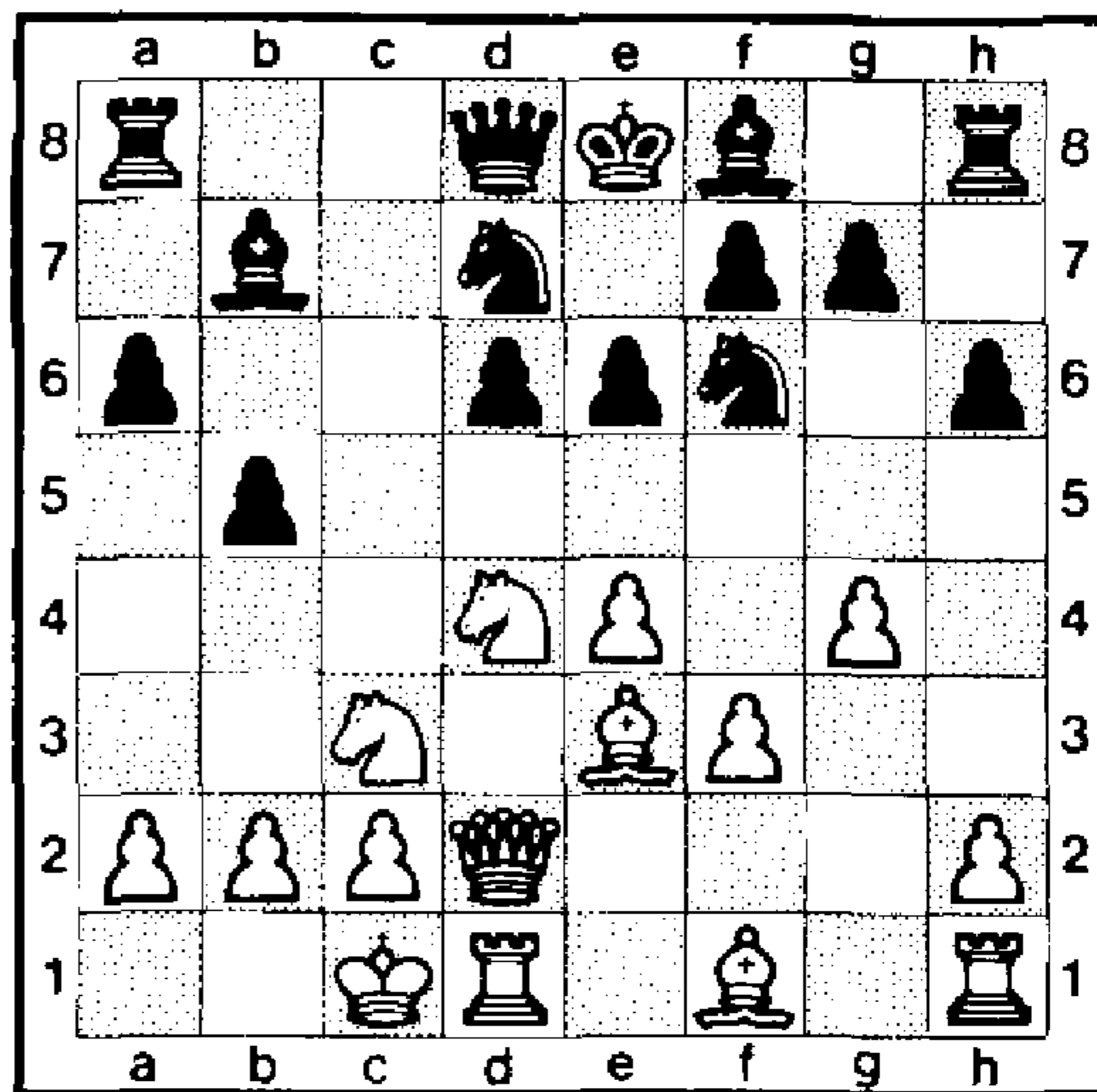
is following the same strategy of advancing his K side pawns, in particular g4-g5. The main difference lies in the preparatory move f3 strengthening the centre before developing with Be3, Qd2 and 0-0-0 and timing the advance of his 'g' pawn. Black's strategy, as always in such cases, is to counter-attack in the centre and of course this is more difficult to organise when the e4 pawn is firmly protected.

J Hjartarson – G Kasparov

(Olympiad, Thessaloniki 1988)

1. e4	c5
2. Nf3	d6
3. d4	cxd4
4. Nxd4	Nf6
5. Nc3	a6
6. Be3	e6
7. Qd2	b5
8. f3	Nbd7
9. g4	h6

As in the Keres Attack, Black can also allow g5 by playing 9. . . . Nb6 10. g5 Nfd7 followed by . . . Bb7, . . . Rc8 and . . . Nc4, but Kasparov wishes to try out a



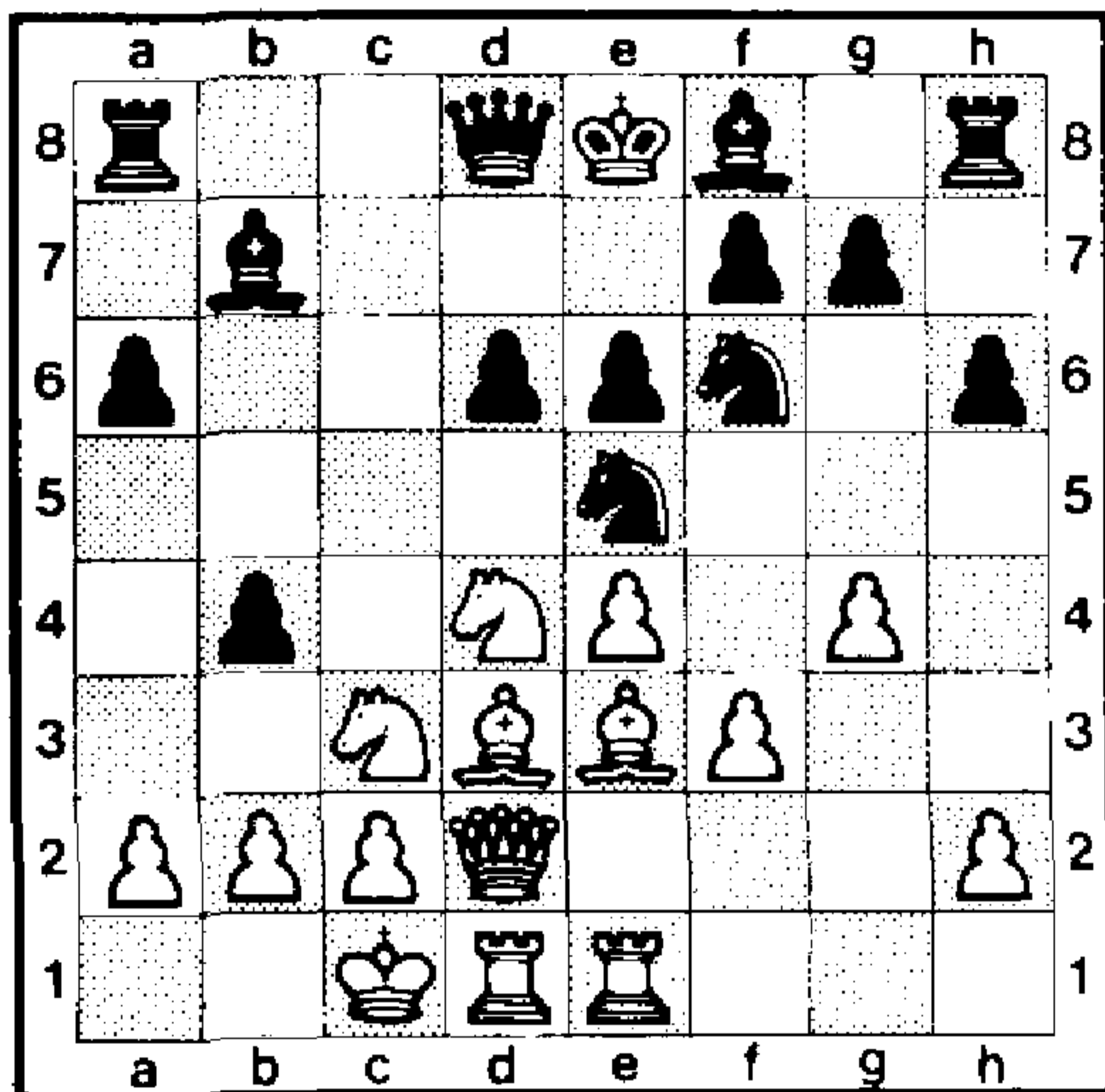
Position after 10. . . . Bb7

diabolical improvement he has discovered in the ... h6 line.

10. 0-0-0

The immediate 10. h4 is energetically countered by 10. ... b4 11. Nce2 d5!

10. ... Bb7



Black does not hurry with the standard central riposte by ... b4 and ... d5 which is risky with his king still in the centre. Similarly, White does well to develop his pieces first before launching a premature pawn attack e.g. 11. h4 b4 12. Nce2 d5 13. exd5 Nxd5 14. Nf4 Nxe3 15. Ndx6 (not 15. Qxe3? Qb6, Anand-Sax, Philadelphia 1986, when the pin of his d4 knight stops White sacrificing on e6. Black continues ... Bc5 and ... 0-0 threatening ... e5) 15. ... fxe6 16. Nxe6 (16. Qxe3 Qb6!) 16. ... Nxd1!! (much better than 16. ... Qc8 17. Bd3 intending Rhe1 and Bg6+) 17. Nxd8 Kxd8 18. Qxd1 Kc7 19. Bd3 Bd6 20. Rf1 Rhf8 followed by ... Rf4 and ... Raf8 when Black's chances are preferable.

11. Bd3

This move, stemming from Nunn, is linked with the sharp tactical idea of Nxe6 and Bg6+, which thus discourages

Black from an otherwise typical and advantageous central counter by ... d5 e.g. 11. ... b4 12. Nce2 d5 13. exd5 Nxd5 14. Nxe6! Qa5 (14. ... fxe6 15. Bg6+ and 16. Nf4 with an attack) 15. Kb1 fxe6 16. Bg6+ Kd8 17. Nf4 Bd6 18. Nxe6+ with excellent chances.

11. ... Ne5

In view of the above variation, it seems advisable to block the 'e' file and be prepared to eliminate White's KB whenever necessary.

12. Rhe1 b4

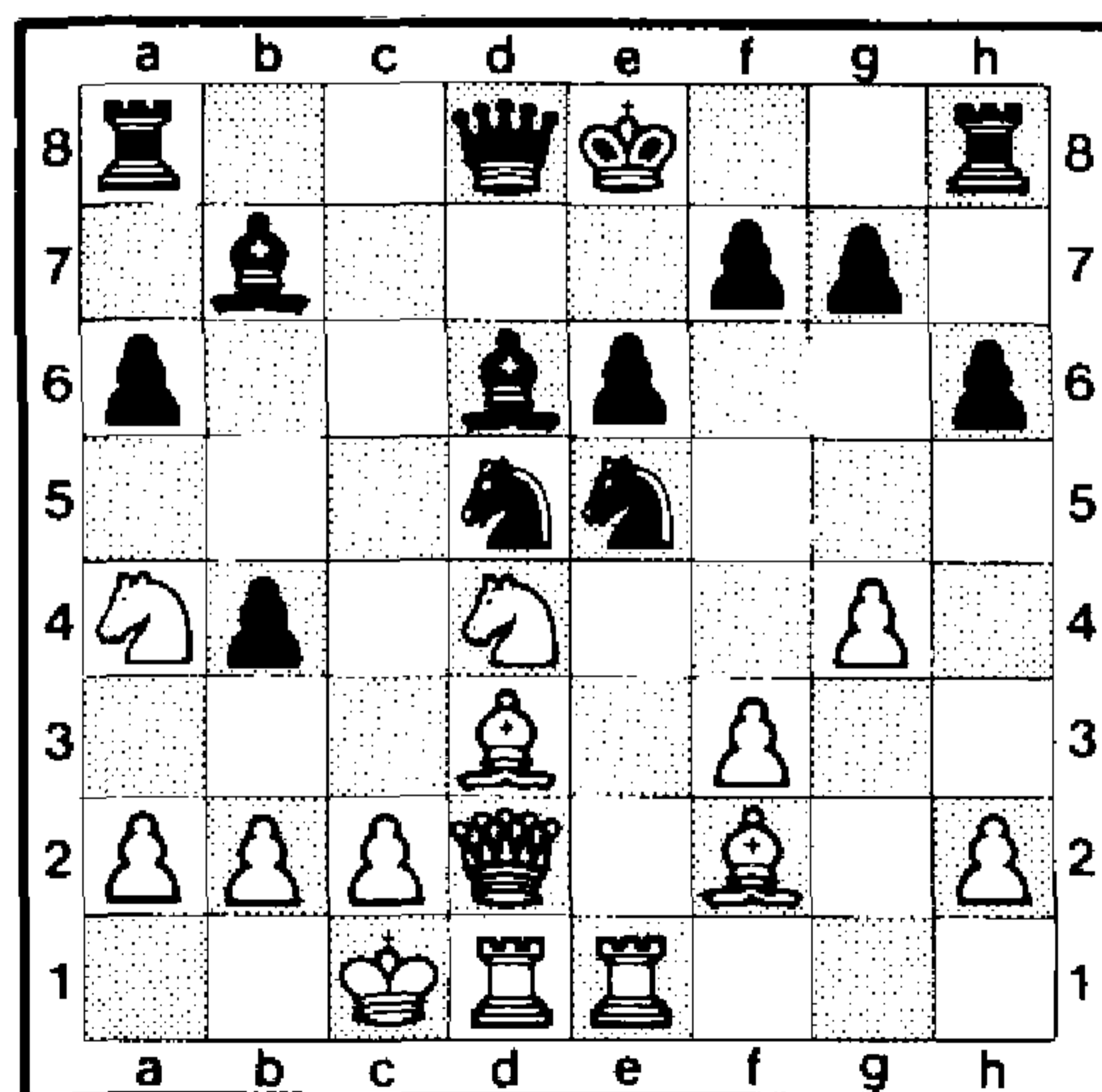
13. Na4

The alternative 13. Nce2 gives Black a good game e.g. 13. ... d5 14. exd5 Nxd5 15. Nf4 Qd7! (protecting e6 against a possible piece sacrifice) 16. Kb1 Be7 17. Nh5 0-0-0! 18. Be2 (18. Nxg7 Nxe3 19. Qxe3 Qxd4 20. Qxd4 Rxd4 21. Rxe5 Bf6) 18. ... g6 19. Nf4 Nxe3 20. Qxe3 Bd6 (see Supplementary Material game Vidarsson – Olafsson).

13. ... d5

14. exd5 Nxd5

15. Bf2 Bd6





The Icelandic grandmaster Johan Hjartarson reached the quarter-finals of the latest World Championship cycle, beating on the way Karpov's long-standing rival, Viktor Korchnoi.

All this has already occurred in several previous games. Black is now better after 16. Bg3 Nxd3+ 17. Qxd3 0-0 18. Kb1 Rc8 19. Ne2 Bxg3 20. hxg3 Qa5 21. c4 (21. b3 Bc6 22. c4 bxc3 23. Nxc3 Nxc3+ 24. Nxc3 Bxf3 25. Qxf3 Rxc3 -+; or here 22. Nb2? Bb5 23. Qd2 Bxe2 24. Rxe2 Nc3+) 21. . . . Qxa4 22. cxd5 Bxd5 (see Supplementary Material game Mainka – Olafsson).

16. Bf5

The new move which had been thought to give White an advantage. Kasparov, who had spent only a few minutes on the opening so far, suddenly produced his next move.

16. . . . 0-0

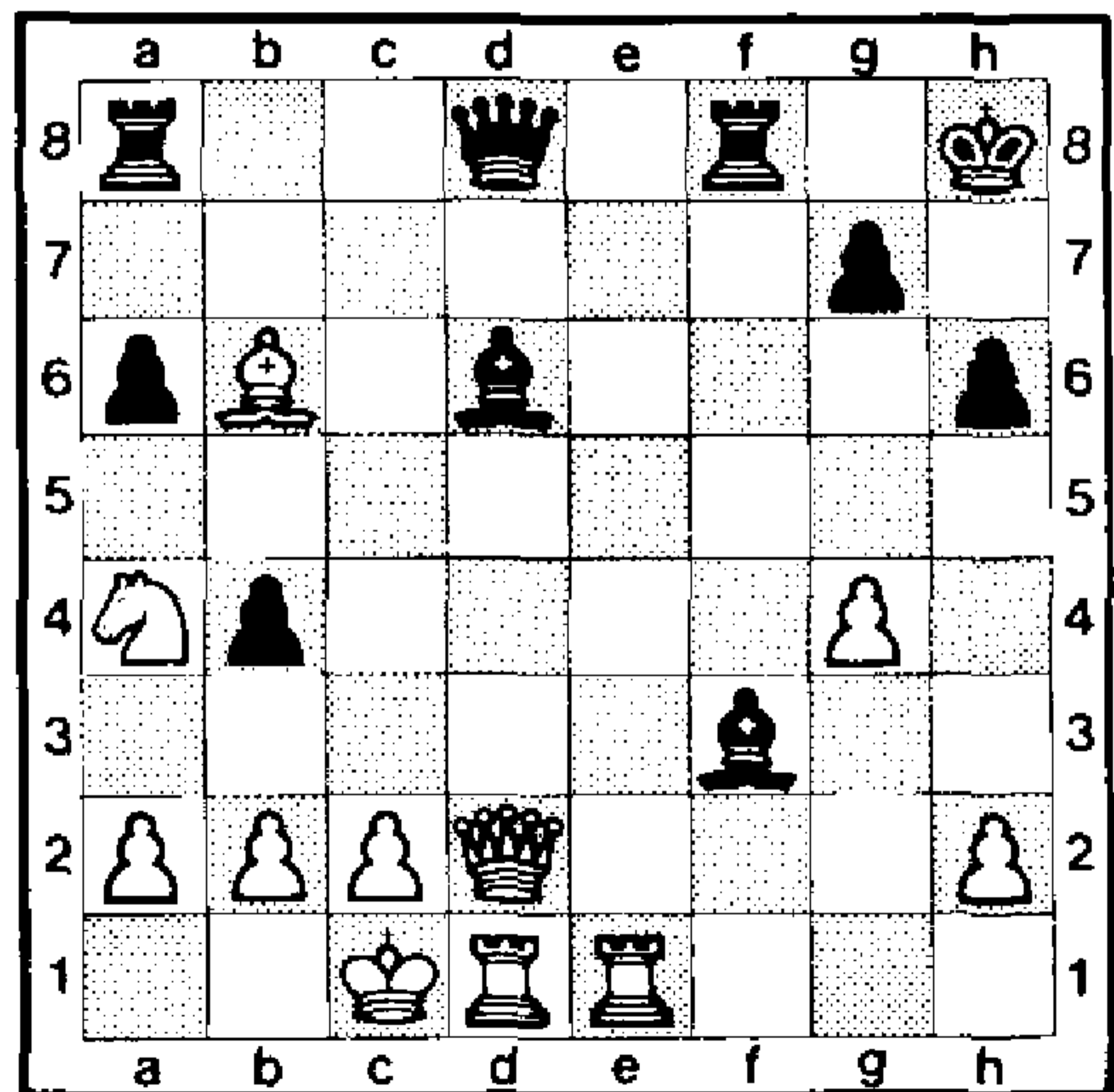
Only now did it become clear to the Icelandic grandmaster that Kasparov had already done his homework, but it was in any event too late to turn back.

- 17. Nxe6 fxe6**
- 18. Bxe6+ Kh8**
- 19. Bxd5 Nxf3!**

- 20. Bxf3 Bxf3**
- 21. Bb6**

After 21. Qxd6 Bxd1 22. Qxd8 Raxd8 23. Bc5 Bxg4 24. Bxf8 Rxf8, according to Kasparov, Black has a similar advantageous ending to the game.

Black's game now appears critical e.g.



21. . . . Qh4 22. Qxd6 Bxd1 23. Rxd1 Qxg4 24. Bd4! threatening both Qxh6+ and Qxb4. However . . .

21. . . . Bxd1!

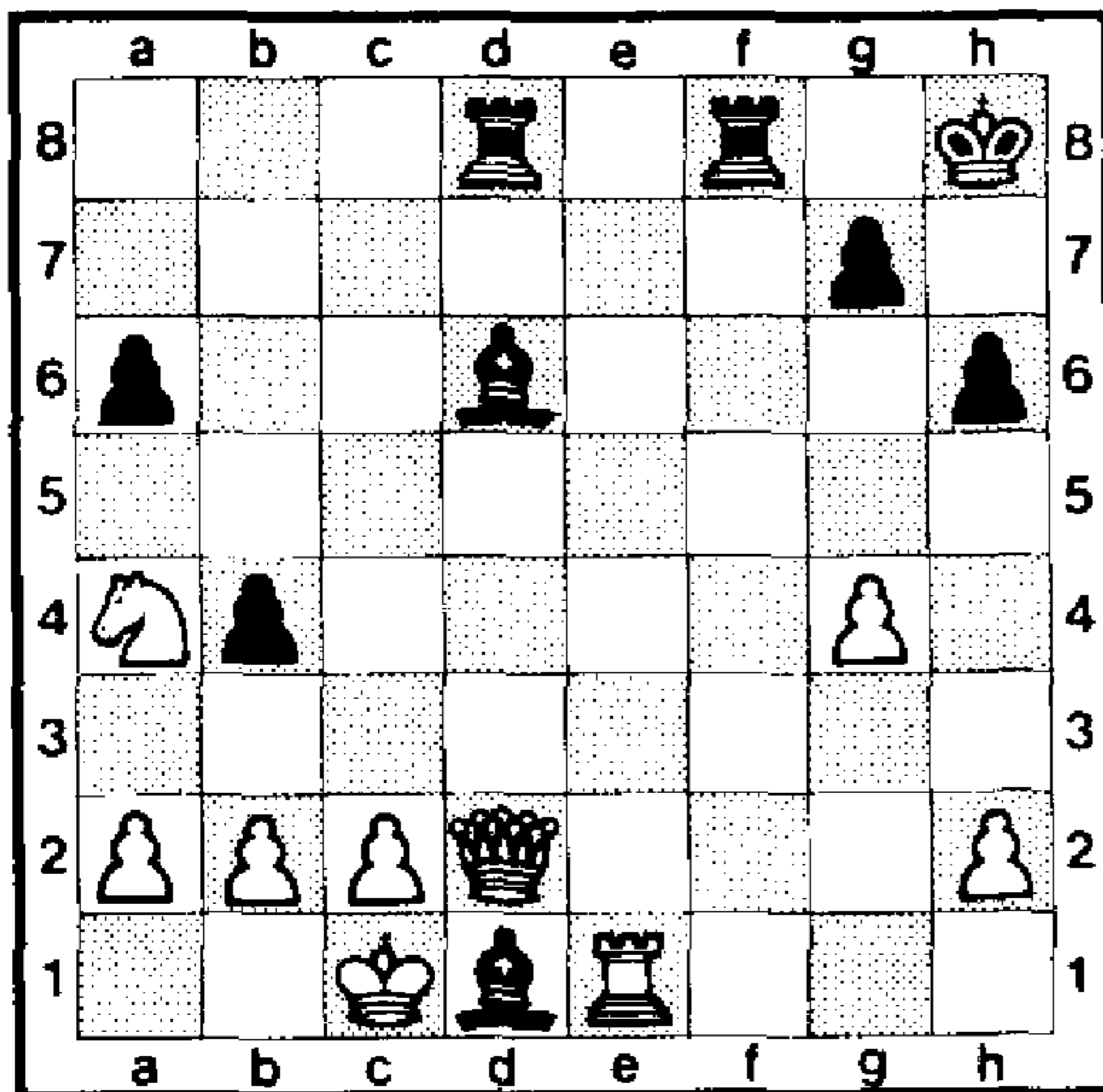
I was writing reports for the chess magazine 64 at the Olympiad where this game was played and arrived at the board just in time to see the reactions of both players at this point. Kasparov picked up his QB, gave his opponent that penetrating look we often complain about in chess-playing scenes on film or TV, then captured the rook on d1. A queen sacrifice, but, to continue our comparison, he failed to mutter some such inanity as 'bishop takes rook'! The fair-skinned Icelander went bright red with shock but had no alternative but to accept the offer.

22. Bxd8 Raxd8

Not 22. . . . Bf4 23. Qxf4!

23. Qxd1

Of course, 23. Rxd1?? or 23. Kxd1?? lose at once to 23. . . . Bf4. In his *Chess Informant* notes, Kasparov gives as best for White 23. Qg2 Bf3 24. Qg1 Bf4+ 25.



Kb1 Bd2 26. Rf1 Bxg4 27. Rxf8+ Rxf8 'with compensation for the sacrificed material', but in reality Black is threatening . . . Bh3 and . . . Rf1+ e.g. 28. b3? Bh3 29. Kb2 Rf1 30. Qa7 Bc1+ 31. Kb1 Ba3 mate. Or 28. c3 Bf5+ 29. Ka1 Bd3 winning. Finally, 28. a3 bxa3 and White's K position is shattered. Nevertheless, this was White's best chance.

23. . . . Bf4+

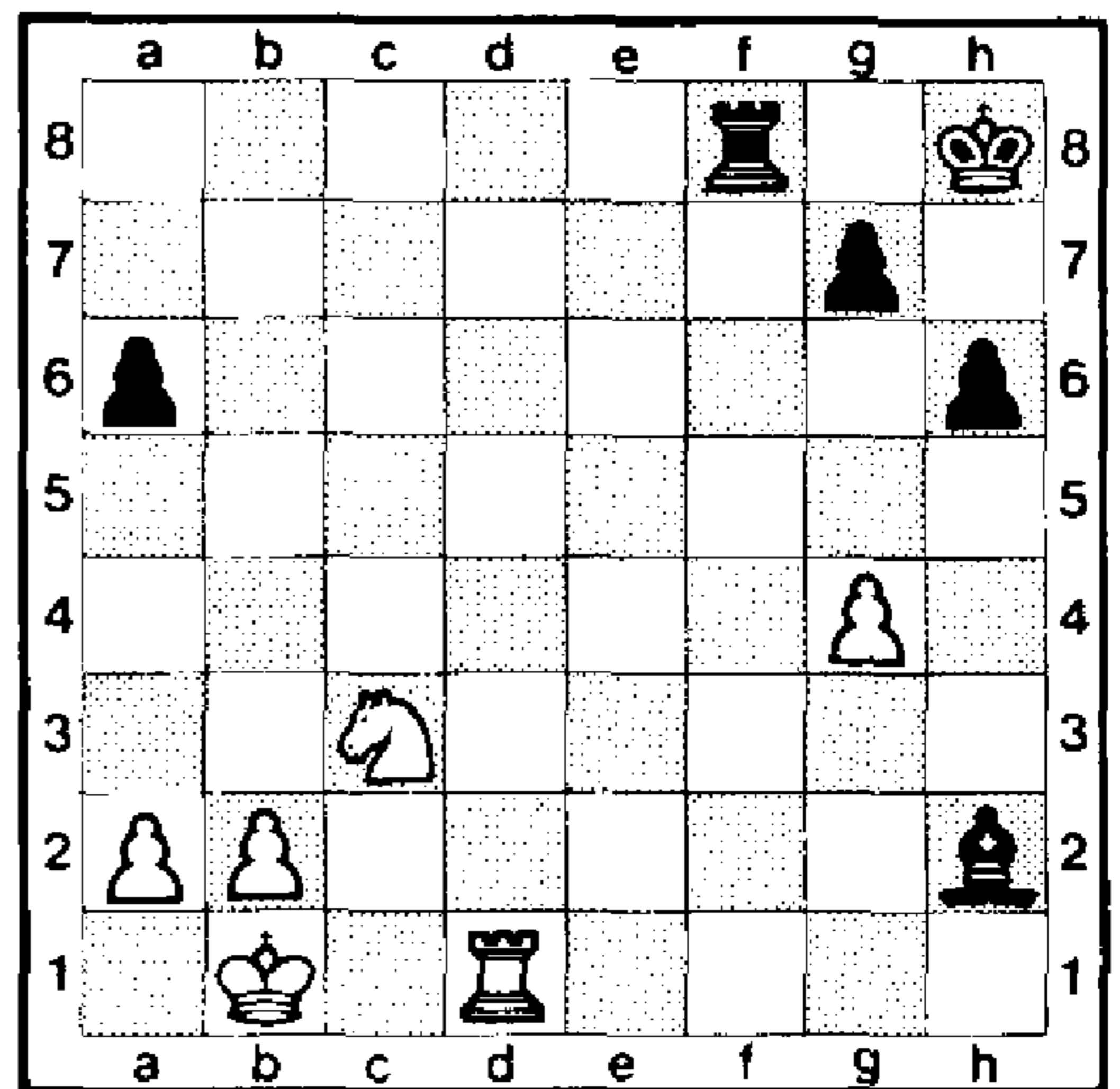
24. Kb1 Rxd1+

25. Rxd1 Bxh2

26. c3 bxc3

27. Nxc3

It seems unbelievable that Kasparov's opening preparation had actually gone as far as this point! He now gives 27. . . . Kh7, to advance his king to g5, as the clearest way for Black to win. Instead, he throws away his advantage with his next move and allows his opponent to escape with a draw. We give the moves with just two main notes:



27. . . . Rf4?

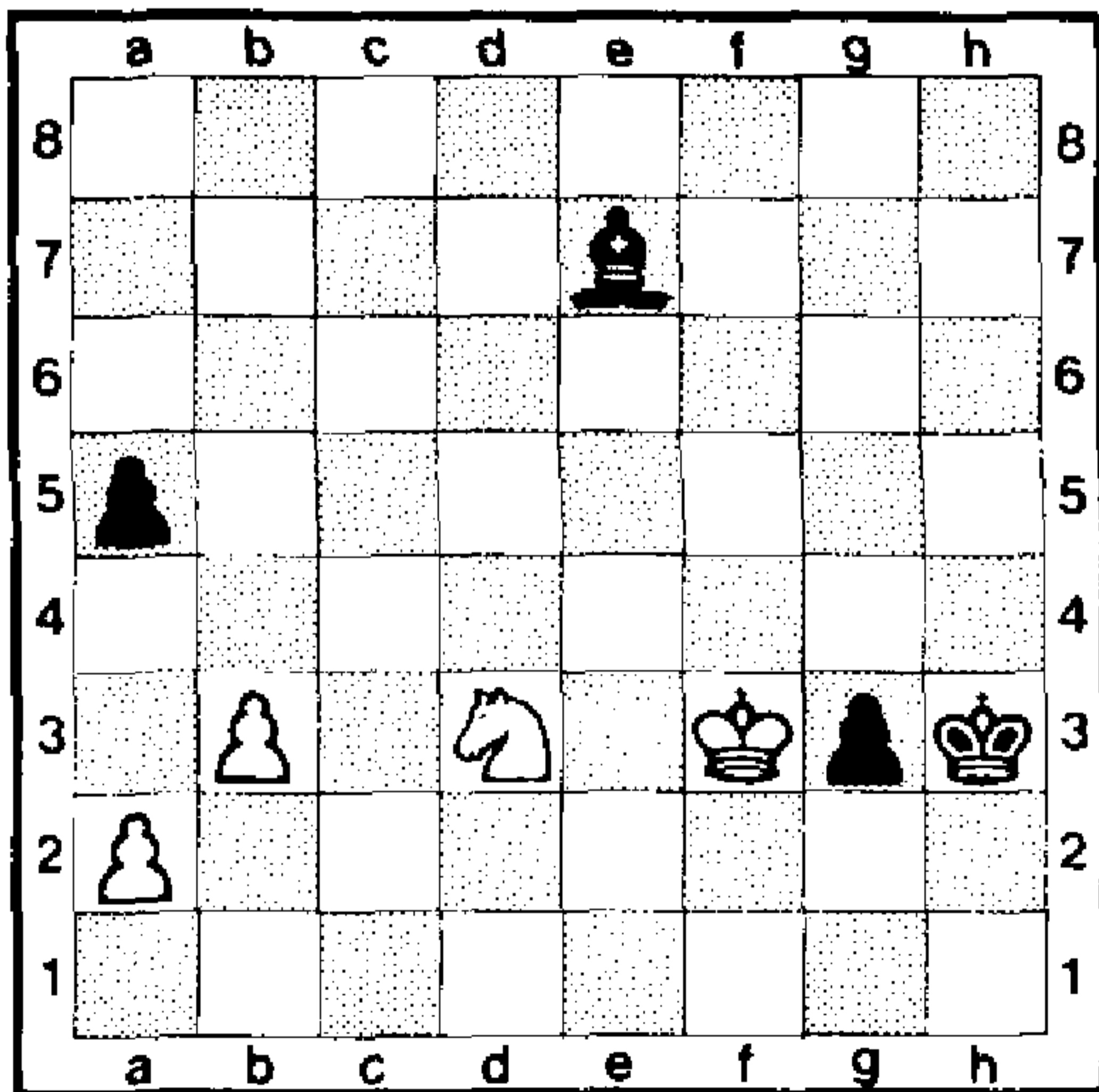
28. Rh1 Rf2

29. Re1 Kh7

- 30. Re2 Rxe2
- 31. Nxe2 Kg6
- 32. Nd4 Bd6
- 33. Nf3 h5
- 34. gxh5+ Kxh5
- 35. Kc2 g5
- 36. Kd3 g4
- 37. Ke4

Kasparov gives the simplest draw as 37. Ke2! gxf3+ 38. Kxf3 Kg5 39. Ke4 Kf6 40. Kd5 Ke7 41. Kc6 a5 42. Kb5 Bc7 43. b4:

- 37. . . . g3
- 38. Ne1 Kg4
- 39. Ng2 Kh3
- 40. Kf3 a5
- 41. b3 Be5
- 42. Ne1 Bc7
- 43. Ng2 Bd6
- 44. Ne1 Kh2
- 45. Ng2 Be5
- 46. Ne3 Kh3
- 47. Ng2 Bd6
- 48. Ne1 Be7
- 49. Nd3



49. . . . Kh2

After the apparently strong 49. . . . Bg5 White draws with the strong reply 50. Nf2+! gxf2 (50. . . . Kh2 51. Ng4+ Kh3 52. Nf2+ Kh4? 53. Ne4) 51. Kxf2 Kg4 52. Ke2 Kf4 53. Kd3 Ke5 54. Kc4 Bd2 55. a3 Kd6 56. b4 a4 57. Kb5 drawing.

- 50. Nf4 Bg5
- 51. Ne2 g2
- 52. Ke4 Be7
- 53. Kf3 Bb4
- 54. Ke4 1/2-1/2

Supplementary Material
J Vidarsson – H Olafsson

(Akureyri, 1988)

- 1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6
- 5. Nc3 a6 6. Be3 e6 7. Qd2 b5 8. f3 Nbd7
- 9. g4 h6 10. 0-0-0 Bb7 11. Bd3 Ne5
- 12. Rhe1 b4 13. Nce2 d5 14. exd5 Nxd5
- 15. Nf4 Qd7 16. Kb1 Be7 17. Nh5 0-0-0
- 18. Be2 g6 19. Nf4 Nxe3 20. Qxe3 Bd6
- 21. c3 bxc3 22. Qxc3+ Kb8 23. Qb3 Ka8
- 24. Nd3 Bd5 25. Qb6 Qa7 26. Qxa7+ Kxa7
- 27. h3 Nc4 28. Nc1 Rc8 29. Ncb3 Bg3
- 30. Rh1 Rhd8 31. Rdg1 Be5 32. Rd1 Kb6
- 33. Rc1 a5 34. a4 Bf4 35. Rcd1 Ne3
- 36. Rd3 e5 37. Nb5



R Mainka – H Olafsson

(Dortmund, 1988)

- 1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6
- 5. Nc3 a6 6. Be3 e6 7. Qd2 b5 8. f3 Nbd7
- 9. g4 h6 10. 0-0-0 Bb7 11. Bd3 Ne5
- 12. Rhe1 b4 13. Na4 d5 14. exd5 Nxd5
- 15. Bf2 Bd6 16. Bg3 Nxd3+ 17. Qxd3 0-0
- 18. Kb1 Rc8 19. Ne2 Bxg3 20. hxg3 Qa5
- 21. c4 Qxa4 22. cxd5 Bxd5 23. b3 Qc6
- 24. Nd4 Qb7 25. g5 hxg5 26. Rh1 f5
- 27. Qe2 Qe7 28. Qh2 Qf6 29. Qh7+ Kf7
- 30. Nxf5 Qxf5+ 31. Qxf5+ exf5
- 32. Rxd5 Kg6 33. Rhd1 Rc3
- 34. g4 Rxf3 35. gxf5+ R8xf5
- 36. Rd6+ Rf6 37. R6d4 Rf1
- 38. Kc1 a5 39. Rd5 R6f5
- 40. Rd6+ Kh5

0-1

E Prie – L Psakhis

(Paris, 1989)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. Nxd4 Nf6
 5. Nc3 d6 6. Be3 a6 7. Qd2 Be7 8. f3 0-0
 9. g4 Nc6 10. 0-0-0 Rb8 11. g5 Nd7 12. f4
 Nxd4 13. Bxd4 b5 14. h4 b4 15. Ne2 Qa5
 16. Kb1 Nc5 17. Bg2 Bb7 18. Ng3 Na4
 19. Ka1 Rfc8 20. Rb1 Rc4 21. Bf1 Rc7
 22. h5 Rbc8 23. Bd3 Nc5 24. g6 Nxd3
 25. gxh7+ Kxh7 26. Qxd3 Qb5 27. Qf3 f5
 28. Rhg1 Bf8 29. Qe3 e5 30. fxe5 dxe5
 31. Qg5 exd4 32. Qg6+ Kg8? (32. . . .
 Kh8!) 33. Qe6+ Kh8 34. h6 g5 35. Nxf5?
 (35. Qf6+! Kh7 36. Qxg5 +–) 35. . . .
 Qc6 36. Qe5+ Kh7 37. Rxg5 Oxe4
 38. Qf6 Qc6 39. Qxd4 Qxc2 40. Qg1
 Be4 0–1

**D Other White Systems
 (2. Nc3/2. c3)**

We devote this fourth section to the Closed Sicilian (2. Nc3) and to 2. c3, although there have been relatively few times when Kasparov has had to face them.

1 The Closed Sicilian

The only world-class player with a penchant for this opening is Ex-World Champion Boris Spassky, so it is logical to assume that the only game to have been played by Kasparov against this system was in fact against Spassky. Although the game was played seven years ago, it is still highly relevant, since Kasparov's treatment of the opening reveals one of the most important novelties of the eighties.

B Spassky – G Kasparov

(Bugojno, 1982)

1. e4 c5
 2. Nc3

White avoids the immediate confronta-

tion in the centre that we see in the Open Sicilian with 2. Nf3 and 3. d4.

2. . . . e6

Of course, if he wishes, White can still transpose to the Open Sicilian with 3. Nf3 d6 4. d4 cxd4 5. Nxd4 Nf6. Black must take care not to play here 3. . . . d5 4. exd5 exd5 5. Bb5+ Bd7 6. d4 when he has problems with his isolated 'd' pawn.

3. g3 d5

4. exd5

After 4. Bg2 Nf6 Black is fine and 5. exd5 exd5 transposes to our model game. Black could also try 4. . . . d4, so Spassky decides not to give his opponent this option.

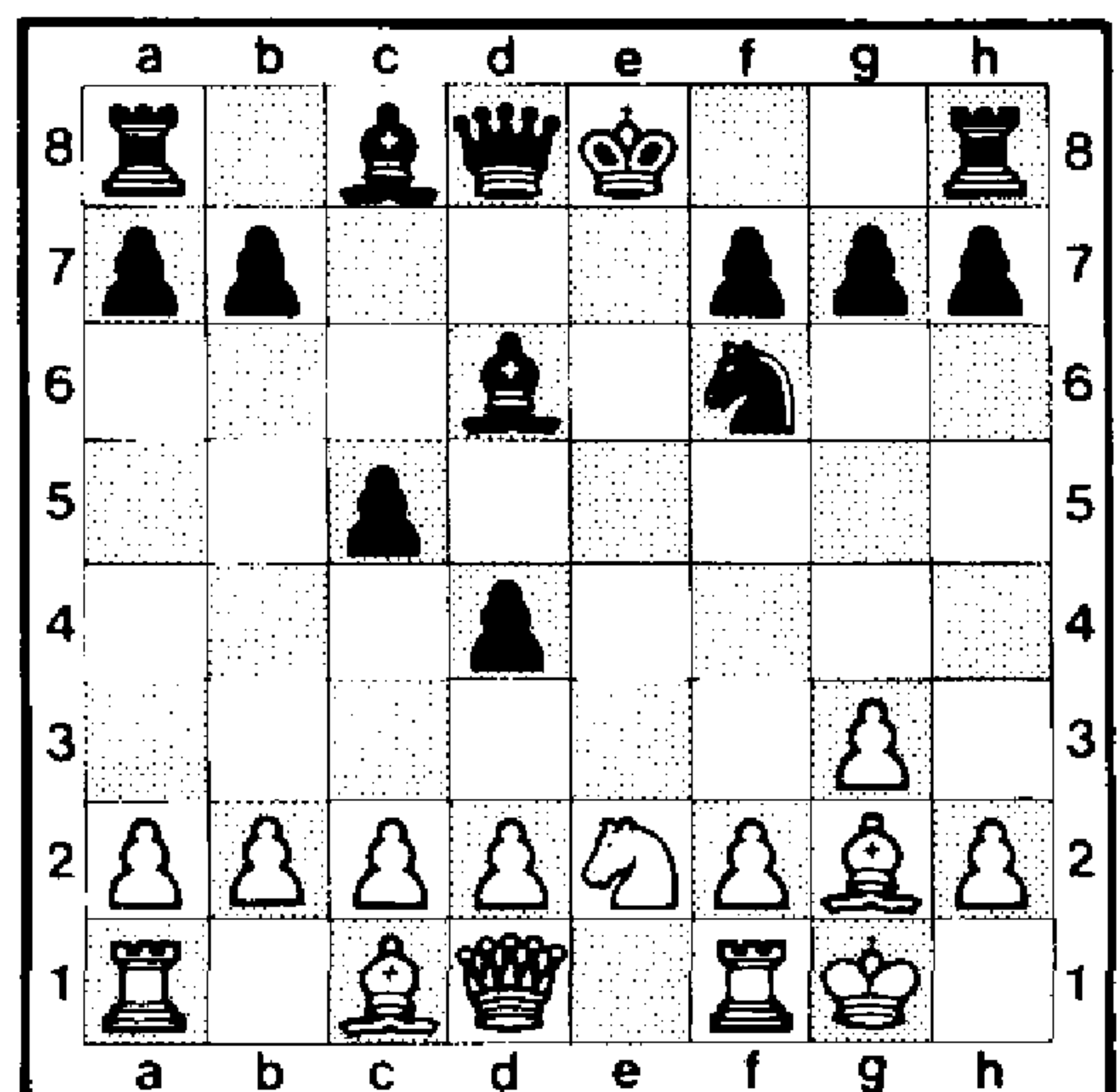
4. . . . exd5

5. Bg2 Nf6!

White's game is more comfortable after 5. . . . d4 6. Qe2+ Ne7 (6. . . . Be6? 7. Bxb7) 7. Nd5.

6. Nge2

In the game Spassky – Borik (West German League, 1982) White played 6. d4 Nc6 7. Be3 c4 followed by . . . Bb4 with equality. According to Spassky, 7. . . . Bg4



Position after 10. . . . Bd6



Boris Spassky, World Champion from 1969 to 1972, was dethroned by the Legendary Bobby Fisher. Along with Karpov and Short, he is one of the few players who rarely lose against Kasparov.

is perhaps even more promising.

6. . . . d4
7. Ne4 Nxe4
8. Bxe4 Nd7

Black gains a tempo on the bishop to reach the ideal f6 square.

9. 0-0 Nf6
10. Bg2 Bd6

By playing natural moves, Black has achieved equality and now, after the obvious 11. d3 0-0 12. Bf4, he has the strong 12. . . . Bg4! with the following possibilities:

- (i) 13. Bxb7?! Bxf4 14. Bxa8 (14. gxf4? Rb8 15. Bg2 Rxb2 and White's weak pawn on f4 gives him the worse of it) 14. . . . Qxa8 15. gxf4 (15. f3?? Be3+) 15. . . . Bh3 16. f3 Bxf1 17. Qxf1 Nd5 followed by . . . Ne3 with very good play for Black.
- (ii) 13 Bxd6 Qxd6 and now 14. b3?! (14. Bxb7? Rab8 is clearly good for Black) 14. . . . Rae8 15. f3 (15. Re1 Nd5 intending . . . Nc3) 15. . . . Bd7 followed by . . . Bc6 and . . . Nd5 with

advantage to Black; or 14. h3 (after 14. f3 Bh5 the e3 square is already beckoning Black's knight) 14. . . . Bd7! (14. . . . Bh5 15. g4 Bg6 16. f4) followed by . . . Bc6, . . . Rae8 and . . . Nd5 with good play for Black.

These variations explain why Spassky chooses to avoid the obvious in favour of complications.

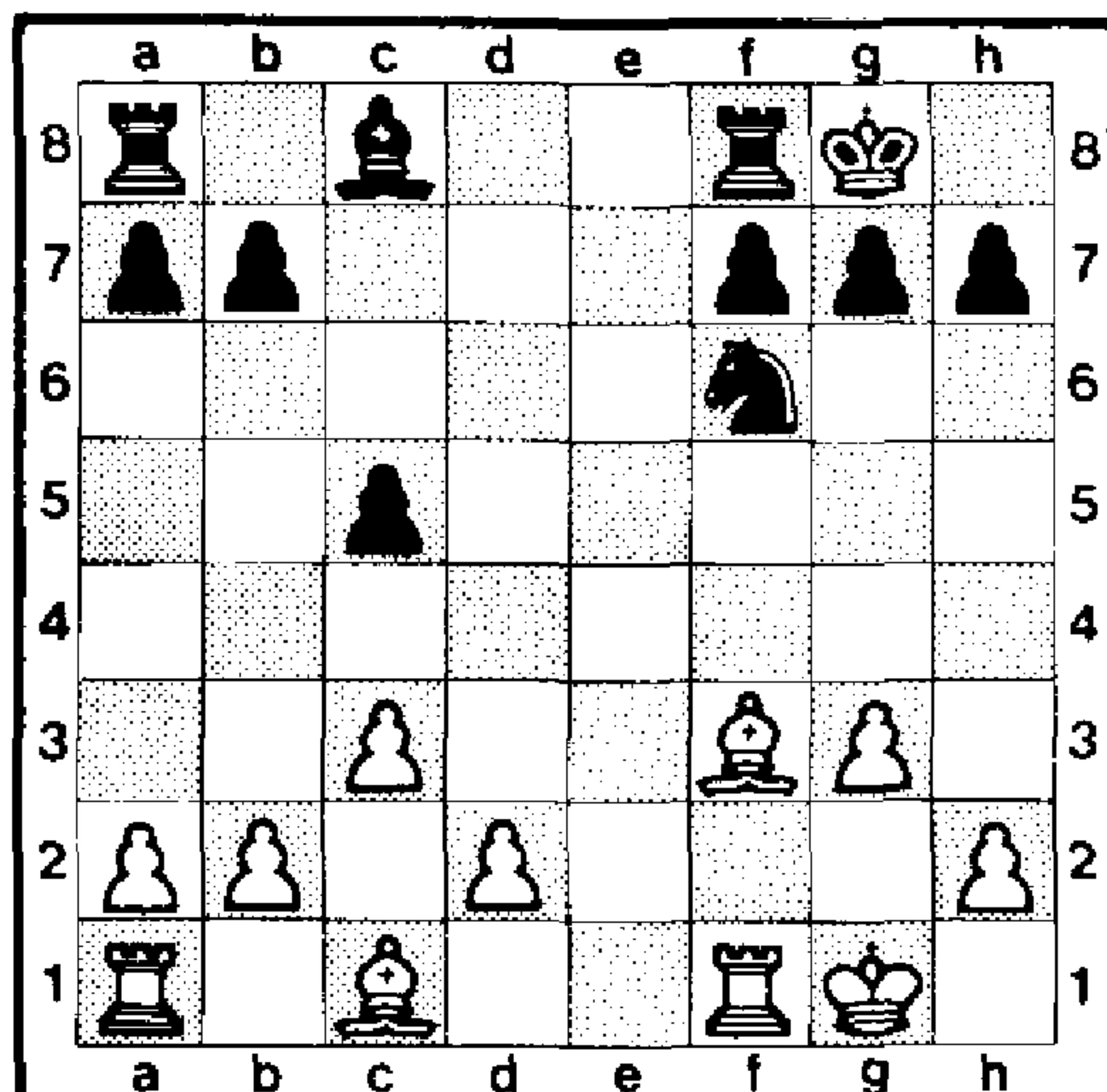
11. c3 d3
12. Nf4 0-0

White would stand well after 12. . . . Bxf4 13. Qa4+ Bd7 14. Re1+ Kf8 15. Qxf4 etc.

13. Nxd3 Bxg3
14. fxg3 Qxd3
15. Qf3 Qxf3
16. Bxf3

White has problems with the development of his Q side, whilst Black's b7 is under pressure.

Black could now play 16. . . . Rd8 17. Rd1 (to advance the 'd' pawn) 17. . . . Bg4 but Kasparov prefers a tactical solution.



16. . . . Bh3
17. Bxb7 Rae8

The alternative 17. . . Bxf1 18. Bxa8 Bd3 19. Bf3 Re8 20. b3 and Ba3 is worse for Black.

18. Bg2

Not 18. Rd1 Bg4 19. Rf1 Be2 20. Re1 Bd3 and White will be gradually stifled.

18. . . . Bxg2
19. Kxg2 Re2+
20. Rf2 Rfe8

Now what is White to do with his QB? After 21. d4 cxd4 22. cxd4 Re1 (threatening . . . Rd1 and . . . Ree1) 23. Rf1 R8e2+ 24. Kf3 (24. Kg1 Rxf1+ 25. Kxf1 Rxh2) 24. . . . Rxf1+ 25. Kxe2 Rh1 26. h4 Ne4 27. Kf3 f5 White has problems despite his extra pawn.

21. b3 Rxf2+
22. Kxf2 Ng4+
23. Kg2 f5
24. h3 Ne5

Not 24. . . . Re2+? 25. Kf1! (25. Kf3?? Rf2 mate) 25. . . . Rf2+ 26. Ke1 winning a piece.

25. d4 cxd4
26. cxd4 Nd3
27. Bg5

It would be a blunder to play 27. Ba3 Ne1+ 28. Kf2 Nc2 etc.

27. . . . h6
28. Rd1 hxg5
29. Rxd3 Re2+
30. Kf3 Rxa2
31. d5 Kf7
32. d6 Ke8
 1/2-1/2

After 33. Rd5 g6 24. g4 a drawn end-game would be reached.

2 The c3 Sicilian

There are unfortunately no recent examples of Kasparov's play against this system, the last being in 1980. In many openings where changes occur very slowly, this would not matter so much, but the 2. c3 Sicilian has seen dramatic developments of late. This factor caused the author a few moments of anguish before he finally opted for the following plan:

- 1) To quote all the games played by Kasparov against 2. c3.
- 2) Then to analyse in more detail his assumed 1990 preferred line, the active 2. . . . d5, and presenting the latest theory and supplementary games.

L Yurtaev – G Kasparov

(Tiflis, 1976)

1. e4 c5 2. c3 Nf6 3. e5 Nd5 4. d4 cxd4 5. Bc4 Qc7 6. Qe2 Nb6 7. Bb3 d5 (7. . . . d3!) 8. exd6 Qxd6 9. Nf3 Nc6 10. 0-0 d3 11. Qe3 Na5 12. Na3 a6 13. Ne5 Nxb3 14. axb3 Bf5 15. Nac4 Nxc4 16. Nxc4 Qe6 17. Qg3 Qg6 18. Bf4 Qxg3 19. hxg3 Rc8 20. Na5 b5 21. b4 f6 22. Nb3 e5 23. Be3 Rc6 24. f4 Be6 25. Nc5 Bxc5 26. bxc5 Bg4 27. fxe5 fxe5 28. Rf2 h6 29. Kf1 Ke7 30. Ke1 Rg6 31. Kd2 Bc8 32. Kxd3 Rxg3 33. Re1 Bb7 34. Kc2 Rxg2

35. Rxc2 Bxc2 36. Bd4 Kf7 37. Rxe5 Rf8
38. Kb3 a5 39. c4 Rd8 40. Bc3 b4 41.
Rf5+Kg6 42. Rf2 Bc6 43. Rd2 Rxd2 44.
Bxd2 Kf5 **0-1**

I Alenkin – G Kasparov

(Daugavpils, 1978)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. c3 d5 4. exd5 exd5
5. d4 a6 6. Bf4 Nc6 7. Be2 c4 8. Nbd2
Bd6 9. Bxd6 Qxd6 10. 0-0 Nge7 11. Re1
0-0 12. Ne5 b5 13. Bf3 Be6 14. Nf1 Nxe5
15. Rxe5 Ng6 16. Re3 Nf4 17. Qd2 a5
18. g3 Nd3 19. Be2 Bf5 20. Bxd3 Bxd3
21. Rae1 b4 22. f3 Rab8 23. Re5 bxc3
24. bxc3 a4 25. Ne3 Qh6 26. a3 Rb5
27. Qg2 Qd6 28. Qh3 f6 29. Qe6+ Qxe6
30. Rxe6 Kf7 31. Ra6 Re8 32. Rxa4 Rb3
33. Ra7+Kg6 34. Ra5 Rxc3 35. Rxd5
Rxa3 36. Rc5 Ra2 37. d5 h5 38. d6 Rd8
39. Rc6 Rd2 40. Nd5 Kh6 41. Nb6 Be2
42. d7 Bxf3 43. Rxc4 Rb8 44. Rc8 Rxb6
45. d8(Q) Rxd8 **1/2-1/2**

E Sveshnikov – G Kasparov

(USSR Championship, 1979)

1. e4 c5 2. c3 Nf6 3. e5 Nd5 4. d4 cxd4
5. Nf3 Nc6 6. cxd4 d6 7. Bc4 Nb6 8. Bb5
dxe5 9. Nxe5 Bd7 10. Nc3 Nxe5 11. dxe5
Bxb5 12. Nxb5 Qxd1+ 13. Kxd1 Nd5 14.
Ke2 a6 15. Rd1 0-0-0 16. Na3 e6 17. Nc4
(17. Bg5 Bxa3!) 17. . . . Be7 18. Bd2 b6
19. g3 Kb7 20. Ne3 Nc7 21. Nc4 Rd4
22. Rac1 Nd5 23. f3 Rc8 24. Ne3 Nxe3
25. Bxe3 (25. Rxc8 Nxd1 26. Re8 Rd7
27. Kxd1 Bb4) 25. . . . Rxd1 26. Rxd1
Rc2+27. Rd2 Rxd2+ 28. Kxd2 Kc6 29. f4
b5 30. Kd3 Kd5 31. h4 h5 32. Bf2 Bb4
33. b3 g6?! (33. . . . Ba5! 34. Ke2 Ke4 35.
Bc5 f6 36. exf6 gxf6 followed by Kf5 and
e5) 34. Ke2 Bc5 35. Bxc5? (35. Be1 b4
38. Kf3 equalising) 35. . . . Kxc5 36. Kd3
Kb4 37. Kc2 Ka3 38. Kb1 a5 39. Ka1 a4
40. bxa4 Kxa4 41. Kb1 Ka3 42. Ka1 b4
43. Kb1 b3 **0-1**

N Short – G Kasparov

(World Junior, 1980)

1. e4 c5 2. Nf3 e6 3. c3 d5 4. exd5 exd5
5. d4 Bd6 6. Be3 (6. Bb5+ Bd7 7. Bxd7+
Qxd7 8. 0-0 Ne7 =) 6. . . . c4 7. b3 cxb3
8. axb3 Ne7 9. c4 (9. Bd3 Bf5 =) 9. . . .
Nbc6 10. c5 Bc7 11. Nc3 0-0 12. Bd3 Bf5
13. 0-0 Qd7 14. Ra4 a5 (14. . . . a6 15. b4
b5 16. cxb6 Bxb6 =) 15. Ne1 b6 16. Nb5
Nb4 17. Nxc7 Qxc7 18. Bxf5 Nxf5 19.
Nd3 b5 20. Ra1 (20. Rxb4!) 20. . . . Nc6
21. Qg4 Qd7 22. Rfe1 f6 23. Nf4 Rf7 24.
Qe2 b4 25. Qd3 Re8 26. Ne2 Rfe7 27.
Bd2 h5 28. f3 h4 29. Kf2 g5 30. Rad1 Kg7
31. Bc1 Nh6 32. Ng1 Qf5 33. Rxe7+
Rxe7 34. Qxf5 Nxf5 35. Ne2 a4?
(Kasparov could have won here by 35.
. . . Rxe2+! 36. Kxe2 Nfxd4+ 37. Kd3
Nxb3 38. Be3 a4 and the pawns cannot
be stopped) 36. bxa4 Ra7 37. g4 hxg3+
38. hxg3 Rxa4 39. g4 Nh4 40. f4 Ra2 41.
fxg5 (41. . . . b3 42. gxf6+ Kxf6 43. Bf4
Rc2 =) **1/2-1/2**

Now let us examine the latest 2. c3 theory:

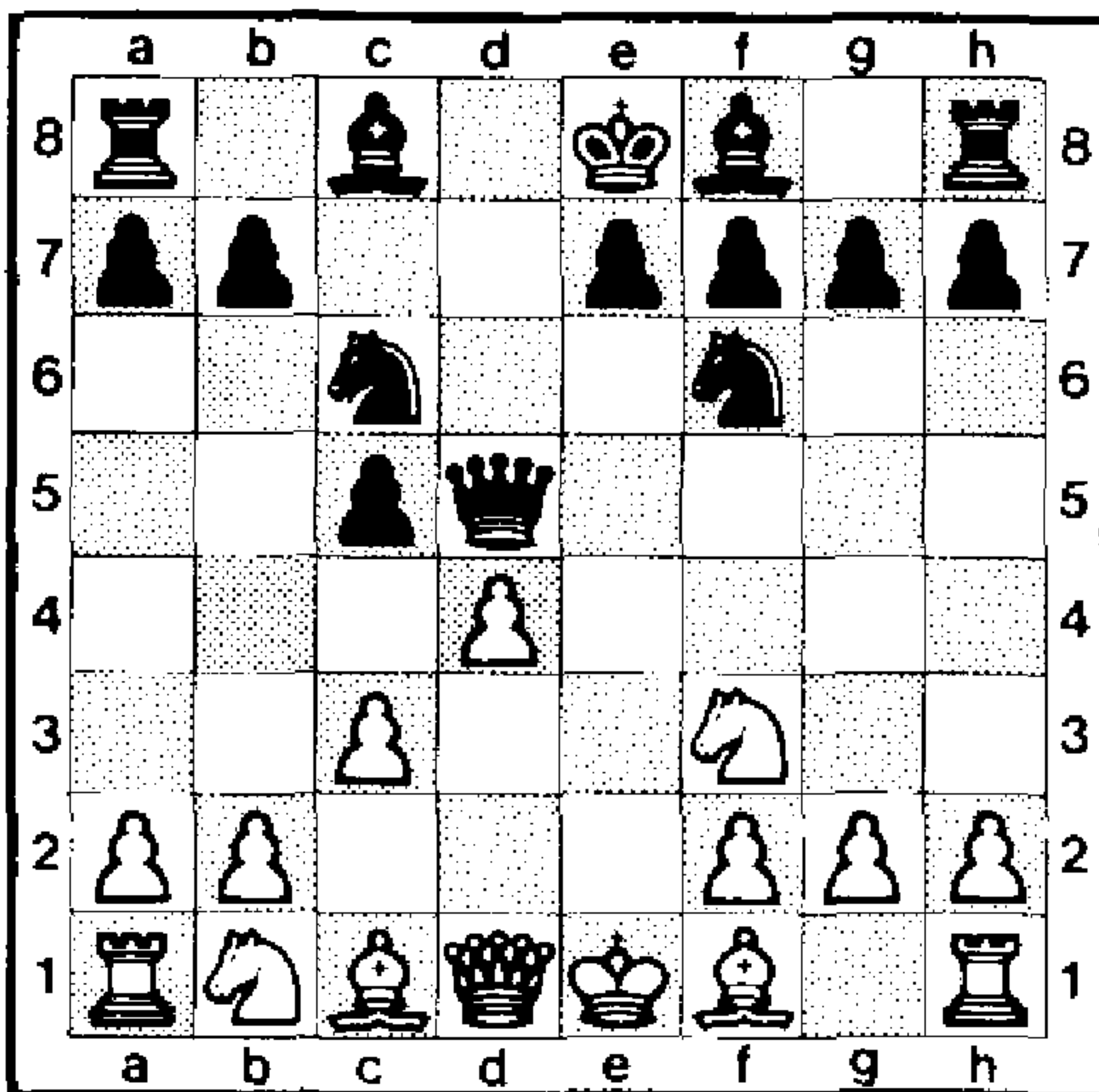
1. e4 c5
2. c3

Or 2. Nf3 e6 with three possibilities:

- (i) 3. d4 gives us a transposition into the Open System which we have already considered.
- (ii) 3. d3 gives us the King's Indian Attack which we shall be discussing in Chapter 8.
- (iii) 3. c3 d5 4. exd5 exd5 was played in Kasparov's games against Alenkin and Short which we have just quoted. Note that 4. e5 could transpose into the Advance Variation of the French Defence (1. e4 e6 2. d4 d5 3. e5) which any Sicilian player adopting this particular defence against c3 must be willing to accept. If not, he should adopt the . . . Nf6 rather than

... d5 line, as in Kasparov's quoted games against Yurtaev and Sveshnikov.

- | | |
|---------|------|
| 2. ... | d5 |
| 3. exd5 | Qxd5 |
| 4. d4 | Nf6 |
| 5. Nf3 | Nc6 |



After 5. . . . Bg4 the latest wrinkle is 6. Qa4+!? Nc6 7. Bc4 Qd7 8. dxc5 Bxf3 9. gxf3 e6 10. Be3! Nd5 11. Bxd5 Qxd5 12. Qe4 Qh5 13. b4 and White managed to win a complex game in Sveshnikov – Neverov (Moscow, 1989).

Before we examine White's three main continuations 6. Be2, 6. Be3 and 6. Na3, it is worth pointing out that the tempting move 6. Bd3 weakens d4 allowing 6. . . . Bg4! (not however the immediate 6. . . . cxd4 7. cxd4 Nxd4? 8. Nxd4 winning a piece because 8. . . . Qxd4?? loses the queen to 9. Bb5+) which gives White problems in view of the threatened . . . Bxf3 winning a pawn e.g. 7. Be3 cxd4 8. cxd4 Bxf3 9. gxf3 e6 and White's pawn structure is very weak. Or 7. dxc5 0-0-0 8. Be2 Qe6! 9.

Qa4 (or 9. Nbd2 Bxf3 10. gxf3) 9. . . . Bxf3 10. gxf3 g6 11. Be3 Bg7 12 0-0 Nd5. Or finally 7. c4 Qe6+ winning a pawn.

(i) **6. Be2**

Now 6. . . . Bg4 would have no point (7. c4 and d5 gaining space) so Black does best to set up a systematic blockade of White's isolated 'd' pawn by exchanging on d4 then playing . . . e6, . . . b6, . . . Bb7 and . . . Rfd8 (see the Supplementary Material game Schmittziel – Lau).

(ii) **6. Be3**

Overprotecting the d4 pawn and thus planning to post his KB on d3. Black proceeds very much as he does against 6. Be2 (see Supplementary Material game Sariego – Ionescu).

(iii) **6. Na3**

An interesting attempt to recapture



The West German grandmaster Ralf Lau, a participant in many Olympiads, plays for Solingen in the first division of the League.

on d4 with this knight by gaining time with Nb5 threatening Nc7+. In the Supplementary Material game Schmittdiel – Andersson, Black solves the problem of the c7 square in simple fashion by castling Q side and applying more pressure down the 'd' file.

Supplementary Material

E Schmittdiel – R Lau

(Dortmund, 1987)

1. e4 c5 2. c3 d5 3. exd5 Qxd5 4. d4 Nf6
5. Nf3 Nc6 6. Be2 cxd4 7. cxd4 e6 8. 0-0
Be7 9. Nc3 Qd6 10. a3 0-0 11. Bg5 Nd5
12. Ne4 Qd8 13. Be3 b6 14. Qd3 Bb7 15.
Rac1 Rc8 16. Rfd1 h6 17. b4 Rc7 18. Nc3
Rc8 19. Bf1 Nxc3 20. Rxc3 Bf6 21. Rdc1
Qd6 22. Nd2 Be7 23. Qe4 f5 24. Qf3 f4
25. Ne4 Qd7 26. Bxf4 Bg5 27. Nxg5 hxg5
28. Qh5 Rxf4 29. Rh3 Qxd4 30. Qh7+
Kf7 31. Qh5+ Kf6 32. Re3 Qd2 33.
Rxe6+ Kxe6 34. Qg6+ Rf6 **0-1**

E Sariego – C Ionescu

(Havana, 1988)

1. e4 c5 2. c3 d5 3. exd5 Qxd5 4. d4 Nf6
5. Nf3 Nc6 6. Be3 cxd4 7. cxd4 e6 8. Nc3
Qd6 9. a3 Be7 10. Bd3 0-0 11. 0-0 b6
12. Qe2 Bb7 13. Rad1 Rac8 14. Bg5 g6

15. Rfe1 Ng4 16. Bxe7 Nxe7 17. Ne5 Nf6
18. Bb1 Kg7 19. f3 Ned5 20. Ne4 Qe7
21. Qf2 Nh5 22. Ba2 Rc7 23. Qd2 h6
24. Ng4 Rh8 25. Nef2 Og5 26. Qxg5
hxg5 27. Bb3 Ndf6 28. Nh3 Bd5 29. Bxd5
Nxd5 30. Rd2 Rhc8 31. Ne3 Nxe3
32. Rxe3 Rc2 33. Ree2 Rc1+ 34. Kf2 Nf4
35. Nxf4 gxf4 36. Re4 g5 37. h4 Kf6
38. hxg5+Kxg5 39. d5 R1c2 40. Ree2
Rxd2 41. Rxd2 Rd8 42. d6 Rd7 43. Rd4
Kf5 44. a4 e5 45. Rc4 Ke6 46. g3 fxg3+
47. Kxg3 Rxd6 48. Rc7 Rd7 49. Rc6+
Rd6 50. Rc7 a5 51. Rb7 f5 52. Rb8 Kd5
53. f4 exf4+ 54. Kxf4 Kc4 55. Kxf5 Kb3
56. Ke5 Rh6 57. Kd4 Kxa4 58. Kc3 Rc6+

0-1

E Schmittdiel – U Andersson

(Dortmund, 1987)

1. e4 c5 2. c3 d5 3. exd5 Qxd5 4. d4 Nf6
5. Nf3 Nc6 6. Na3 Bg4 7. Be2 cxd4
8. Nb5 0-0-0 9. Nbx4 e5 10. Nxc6 Qxc6
11. Qb3 Be6 12. c4 Bc5 13. h3 Qe4
14. Be3 Bxe3 15. fxe3 Qg6 16. g4 Ne4
17. Bd3 f5 18. Qa3 fxg4 19. hxg4 Qxg4
20. 0-0-0 Qxf3 21. Qxa7 Nf2 22. Qa8+
Kc7 23. Qa5+ b6 24. Qxe5+ Kb7 25.
Qxg7+Ka6 26. b4 Nxd3+ 27. Rxd3
Qxh1+ 28. Kc2 Qh2+ 29. Kc1 Rxd3 30.
b5+ Ka5 **0-1**

7 The King's Indian as Black

Kasparov's main weapon against 1. d4 has always been this active defence which he was already playing at the age of thirteen in his first international tournament, the World U-16 Championship in France 1976. In the mid-eighties, he temporarily abandoned his first love in favour of the Tarrasch Defence and Grünfeld, but he fared badly with both systems in his World Championship matches against Karpov. For this reason, two years ago he successfully reverted to his beloved King's Indian, scoring 7½–4½ with it (four wins, one loss and seven draws).

The King's Indian contains many systems, but about ninety per cent of Kasparov's games with Black open with diverse variations of the Classical System (Nf3) and the Sämisch System (f3), which is why we devote our five model games exclusively to these lines. Let us first introduce them.

It is always annoying for the stronger player when his White opponent adopts a 'swapping off' policy, in the hope that the reduced material will stifle any winning attempts on the part of Black. For King's Indian players, the Exchange System involves such a 'wood-chopping' exercise, so our first model game (Danailov – Kasparov) shows us how to handle this as Black. In the Classical System with Nf3, White can choose between blocking the centre and maintaining the tension, so our second and third games against Yusupov and Speelman contain two brand-new ideas by which Black sacrifices material to obtain strong counter-play. Finally, we

look at the Sämisch System with Kasparov's games against Timman and Gheorgiu.

Those readers with knowledge of King's Indian systems will probably be wondering why the popular line 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 is not analysed more fully in this chapter. The reason is simply that hardly any of Kasparov's opponents seem to be willing to enter into a lengthy theoretical debate with the World Champion on this particular subject! [Fortunately for us, since the German edition of this book, another fascinating Korchnoi – Kasparov duel has taken place in Barcelona. I give the game, with brief comments by Kasparov, in the Supplementary Material section].

A The Exchange System

The star of the 1980 World Junior Championship in the industrial town of Dortmund, which will next host the event in 1992, was undoubtedly Garry Kasparov. All his opponents treated him with the greatest respect, including the Bulgarian junior, later to become an International Master, Silvio Danailov, who even refused to raise his visor! After a few exchanges, he offered Kasparov a draw, to no avail . . .

S Danailov – G Kasparov

(World Junior, Dortmund 1980)

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. c4 | g6 |
| 2. Nf3 | Bg7 |
| 3. Nc3 | d6 |
| 4. d4 | Nf6 |

5. e4 0-0
 6. Be2 e5
 7. dxe5

One of Kasparov's first widely publicized games (Yuferov – Kasparov) began with our above-mentioned sharp system 7. 0-0 Nc6 and ended with a loss to White (see Supplementary Material games). Danailov knew this game, so decided to avoid undue complications, remembering perhaps that ex-World Champion Botvinnik, whilst rating very highly his protégé's tactical skill, had stated that his positional play left a little to be desired.

7. . . . dxe5
 8. Qxd8 Rxd8

White can now even exchange another piece by 9. Nd5 Nxd5 10. cxd5, although after 10. . . . c6 Black can begin active counter-play (see Supplementary Material game LeBlancq – Botterill).

9. Bg5

The Exchange System is not without its drop of poison e.g. 9. . . . h6? 10. Bxf6 Bxf6 11. Nd5 winning by attacking the bishop and 'c' pawn simultaneously.

9. . . . Nbd7

Kasparov's speciality. Other grandmasters prefer 9. . . . c6. White can now play 10. 0-0-0 after which Black must again be careful. The threat is Nxe5 and 10. . . . Re8? loses at least a pawn after 11. Nb5, whilst again 10. . . . h6? allows 11. Bxf6 Bxf6 12. Nd5 winning the c7 pawn. This is in fact why the natural move 9. . . . Nbd7 was neglected until Kasparov showed that 10. 0-0-0 can be answered by the surprising 10. . . . Rf8! so that after 11. Nb5 c6 there is no knight fork on c7 and 12. Nd6 Nc5 attacks e4, giving Black good play. If White does not play 11. Nb5, then 11. . . . c6 is still good for Black (see supplementary game Haag – Kochiev)

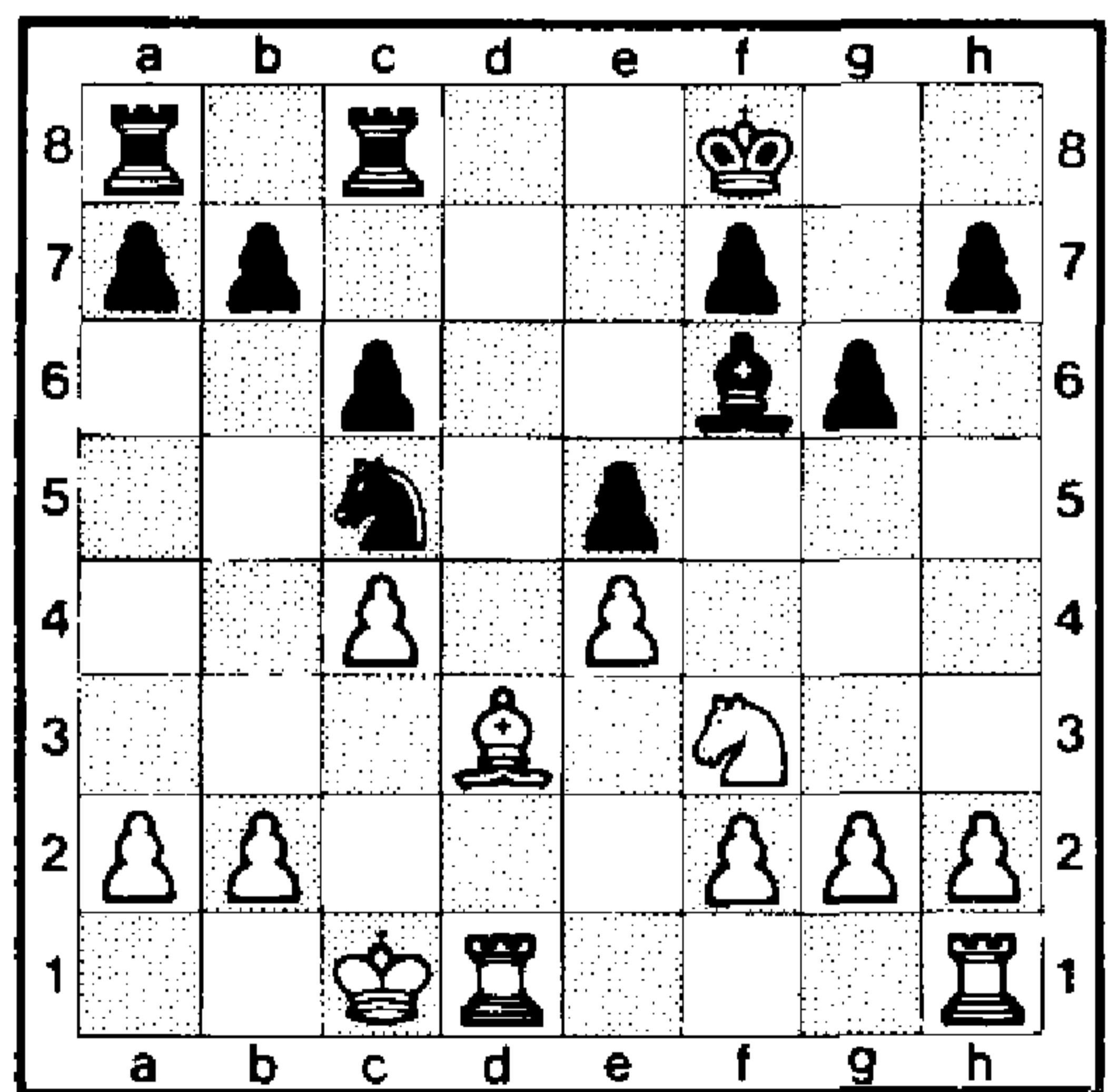
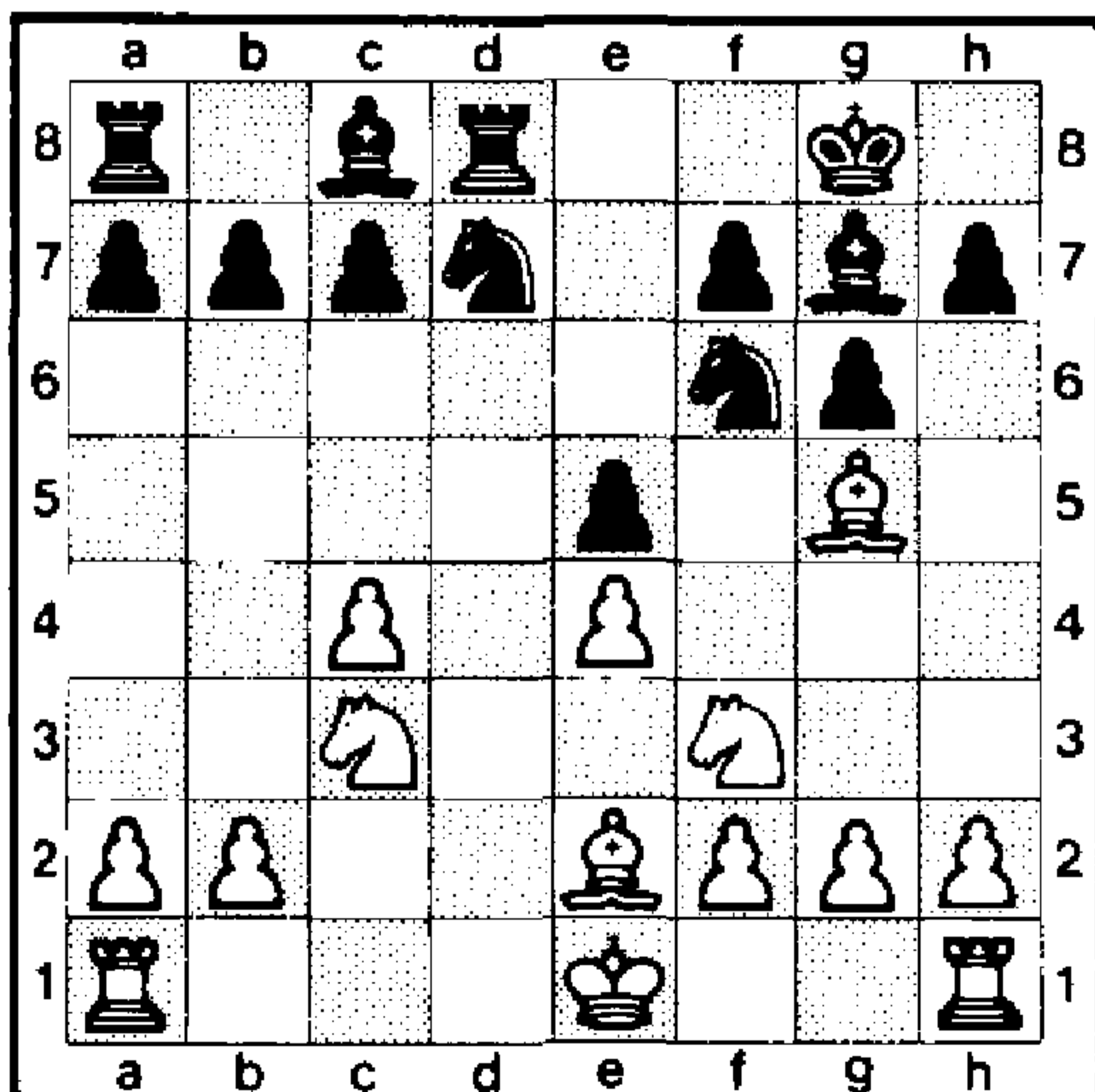
10. Nd5 c6
 11. Ne7+ Kf8
 12. Nxc8 Rdxc8

Unpinning the f6 knight which now threatens the e4 pawn.

13. 0-0-0 Nc5
 14. Bxf6

Not of course 14. Nxe5?? Nfxe4 winning material.

14. . . . Bxf6
 15. Bd3

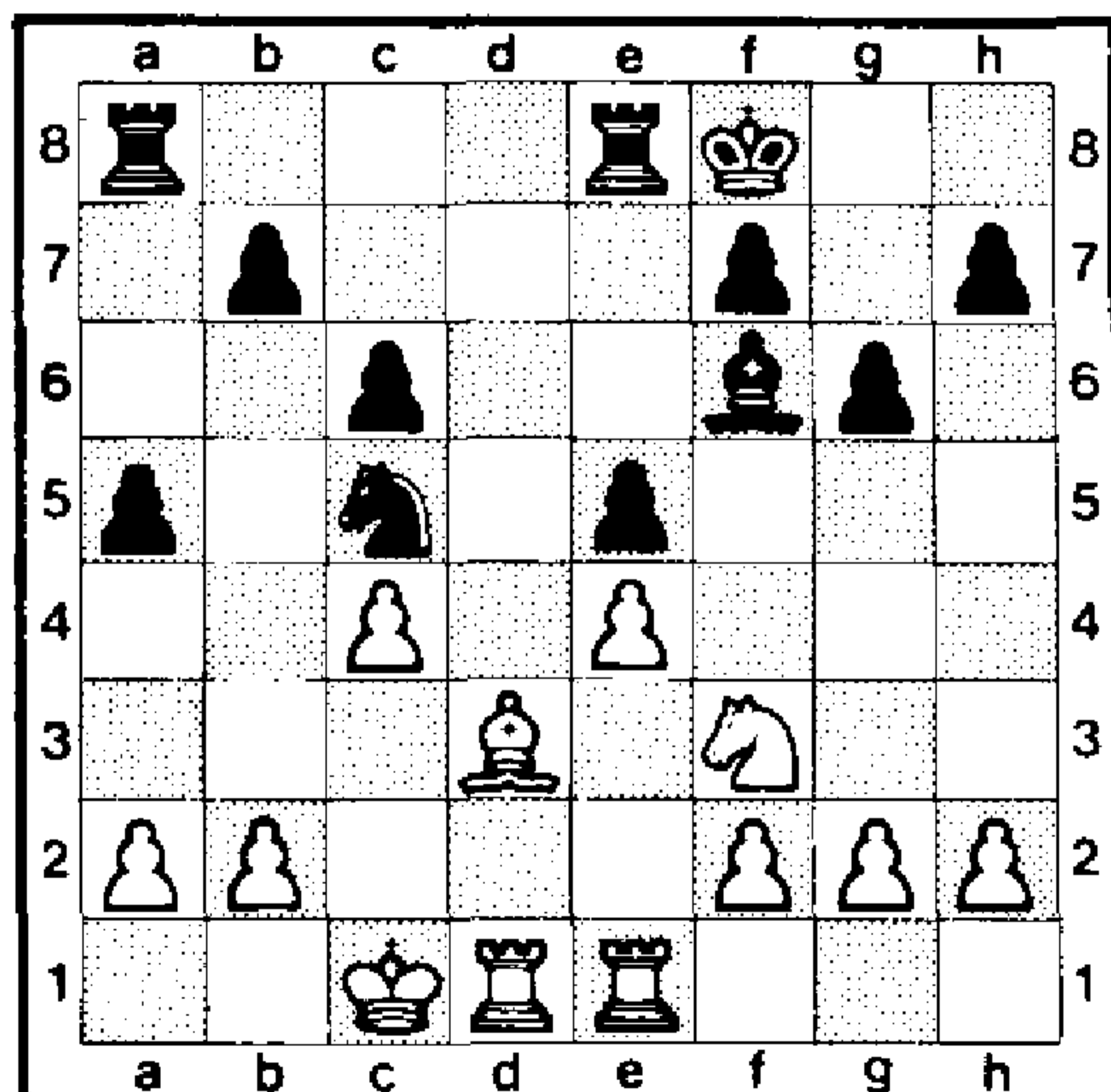


White has exchanged almost half the pieces, so thinks it is now time to ask Kasparov to halve the score as well and go for a stroll around the town.

Such tournament 'breaks' were actually tempting for many of the youngsters participating in this tournament. For example, Nigel Short (who came second) enjoyed his share of discos and girls along with the chess, whereas Kasparov clearly came to Dortmund to gain the title without any distractions. As we have said, the draw was turned down.

What about the position, then? Both bishops are defending their 'e' pawn at the moment, so Black wishes to protect his e5 pawn by ... f6 in order to free his bishop for other more valuable work (Kasparov's sixteenth and seventeenth moves). However, first of all the excellent position of the c5 knight must be secured and his opponent's Q side expansion (by 16. b4 Ne6 17. c5 followed by Bc4) be prevented.

15. . . . a5
16. Rhe1 Re8!



A position to remember. Black's plan becomes clear if we take the plausible sequence 17. b3 (to stop Black's game continuation of ... a4/ ... Bd8-a5 gaining space on the Q side) 17. ... Bd8 18. Bc2 Bb6 (eyeing f2) 19. Re2 f6 20. Red2 Ne6. Black then plays his bishop to d4 and continues actively with ... b5 and perhaps later with ... h5 and ... g5. Rd7 can be easily neutralised by ... Re7 and ... Ke8.

The d4 'hole' is in fact typical of the Exchange System, as is the manoeuvre with ... Ne6 and ... Bd4. All this explains White's next move, with the intention of posting his 'bad' bishop on h3 to exchange it for the knight if it retreats to e6.

17. Bf1 Bd8
18. g3?

An immediate 18. b3 was better, although Black's position is still preferable (Kasparov). Now White's game goes rapidly downhill.

18. . . . a4
19. Kc2 Ba5
20. Re3 Rad8
21. Rxd8 Rxd8
22. Bh3

Not 22. Nxe5? Rd2+ 23. Kc1 Rxf2.

22. . . . f6
23. Re2 Ke7
24. Bg2

White intends to drive away Black's knight as soon as it goes to e6, since 24. ... Ne6 25. Bh3! Nd4+? 26. Nxd4 brings about bishops of opposite colour, a notorious drawing factor.

24. . . . Nd3!

Threatening to win the a2 pawn by 25. ... Nb4+ when 26. Kb1?? would allow Rd1 mate.

25. a3 Nc5
26. h4 h5

THE KING'S INDIAN AS BLACK

27. Re3 g5!

28. hxg5 fxg5

29. Re2

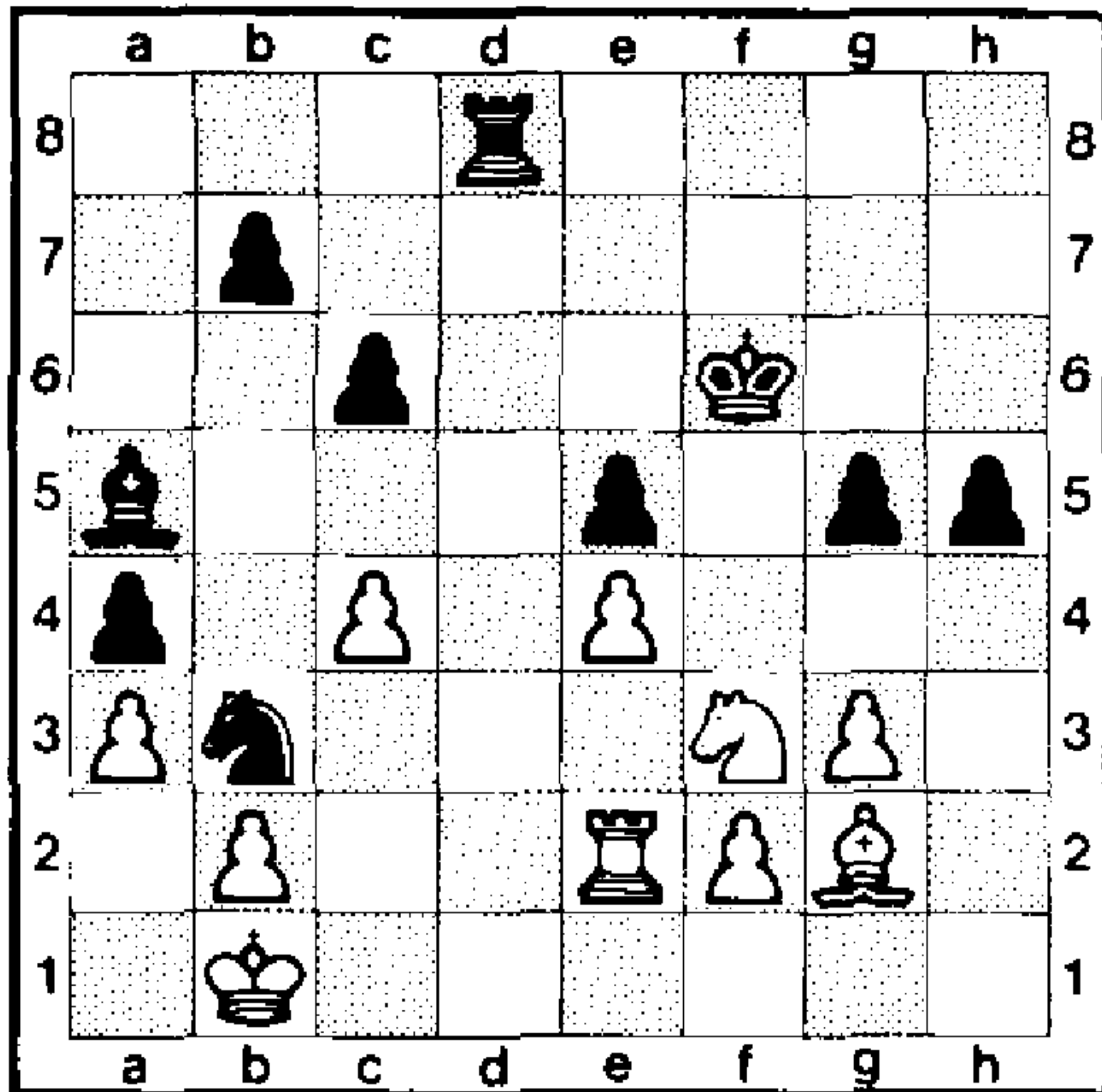
Or 29. Nxc5 Rd2+ 30. Kc1 Rxf2 31. Bh3 Bd2+

29. . . . Nb3

Intending 30. . . . g4 31. Nh2 Nd4+

30. Kb1 Kf6

0-1



White is completely helpless:

- (i) If 31. Kc2 g4 32. Nh4 Nd4+.
- (ii) If 31. Nh2 Rd1+ 32. Kc2 (32. Ka2 Ra1 mate) 32. . . . Rg1 33. Bf3 Nd4+.
- (iii) If 31. Re3 Rd1+ 32. Kc2 Rc1+ 33. Kd3 g4 34. Nh4 Nc5+ 35. Ke2 Re1 mate.

It was a short game, with Garry Kasparov using relatively little thinking time, so the Bulgarian could still take his stroll, but without a draw to keep him company . . .

Supplementary Material

S Yuferov – G Kasparov

(Minsk, 1978)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Be2 0-0 6. Nf3 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9.

Ne1 Nd7 10. Nd3 f5 11. Bd2 Nf6 12. f3 f4 13. c5 g5 14. cxd6 cxd6 15. Nf2 Ng6 16. a4 Rf7 17. Nb5 h5 18. h3 Bf8 19. Qc2 a6 20. Na3 Rg7 21. Rfc1 Nh4 22. Qd1 Bd7 23. Nc4 g4 24. hxg4 hxg4 25. fxg4 Nxc2 26. Kxc2 Nxc4 27. Bxc4 Bxc4 28. Qxc4 Rxc4+ 29. Nxc4 Rc8 30. Nh2 Qh4 31. Rc3 Rc7 32. Rg1 Rg7+ 33. Kh1 Rxc1+ 34. Kxc1 Qh7 35. Bxf4 exf4 36. Nd2 Qd7 37. Rc4 Bg7 38. b3 Bd4+ 39. Kh1 Bc5 40. Ndf3 b5 41. Rc2 Qe8 42. Rg2+ Kf8 43. Ng5 Qh5 44. Ne6+ Ke7 45. Rg7+ Kf6 46. Rg4 bxa4 47. bxa4 Be3 48. Nxf4 Bxf4 49. Rxf4+ Ke7 50. Kg2 Qd1 51. Ng4 Qxa4 52. Ne3 a5 53. Nf5+ Kd7 54. Rh4 Qc2+ 55. Kf3 a4 56. Rh7+ Kd8 57. Ne3 Qb3 58. Kf4 a3 59. Nf5 Qb2 **0-1**

V Korchnoi – G Kasparov

(Barcelona, 1989)

1. Nf3 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. d4 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. 0-0 Nc6 8. d5 Ne7 9. a4 a5 10. Ne1 Nd7 11. Be3 f5 12. f3 Nc5 13. Nd3 b6 14. b4 Nxd3 15. Qxd3 axb4 16. Nb5 Kh8 17. Qb3 Ng8 18. Qxb4 Nf6 (18. . . . fxe4! 19. fxe4 Rxf1+ 20. Rxf1 Bh6!) 19. exf5 gxf5 20. Bg5 h6 21. Bh4 Bd7 22. Ra3 Qb8 23. Bf2 Rg8 24. Rb1 Nh5 25. Kh1 Qd8 26. a5 Bxb5 27. Qxb5 bxa5 28. g3 f4 29. g4 e4! 30. fxe4 (30. gxh5 e3 31. Bg1 Qg5 32. Bd3 Qxh5 with a good attack) 30. . . . Nf6 31. Bh4 Qe7 32. Bf3 Qe5 33. Re1 Nh7 34. Qd7 Bf6 35. Bxf6+ Nxf6 36. Qf5 Qxf5 37. exf5 Nxc4 38. Bxc4 Rxc4 39. Rh3 Kg7 40. Re7+ Kf6 41. Re6+ Kxf5 42. Rhxh6 Rf8! 43. Rh5+ Rg5 44. Rxc5+ Kxc5 45. c5 a4 46. cxd6 cxd6 47. Rxd6 Ra8 48. Re6 a3 49. Re1 Kf5 (49. . . . f3!) 50. h4 f3 51. d6 a2 52. Ra1 Kf4 53. Kh2 f2 54. d7 Kf3 55. Rc1 a1(Q) (56. Rxa1 Rxa1 57. d8(Q) Rh1+ followed by mate in two moves)

0-1

S Le Blancq – G Botterill

(Zonal, Bath 1987)

1. d4 Nf6 2. Nf3 g6 3. c4 Bg7 4. Nc3 0-0
 5. e4 d6 6. Be2 e5 7. dxe5 dxe5 8. Qxd8
 Rxd8 9. Nd5 Nxd5 10. cxd5 c6 11. Bc4
 cxd5 12. Bxd5 Nd7 13. Ng5 Rf8 14. Be3
 h6 15. Nxf7?! (White does not relish
 retreating his pieces by 15. Nf3 Nb6 16.
 Bb3, so opts for an unpromising ex-
 change of two minor pieces for rook and
 pawn) 15. . . . Rxf7 16. Rc1 Nf8 17.
 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18. 0-0 Ne6 19. Bxa7 Rxa7
 20. Rxc8 Rxa2 21. Rb1 Bf8 22. Rb8 Ra7
 23. g3 Bc5 24. Kg2 b6 25. Rd1 Bd4
 26. Rd2 Ra4 27. Rb7+ Kf6 28. Rd3 Ng5
 29. h4 Nxe4 30. Rf3+ Ke6 31. Rg7 Rb4
 32. Rxc6+ Kd5 33. b3 Nc5 34. Rxh6
 Nxb3 35. h5 Nd2 36. Rf7 Rb2 37. Rhf6
 Ne4 38. Rd7+ Kc4 39. Rc7+ Kb5 40. Rf5
 Nxf2 41. Kf1 Ng4 42. Rg5 Nh2+ **0-1**

M Haag – A Kochiev

(Balatonbereny, 1988)

1. c4 Nf6 2. Nc3 g6 3. Nf3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5.
 d4 0-0 6. Be2 e5 7. dxe5 dxe5 8. Qxd8
 Rxd8 9. Bg5 Nbd7 10. 0-0-0 Rf8 11. Nd2
 c6 12. b4 Re8 13. c5 a5 14. a3 axb4
 15. axb4 b6 16. Be3 bxc5 17. bxc5
 Bf8 18. Nb3 Nb8 19. Kc2 Be6 20. Ra1
 Nbd7 21. f3 Bxb3+ 22. Kxb3 Bxc5
 23. Bxc5 Nxc5+ 24. Kc4 Ne6 25. Rhb1
 Rxa1 26. Rxa1 Rd8 27. Ra2 Ne8 28. Ra6
 Rd4+ **0-1**

B The Blockade System

The outcome of a game is usually linked to the opening but not always. Sometimes a player succeeds in his opening play only to squander his advantage later, mostly because of time-trouble. The only game in this book which Kasparov loses could well have been the brightest jewel in his crown, but . . .

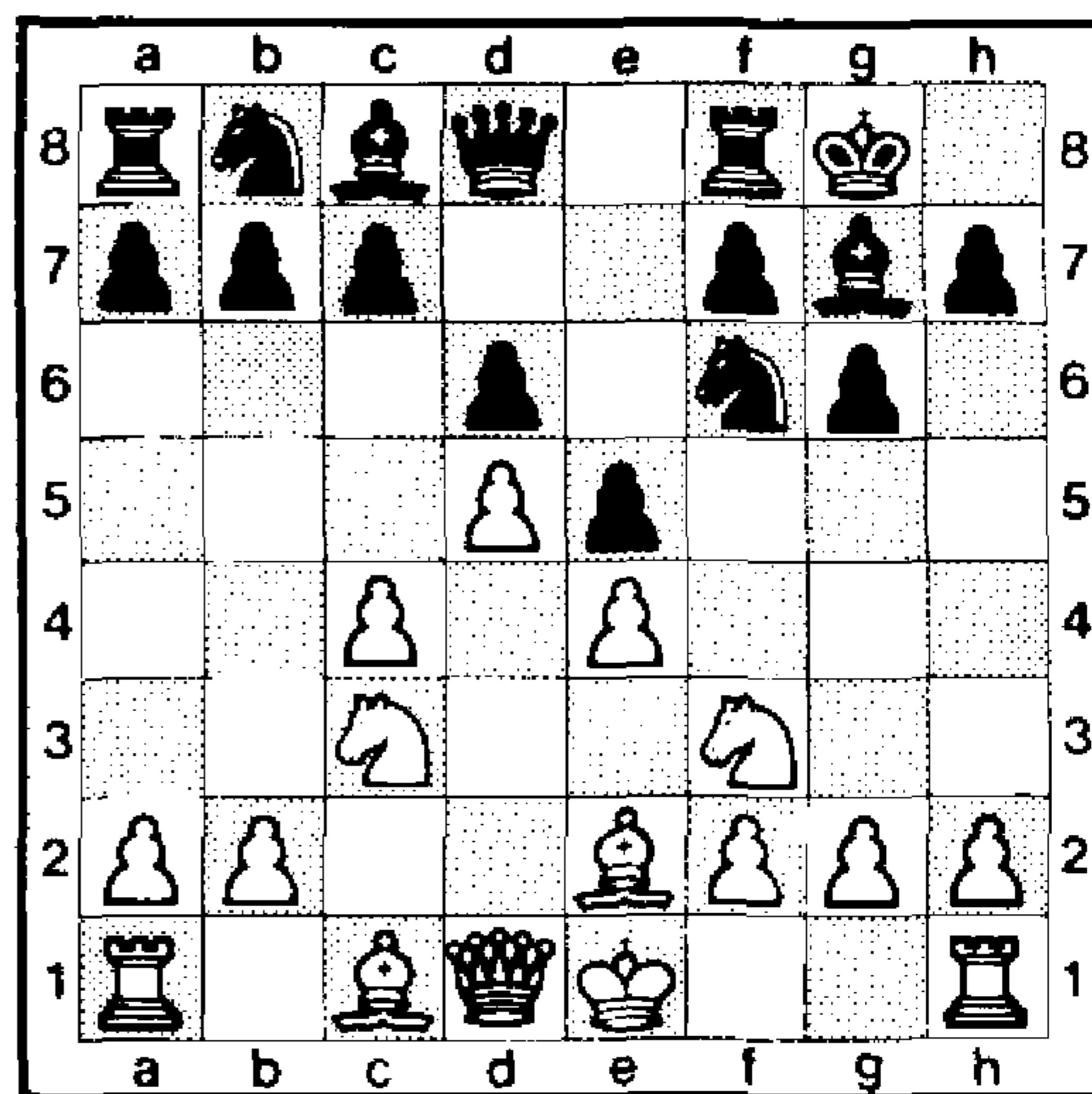
There are by way of exception no supplementary games to this model example, simply because Kasparov's idea is a brand-new one which will of course be taken up by other players at a later date!

A Yusupov – G Kasparov

(World Cup, Barcelona 1989)

1. Nf3	Nf6
2. c4	g6
3. Nc3	Bg7
4. e4	d6
5. d4	0-0
6. Be2	e5

We have already met the Exchange System 7. dxe5. The alternative 7. 0-0 is frequently played but, as we mentioned earlier, almost everyone is unprepared to plunge into the complications of the line against Kasparov. Artur Yusupov, semi-finalist of the 1989 Candidates (he is to meet Karpov), opts for the 'safe' Blockade System to which ex-World Champion Tigran Petrosian made such an important contribution that it is sometimes called the Petrosian System.



7. d5

White stabilises the centre as a prelude to expanding on the Q side with b4 and c5, a plan which proved highly effective in many of Petrosian's games. Black must take immediate counter-measures before launching his own pawn advance (see the moves . . . a5 and . . . Na6).

- 7. . . . a5**
8. Bg5 h6
9. Bh4 Na6

This knight is heading for c5 but does not wish to block the QB by using d7 for this purpose.

- 10. Nd2 Qe8**
11. 0-0 Nh7
12. a3

Preparing Rb1 and b4.

- 12. . . . Bd7**

To answer 13. Rb1? with 13. . . . a4! when 14. b4 axb3 15. Nxb3 b6 followed by 16. . . . Nc5 would give White problems with his weak 'a' pawn.

13. b3

By preventing . . . a4, White is ready to carry out the plan of Rb1 and b4 linked with f3, Bf2 and c5, a typical Petrosian

way of suffocating an opponent. Kasparov, however, manages to overcome Black's apparent problems in surprising fashion.

13. . . . f5!

An attractive solution to his problems, the point of which will not become clear until later. Until this game, the move 13. . . . f5 was considered dubious, because after 14. exf5 Bxf5 15. Nde4 White's control of e4 gives him the better of it. That still applies but . . .

14. exf5

After 14. f3 g5 15. Bf2 Nf6 16. Rb1 Qg6 17. b4 axb4 18. axb4 g4 Black has active play.

- 14. . . . gxf5**
15. Bh5 Qc8!!

This is Kasparov's new idea, as opposed to the old 15. . . . Qb8 16. Be7 Rc8 17. g4! which is good for White.

16. Be7 Re8!

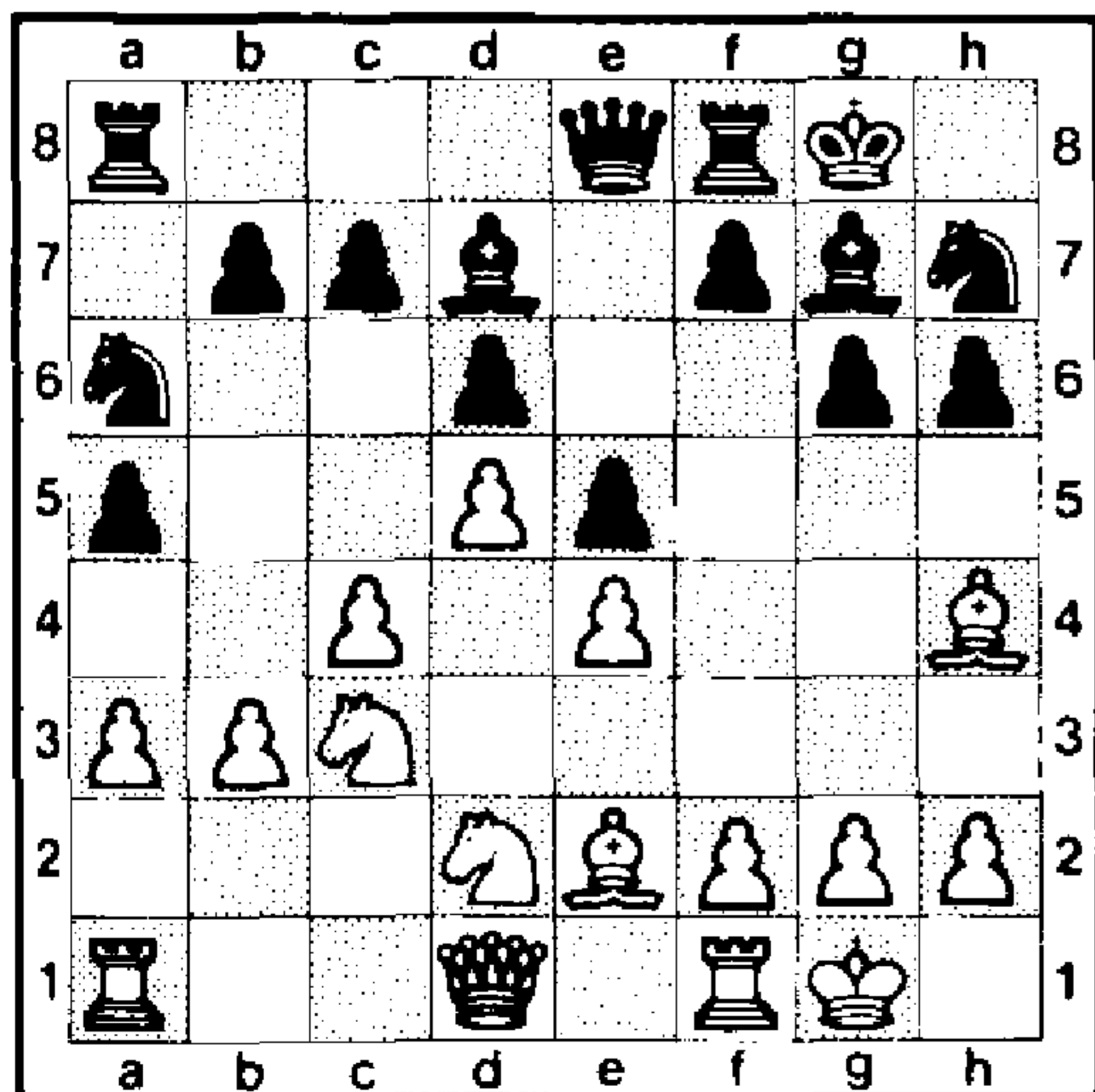
Black gives up the exchange on e8 in order to eliminate White's light-squared bishop and gain time to transfer his queen to the K side.

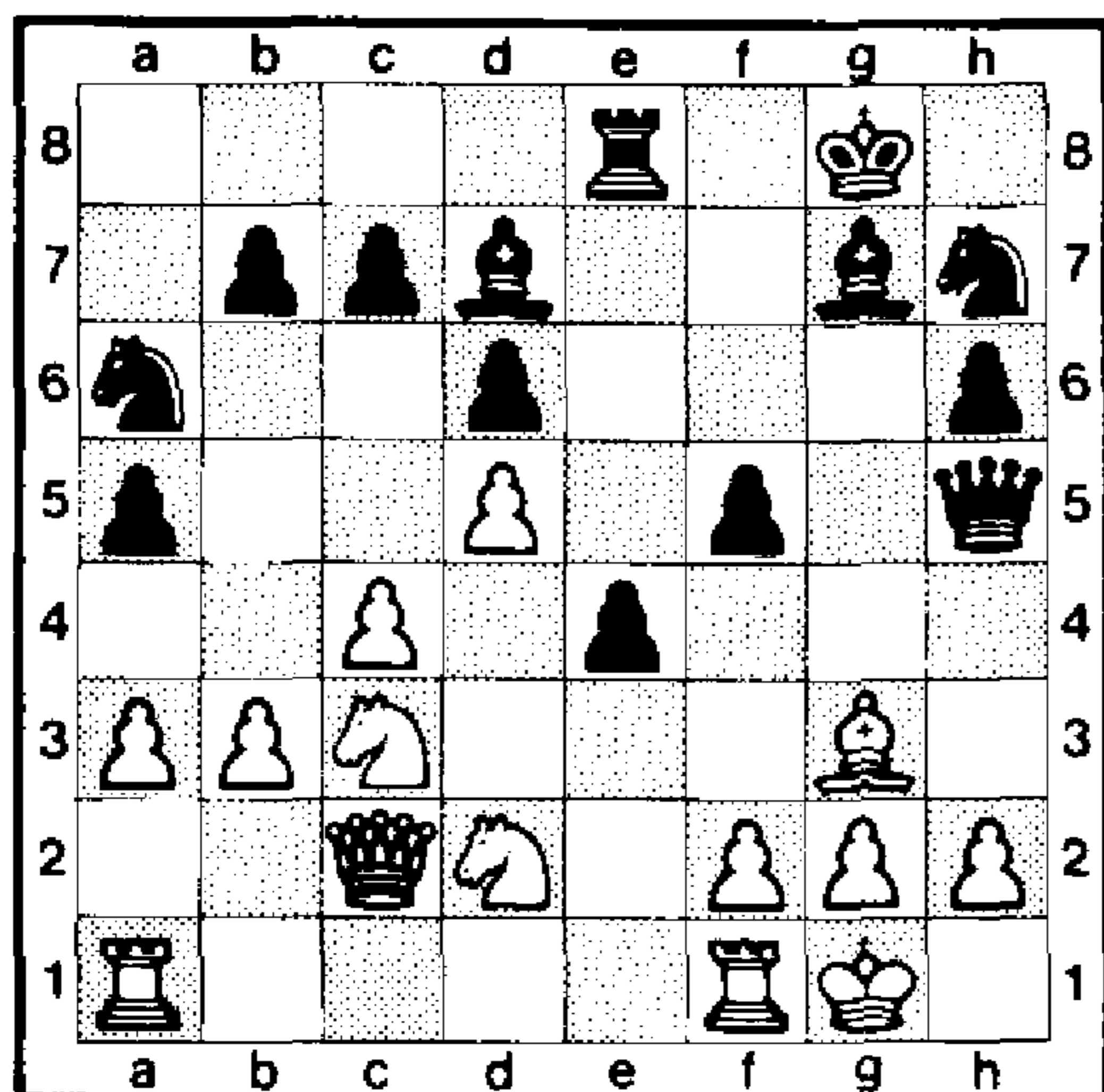
- 17. Bxe8 Qxe8**
18. Bh4 e4
19. Qc2

Yusupov did not relish 19. Rc1 Nc5 followed by . . . Nd3 [although in Naumkin - Kuzmin, Moscow 1989, White obtained a reasonable game after 20. Rc2! Nf8 21. Ne2 Ng6 22. Bg3 Nd3 23. f3 e3 24. Nb1 Nb2 25. Rxb2 Bxb2 26. Re1].

- 19. . . . Qh5**
20. Bg3 Rf8

All Black's pieces are mobilised and the threat is . . . Nc5-d3, which is why White now blockades on f4. If 21. f4 Bd4+ 22. Kh1 (22. Bf2?? e3) 22. . . . Kf7 and . . . Rg8 threatening . . . Rxc3. [There appears to be a good defence here by





23. Rfd1! followed by Nf1. Kasparov gives 21. f4 Nc5 22. Rfd1! Nd3 23. Nf1 Bd4+ 24. Kh1 Nf6 25. Rxd3 exd3 26. Qxd3 Bc5 with unclear play. He also considers White's next move to be an error].

- 21. Bf4 Qg4
- 22. g3 Ng5
- 23. Kh1

After 23. Bxg5 hxg5 followed by ... Kf7 and ... Rh8 Black has a strong attack down the 'h' file, or if here 24. f3 Qh3 25. fxe4 f4! etc.

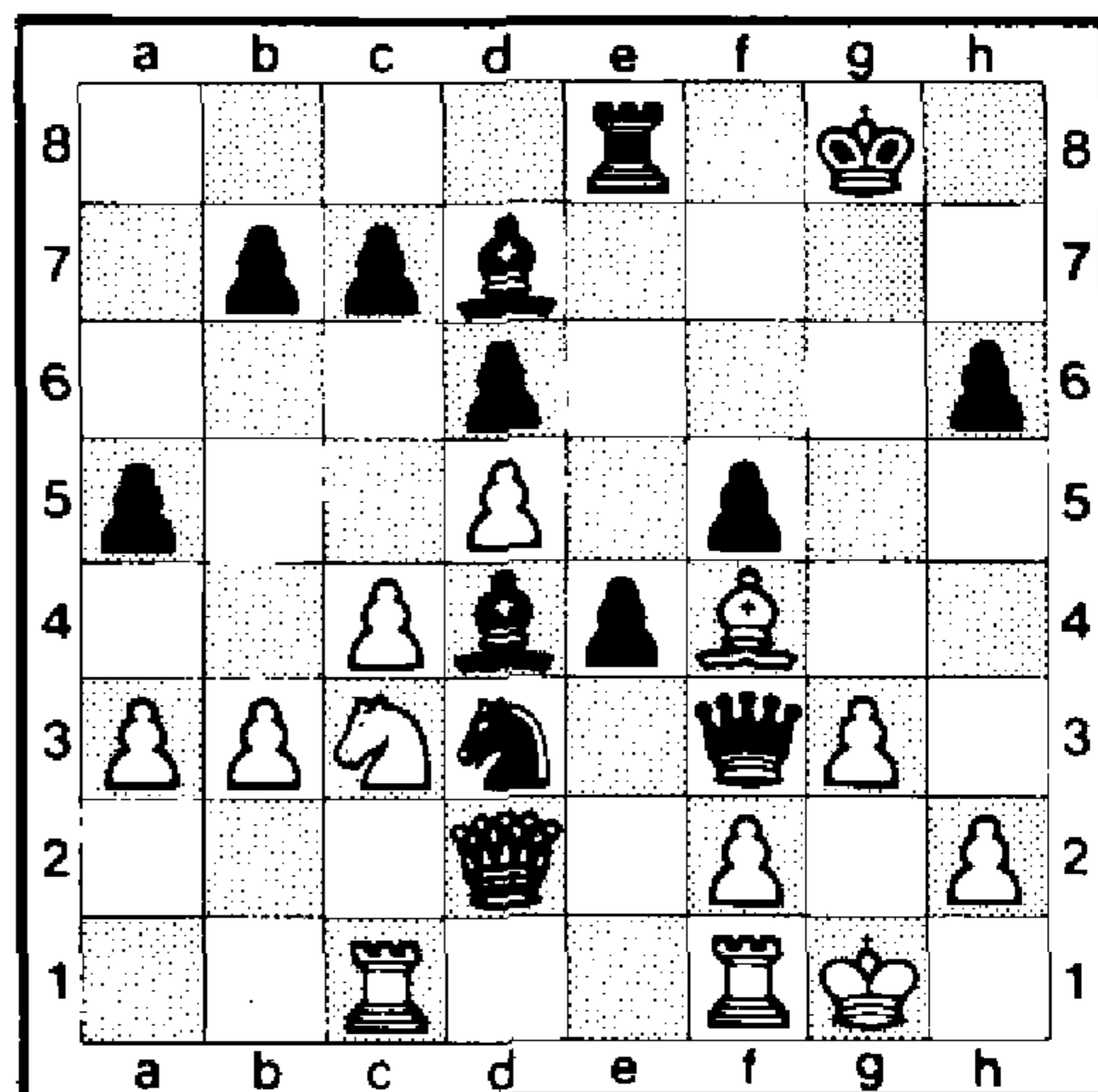
- 23. ... Nf3
- 24. Rac1

Not of course 24. Nxf3 Qxf3+ 25. Kg1 Bxc3.

- 24. ... Nc5
- 25. Nxf3 Qxf3+
- 26. Kg1 Nd3
- 27. Qd2

White offers back the exchange in return for the strong knight but Kasparov will have none of it.

- 27. ... Bd4!

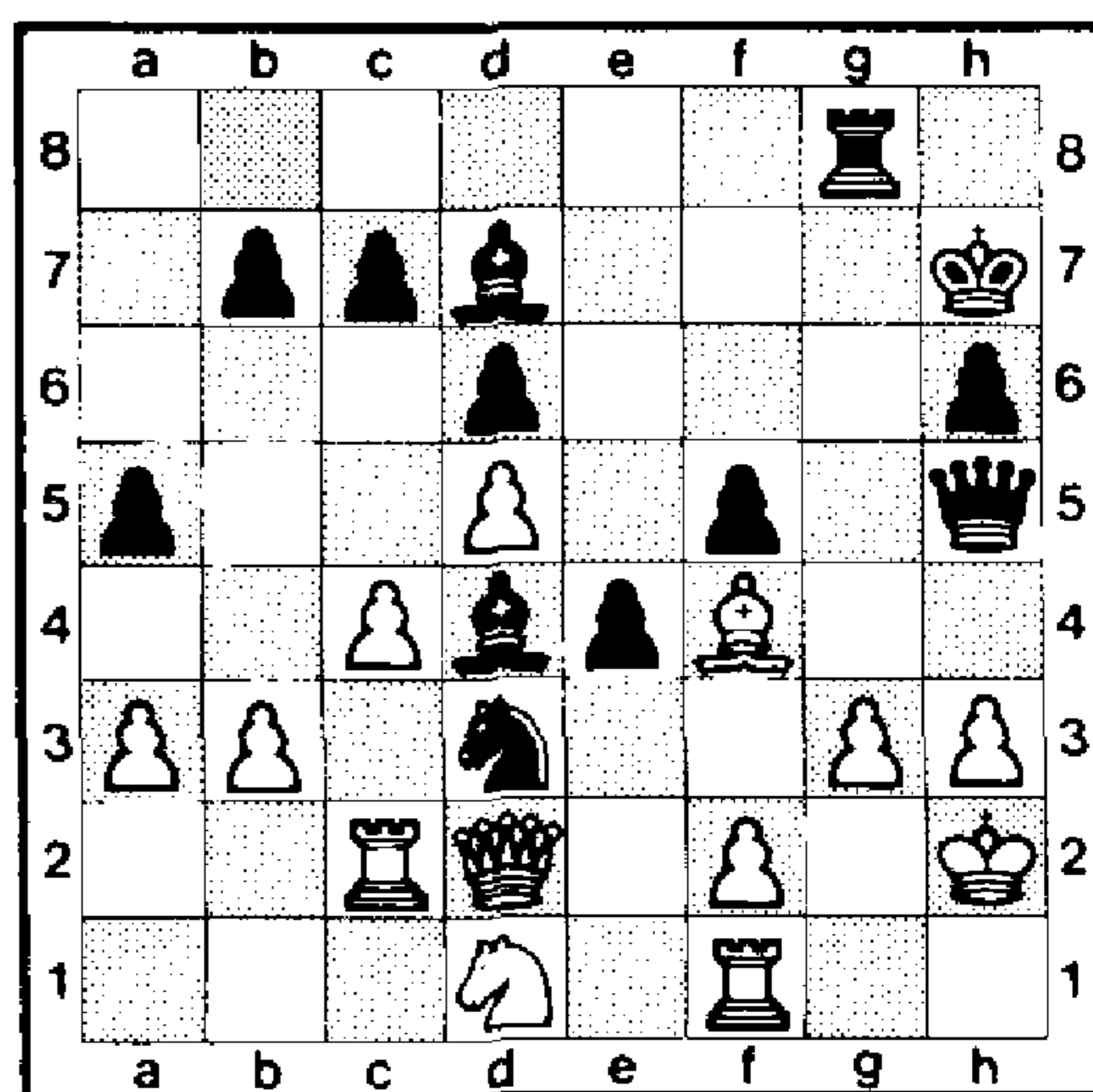


28. Rc2

If 28. Bxh6 f4! followed by ... Bh3 and mate on g2.

28. ... Kh7

The threat of ... Rg8 now forces White's move from the 'g' file. Note that 29. Bxh6 f4! still mates. [Kasparov gives the amusing variation 29. Qe2 Nxf4 30. Qxf3 Nh3+ 31. Kg2 exf3+ 32. Kxh3 f4+ 33. g4 h5 34. Ne4 hxg4+ 35. Kh4 Kg6 followed by ... Rh8 mate].



Position after 31. Nd1

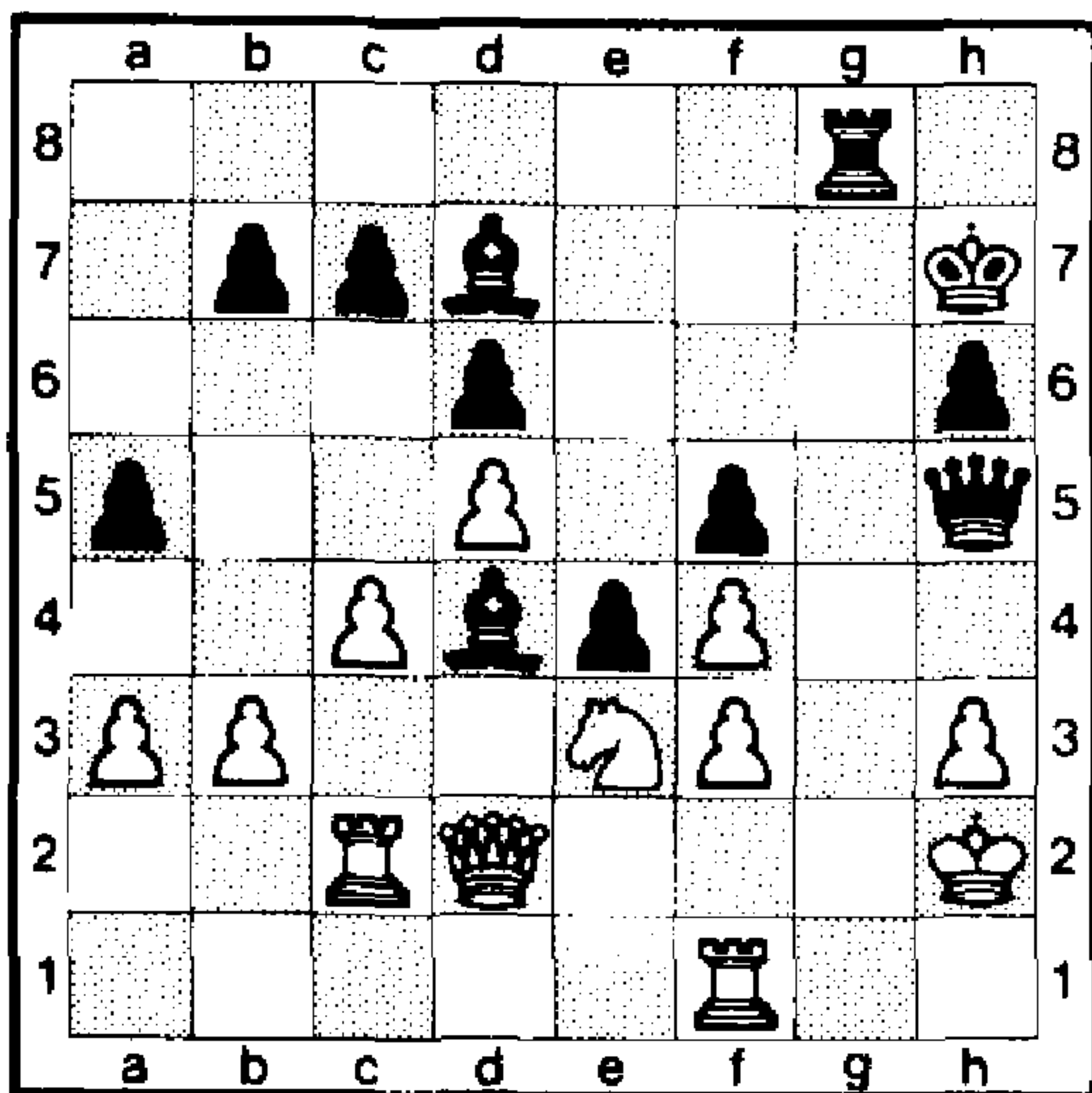
29. h3 Rg8
 30. Kh2 Qh5
 31. Nd1

So far Kasparov has played the attack magnificently but has used up a great deal of thinking time in the process. According to grandmaster Georgadze, he could now have won by 31. . . . Nxf4! 32. Qxf4 (or 32. gxf4 Qg6 33. Ne3 Bxe3 34. fxe3 Qg3+ 35. Kh1 Qxh3+ 36. Qh2 Qxf1+) 32. . . . Be5 33. Qe3 (33. Qd2 f4 34. g4 Bxg4) 33. . . . f4 34. Qxe4+ (34. gxf4 Bxf4+ 35. Qxf4 Qxh3 mate) 34. . . . Bf5 35. Qg2 fxg3+ 36. fxg3 Rxg3 37. Qxg3 Qxh3+! 38. Kg1 Qxg3+ 39. Rg2 Bd4+ 40. Nf2 Qxb3 etc. Even after Kasparov's next move he is still winning but he has lost the thread of the game.

31. . . . Ne5?!
 32. f3 Nd3

Not 32. . . . Nxf3+? 33. Rxf3 Qxf3 34. Qxd4 winning for White. [Kasparov gives 32. . . . Qxf3! 33. Bxe5 Qxf1 34. Bxd4 f4 35. g4 Bxg4 36. hxg4 Rxg4 37. Qf2 Qxd1 winning].

33. Ne3 Nxf4
 34. gxf4



34. . . . Bb6?

The 'Tragedy of Barcelona'! 34. . . . Qh4!! would have forced the win e.g. 35. Qxd4 Rg3! 36. Rg2 Rxh3+ 37. Kg1 Rh1 mate; or 35. Ng2 Qg3+ 36. Kh1 Qxh3 mate; or 35. Rg1 Qxf4+ 36. Kh1 Rxg1+ 37. Kxg1 Bxe3+ winning the queen; or 35. Ng4 fxg4 36. Qg2 gxh3 winning. After this final error, the game swings round in White's favour, with both sides in great time-trouble. The remaining moves were:

35. Qf2 Qg6
 36. Re2 Bc5
 37. fxe4 fxe4
 38. f5 Qh5
 39. Rd2 Rg5
 40. Qf4 Qe8
 41. Ng4 1-0

Time-trouble is over and the game adjourned with White the exchange up. Kasparov quickly decided that the game was lost, so resigned, perhaps glad to get away from a would-be brilliancy he had spoilt! Despite the time-trouble disaster, this remains a wonderful model game for the King's Indian enthusiast.

C The Gligoric System

In the Classical System, after 1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. Nf3 0-0 6. Be2 e5, apart from the moves 7. dxe5 and 7. d5 which we have already discussed and 7. 0-0 which Kasparov's opponents rarely adopt against him, White can maintain the tension in the centre by 7. Be3. This move, first introduced into tournament play by Gligoric, was originally part of Kasparov's repertoire with White, but he has since changed to 7. 0-0. Why has the World Champion lost interest in the move? Perhaps it is because of a variation with which he himself surprised the chess world in

Madrid 1988. Our model game was played in the USSR v 'Rest of the World' Rapid Chess Match on which we commented in Chapter 2.

J Speelman – G Kasparov

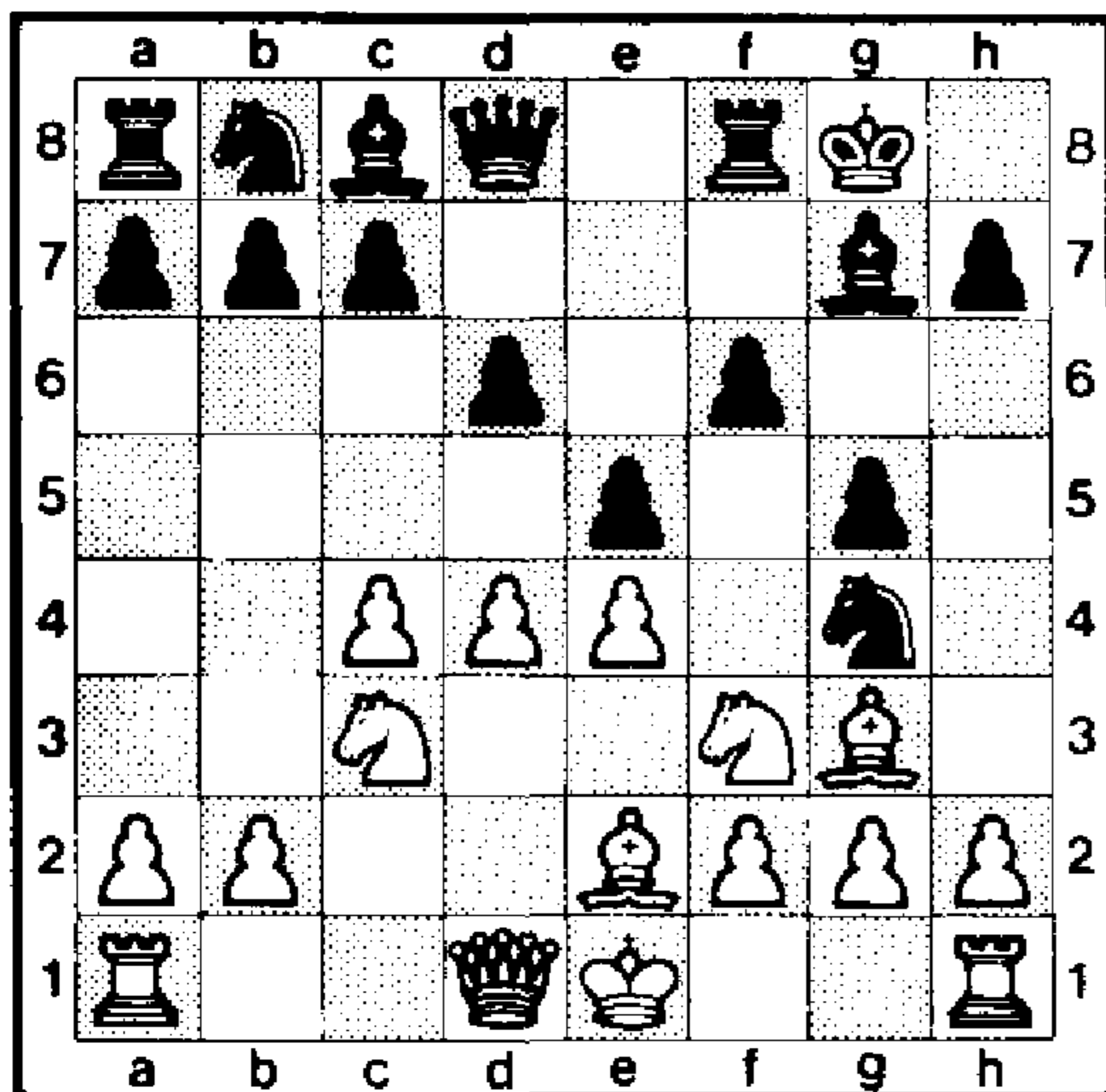
(Madrid, 1988)

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. c4 | g6 |
| 2. e4 | Bg7 |
| 3. d4 | d6 |
| 4. Nc3 | Nf6 |
| 5. Nf3 | 0-0 |
| 6. Be2 | e5 |
| 7. Be3 | Ng4 |

Since pressure down the h8-a1 diagonal, on d4 in particular, is one of the main aims of this defence, the knight move drives the bishop away from control of this point, only to find that Black is then compelled to block the vital diagonal himself temporarily by having to play ... f6.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 8. Bg5 | f6 |
| 9 Bh4 | g5 |
| 10. Bg3 | |

We always see the same mistake 10. ... h5? being made by Black in this position,



hoping to trap the bishop by ... h4, but after 11. h4 with the threat of hxg5 and Rxh5 the move is refuted. Black's plan must involve the active move ... f5 which also threatens to trap the bishop whilst opening the diagonal for his KB. Unfortunately, he cannot immediately play this in view of White's pressure on e5 e.g. 10. ... f5? 11. exf5 exd4 (even worse is 11. ... Bxf5? 12. h3 winning a pawn or, after 12. ... exd4 13. hxg4, a piece) 12. Nxd4 Nh6 13. c5! dxc5 14. Qb3+ Kh8 15. Ne6 Bxe6 16. fxe6 b6 17. Bf3 c6 18. 0-0 followed by Rfe1 and Rad1 with a clear advantage to White. That is why the loose knight on g4 must be moved.

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 10. ... | Nh6 |
|----------------|------------|

Preparing ... f5 e.g. 11. 0-0 f5 12. exf5 g4! (to drive away a piece controlling d4) 13. Ne1 (13. Nh4? exd4 14. Nb5 Bf6!) 13. ... exd4 followed by ... Nf5. If 11. d5 then again 11. ... f5.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 11. h3 | |
|---------------|--|

A cunning move preventing the key move ... g4 in the above variation and thus branding 11. ... f5 as premature after 12. exf5 Nxf5 13. dxe5 Nxf3 (or else a pawn is lost) 14. fxg3 Bxe5 (14. ... dxe5? 15. Qxd8 Rxd8 16. Nxf3) 15. Nxe5 dxe5 16. Qxd8 Rxd8 17. Ne4 h6 18. h4 with advantage to White. However, 11. h3 loses time which Kasparov uses for a little combination.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 11. ... | Nc6 |
| 12. d5 | Nd4! |

A new move instead of the normal ... Ne7.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 13. Nxd4 | exd4 |
| 14. Qxd4 | |

It would be bad to play 14. Nb5 f5 15. exf5 Nxf5 16. Bh2 c6 etc.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------|
| 14. ... | f5 |
| 15. Qd2 | f4 |



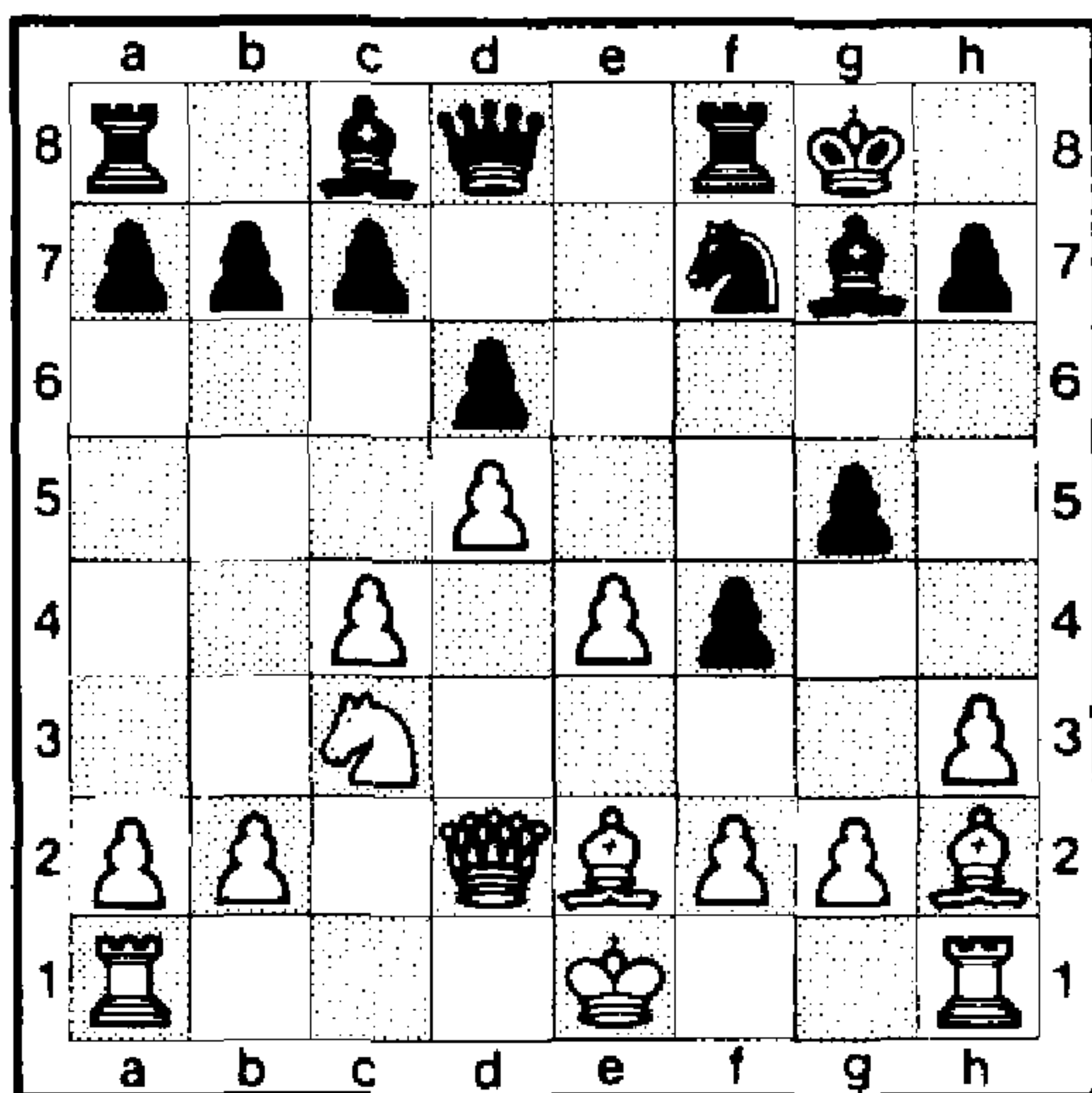
The likeable English grandmaster Jon Speelman managed to qualify for the current World Championship cycle along with Nigel Short whom he beat in the quarter-finals.

16. Bh2

Black now has excellent compensation for the pawn in the shape of the e5 square and White's offside QB.

16. . . . Nf7

Let us linger for a while to consider the natural 17. f3 to activate his passive QB



via g1 and d4. We can see how easy it is for Black to go wrong by quoting the variation 17. . . . Ne5? 18. Bg1 c5 (otherwise White himself plays c5 and Bd4 when Black has nothing for his pawn) 19. dxc6 bxc6 20. 0-0-0 Rf6 21. c5! and White stands better. Instead of the automatic and tempting 17. . . . Ne5, Black needs to take active measures against Bg1-d4 with 17. . . . c5! and now:

- (i) 18. Bg1 Ne5 19. Bf2 Bd7 when White's QB is still passively placed and Black is poised to attack. For example, if White now castles short, Black plays . . . h5 and . . . g4, whilst, if he castles long, . . . a6 and . . . b5 launches a similar attack on the Q side.
- (ii) 18. dxc6 bxc6 19. 0-0-0 Qa5 when the d6 pawn is guarded by the knight on f7 and Black can continue his attack with . . . Be6 and . . . Rab8-b4.

17. h4 h6
18. hxg5 hxg5

19. g3 f3!
20. Bxf3

Otherwise . . . g4 will bury White's QB.

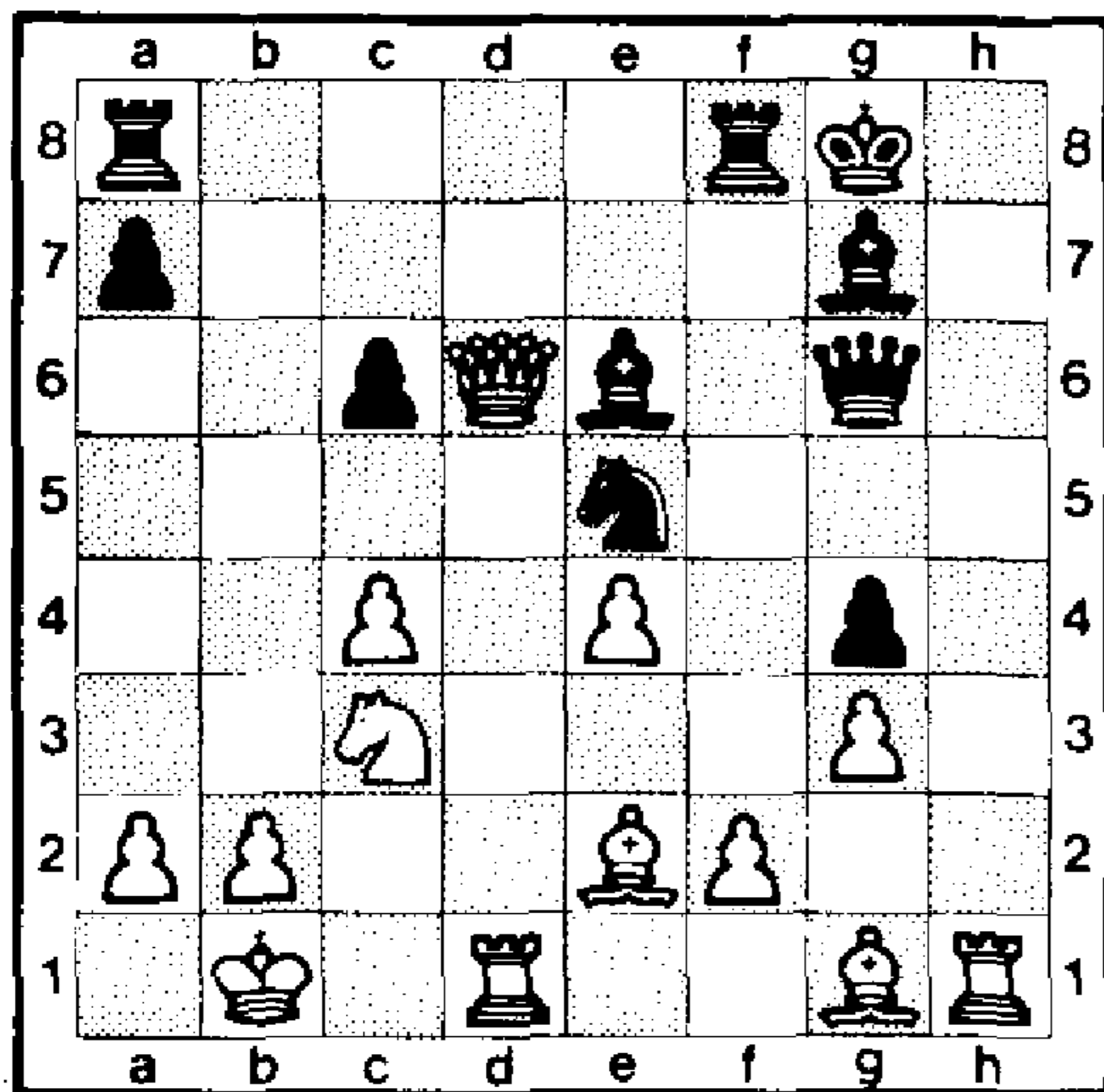
20. . . . Ne5
21. Be2 g4
22. Bg1 c5

Now, after 23. 0-0-0 Black can launch a massive attack with . . . a6, . . . Bd7, . . . b5, . . . Qa5 and . . . Rfb8 with White's KR and QB mere spectators.

23. dxc6 bxc6
24. 0-0-0

Hoping for counterplay down the 'd' file.

24. . . . Be6
25. Qxd6 Qg5+
26. Kb1 Qg6



Black eyes the e4 pawn. To reveal the danger to White, let us assume it is Black to move: 27. . . . Nf7 (opening up the long black diagonal) 28. Qxc6 Bxc3 29. bxc3 Rac8 30. Qa6 (he cannot maintain protection by 30. Qb7 which would lose the queen) 30. . . . Qxe4+ 31. Ka1 Qxh1. That is why White's king now moves away from a possible check from e4.

27. Ka1 Rab8

By his sacrifice of three pawns, Kasparov has crippled his opponent's K side, but Speelman finds a clever use for his otherwise redundant KR.

28. Rh5 Qxh5
29. Qxe6+ Kh8
30. Qe7

White's idea must not be underestimated, since he has enough material for the exchange and, after an exchange of queens by 31. Qh4 Qxh4 32. gxh4, his QB could come into play via h2. If 30. . . . Bf6 to prevent this, then 31. Qxa7 picks up yet another pawn.

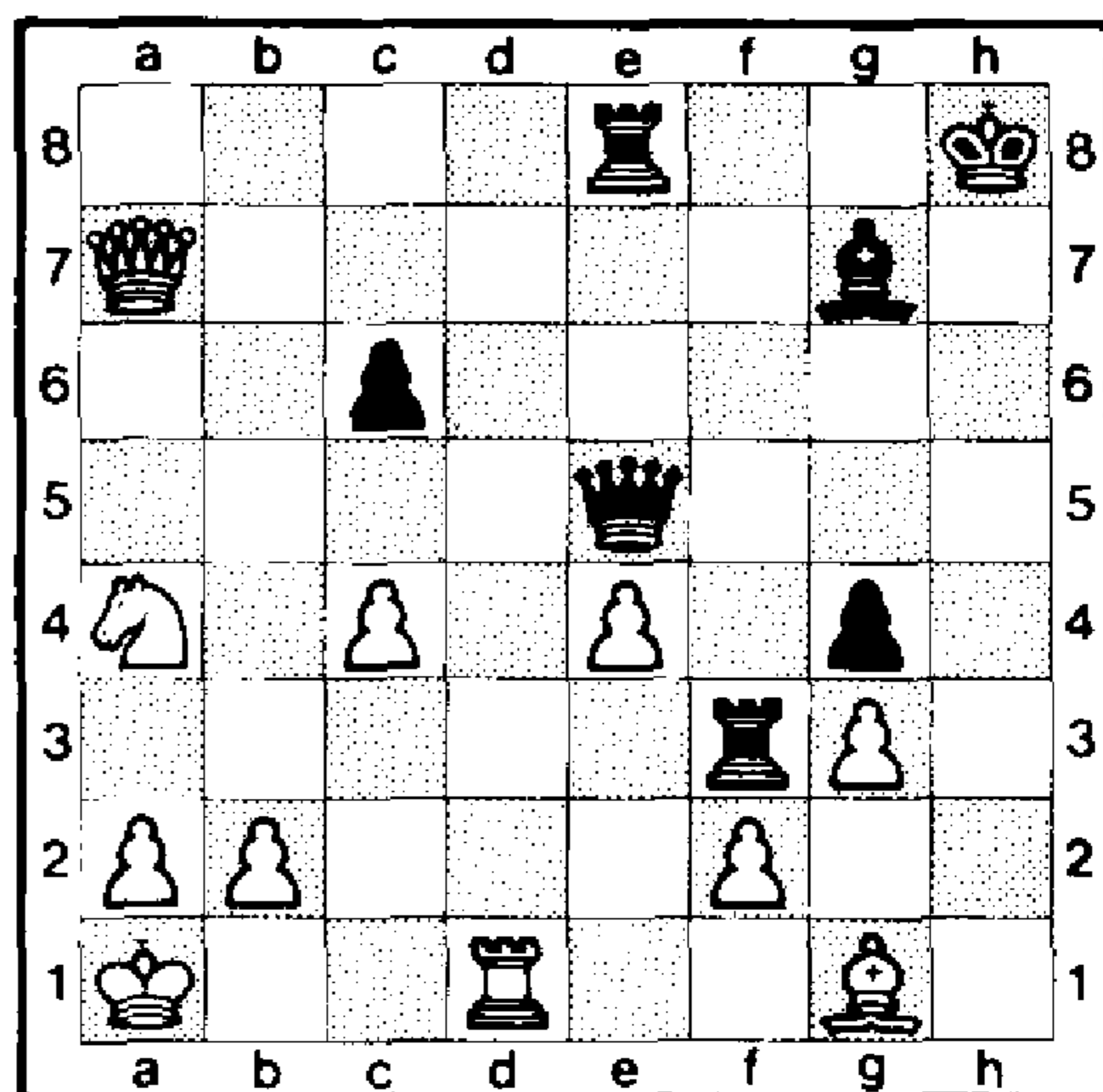
30. . . . Nf3!

Preventing Qh4 and planning to switch his queen to a5 with pressure on c3.

31. Bxf3 Rxf3

Revealing that 32. Qh4 now fails to 32. . . . Qxh4 33. gxh4 Rxc3! 34. bxc3 Bxc3 mate.

32. Na4 Re8
33. Qxa7 Qe5!



A tremendously powerful move. If White now guards e4 with his rook, we have



Kasparov in conversation with his first influential 'coach', ex-World Champion Mikhail Botvinnik.

34. Re1 Ra3! (threatening 35. . . . Rxa4
36. Qxa4 Qxb2 mate) 35. Re2 Rd8! 36.
Nc3 Rxc3 and it is all over.

34. Qb6 Qxe4

35. Qb4 Qc2

36. Rb1 Rd3

37. Qc5

Or 37. a3 (a flight-square for his king!) 37.
. . . Rd1 38. Rxd1 (38. Nc3 Bxc3 39. bxc3
Rxb1+ 40. Qxb1 Qxb1+ 41. Kxb1 Re1+)
38. . . . Qxd1+ 39. Ka2 Qxg1 winning.

37. . . . Re2

38. Qh5+ Kg8

39. Qxg4 Qxb1+!

0-1

(40. Kxb1 Rd1 mate)

D The Sämisch System

Friedrich Sämisch was the first German grandmaster after World War II. He was a most welcome guest at tournaments

not only on account of his playing strength but also as a personality. He was affectionately nicknamed 'Old Fritz', and for hours, even nights, could regale his companions with witty chess anecdotes. No one ever thought ill of this lovable character, even when as an inveterate smoker he continually dropped cigarette ash all over the chess-board!

Sämisch also made significant contributions to chess theory, the most important one being the f3 system against the King's Indian Defence, named after him. The set-up is unassuming but solid, establishing a 'white wall' which is difficult to break down except by powerful tactical measures such as those used by Kasparov in our two model games. In his very early years, in fact, he experienced some difficulties as Black against this system and was unfaithful to his first-love for a while, resorting to Queen's

Gambits and Grünfelds before returning to the King's Indian with positive ideas for combatting the Sämisch. In particular, he discovered an effective way of smashing the f3/e4/d5 pawn chain, as our next two examples demonstrate.

J Timman – G Kasparov
(World Cup, Reykjavik 1988)

- 1. **d4** **Nf6**
- 2. **c4** **g6**
- 3. **Nc3** **Bg7**
- 4. **e4** **d6**
- 5. **f3**

Friedrich Sämisch introduced this move in the twenties. White protects the e4 pawn and prepares to develop his bishop on the natural e3 square, having prevented . . . Ng4. It can also form the basis of a dangerous K side pawn storm in certain situations, with White castling long.

- 5. . . . **0-0**
- 6. **Be3** **e5**
- 7. **d5**

Although the systematic 7. Nge2 has never been refuted, the experts view it with some suspicion and few master games have been played with it recently. White shuts in his KB and Black can rapidly obtain counterplay on the Q side by . . . c6, . . . a6 and . . . b5 (see Supplementary Material game Milos – Vogt).

- 7. . . . **c6**

Black attacks the pawn chain.

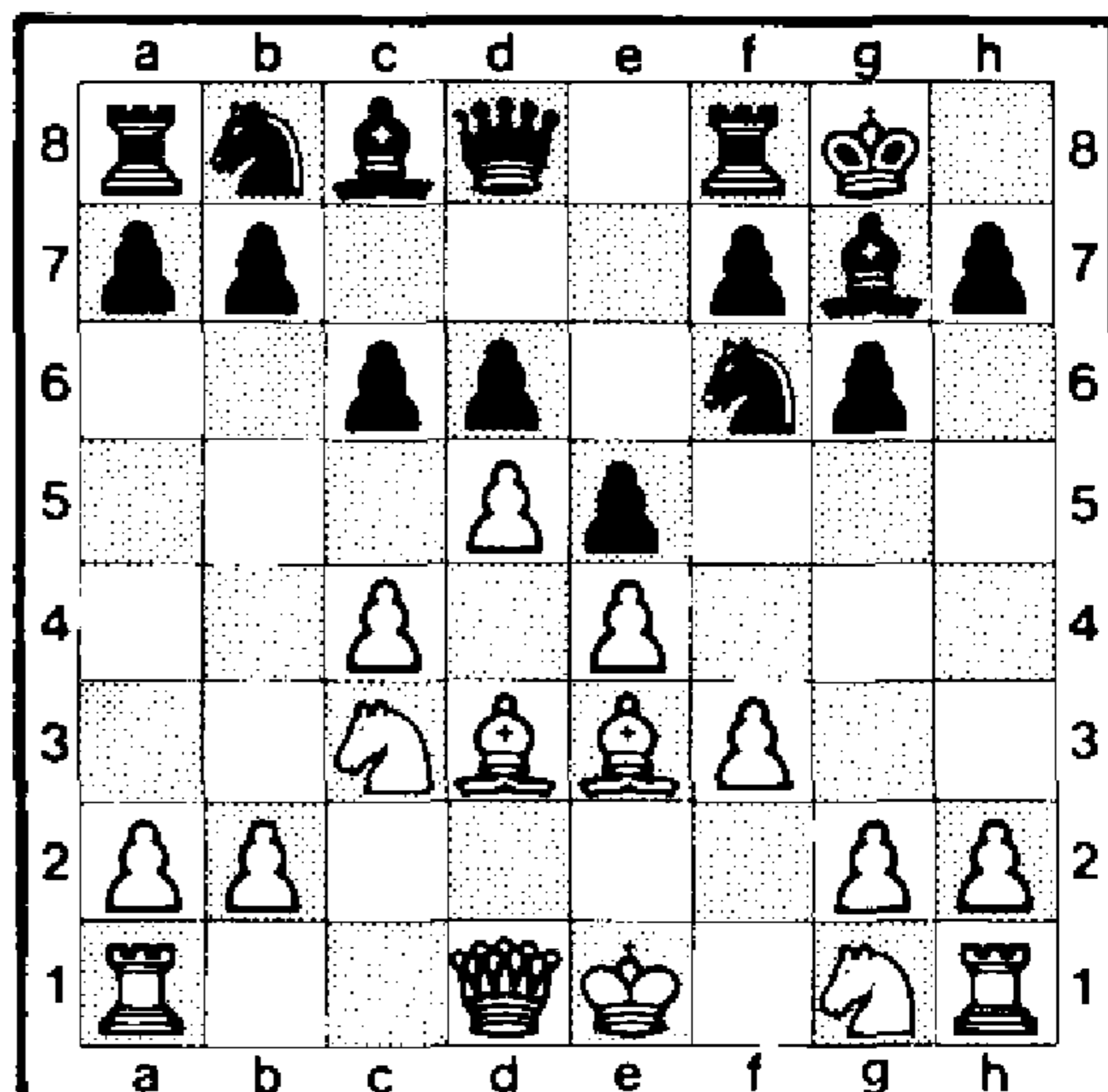
- 8. **Bd3**
(see diagram above)

For the alternative 8. Qd2 see our second model game.

- 8. . . . **b5!**

This gambit is not new but Kasparov improves dramatically on existing theory in this game (see move 10).

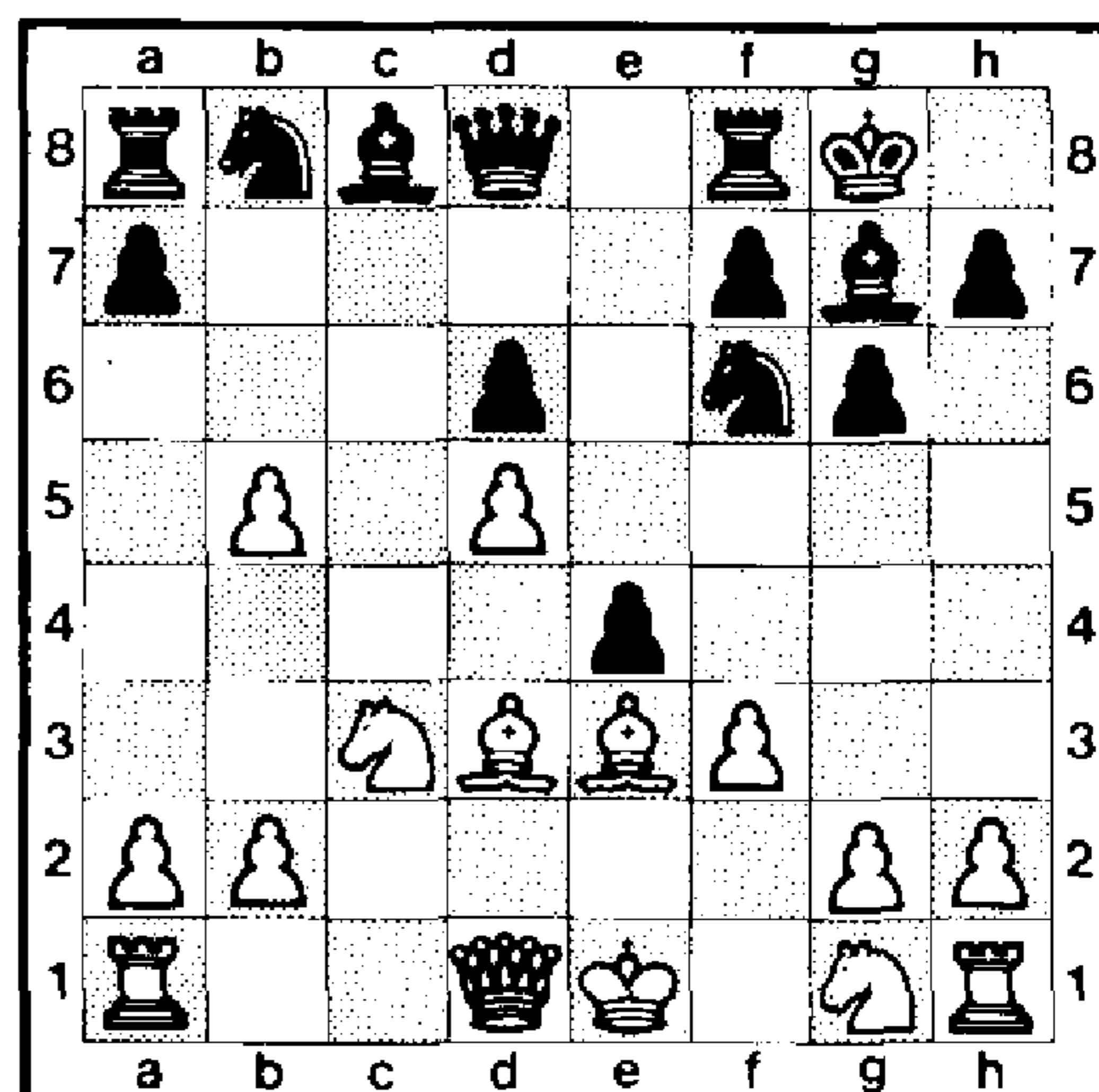
- 9. **cxb5**



White accepts the gambit. After 9. dxc6 bxc4 10. Bxc4 Nxc6 11. Nge2 Na5 12. Bd3 Be6 followed by . . . Nc4 or . . . d5 Black cannot complain.

- 9. . . . **cxd5**
- 10. **exd5**

Or 10. Nxd5 Nxd5 11. exd5 Bb7 and White cannot defend his 'd' pawn by normal means e.g. 12. Bc4?? Qh4+ winning the bishop; or 12. Qb3 Nd7 13.



Ne2 Bh6 14. Bxh6 Qh4+ 15. g3 Qxh6 and, in conjunction with ... Nc5 and/or ... Qe3, Black has very active play.

10. ... e4!

(see previous diagram)

This second pawn sacrifice opens up vital lines for Black's pieces, especially his KB.

11. Nxe4

In *Informant 46* Kasparov gives the following alternatives:

(i) 11. fxe4 Ng4 12. Qd2 (12. Bf4 Qb6 13. Qd2 f5 with an attack) 12. ... f5 13. Nf3 Nxe3 (13. ... Bxc3? 14. bxc3 fxe4 15. Bxe4 Re8 16. 0-0 Rxe4 17. Bd4) 14. Qxe3 f4 15. Qf2 Nd7 16. 0-0 Ne5 17. Nxe5 Bxe5 with good compensation (... g5-g4, ... Qg5 and a K side attack.

(ii) 11. Bxe4 Nxe4 12. fxe4 (12. Nxe4 Bxb2) 12. ... Qh4+ 13. Kd2 (13. g3 Bxc3+ 14. bxc3 Qxe4 15. Qf3 Bf5) 13. ... Nd7 14. Nf3 Qg4 15. Qe2 Re8 and again Black's active play gives him enough compensation.

11. ... Nxd5

What has happened to White's proud pawn centre?

12. Bg5 Qa5+

13. Qd2 Qxd2+

14. Bxd2

Or 14. Kxd2 Be6 followed by ... Nd7 with active play (Kasparov).

14. ... Rxb2

15. Rb1 Bg7

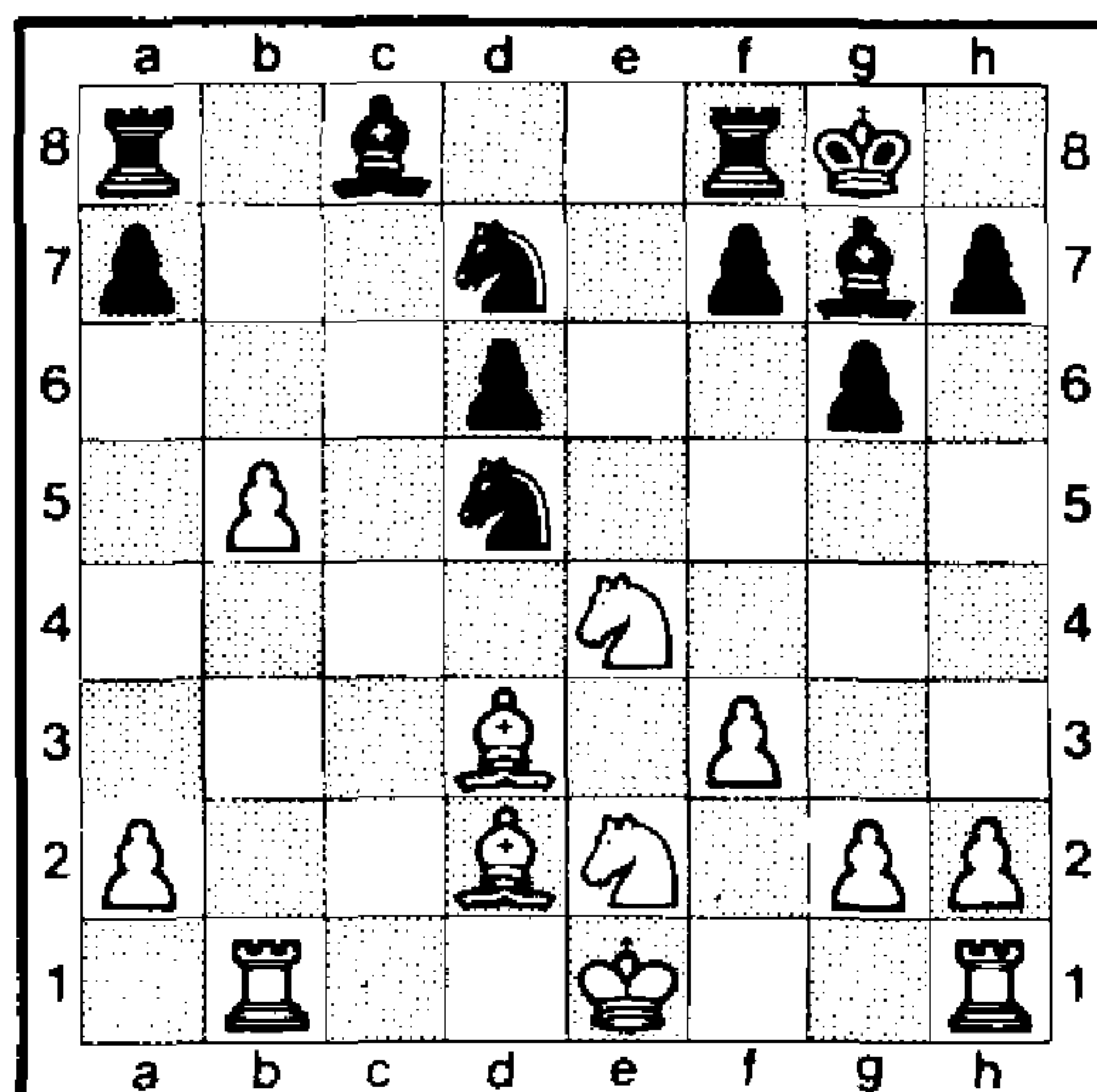
16. Ne2 Nd7

(see diagram above)

White is on the horns of a dilemma: should he take on d6 or complete his development? Kasparov recommends 17. Kf2 Ne5 18. Bc2 Nc4 19. Rbd1 and Bb3 with unclear play.

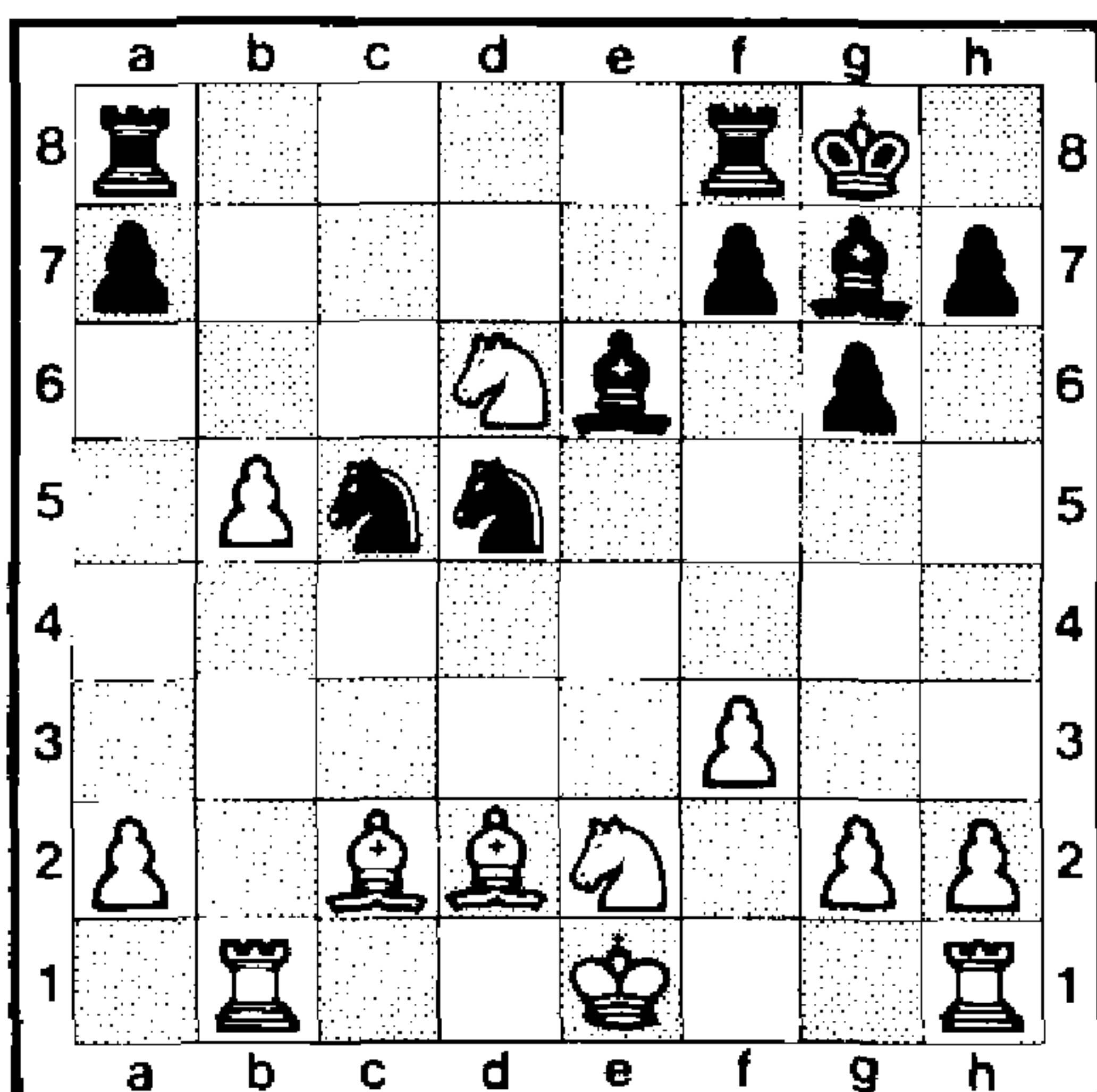
17. Nxd6 Nc5

18. Bc2



If 18. Bc4 Nb6 threatening ... Rd8 and ... Bf8.

18. ... Be6



What is Black's compensation for the pawn? First of all, his centralised knights control vital squares on the third and fourth ranks and can only be dislodged by pieces. This immediately restricts the activity of White's pieces which are having to defend weak points such as c3.

d3 and e3. Secondly, the black bishops dominate the a1-h8 and a2-g8 diagonals, with the QB latently threatening the a2 pawn. In short, White's position is not to be envied . . .

- 19. Ne4 Rac8**
20. 0-0 Nxe4
21. Bxe4 f5
22. Bd3?

By insisting on clinging to his pawn, come what may, White now faces serious problems. He had to simplify, even if this meant giving back the pawn e.g. 22. Bxd5 Bxd5 23. Rbc1 (23. a4 Rc2 24. Rfd1 Re8 25. Nf4 Ba2 26. Rbc1 Bb3) 23. . . . Bxa2 24. Be3, although the ending still favours Black with his bishop pair (Kasparov).

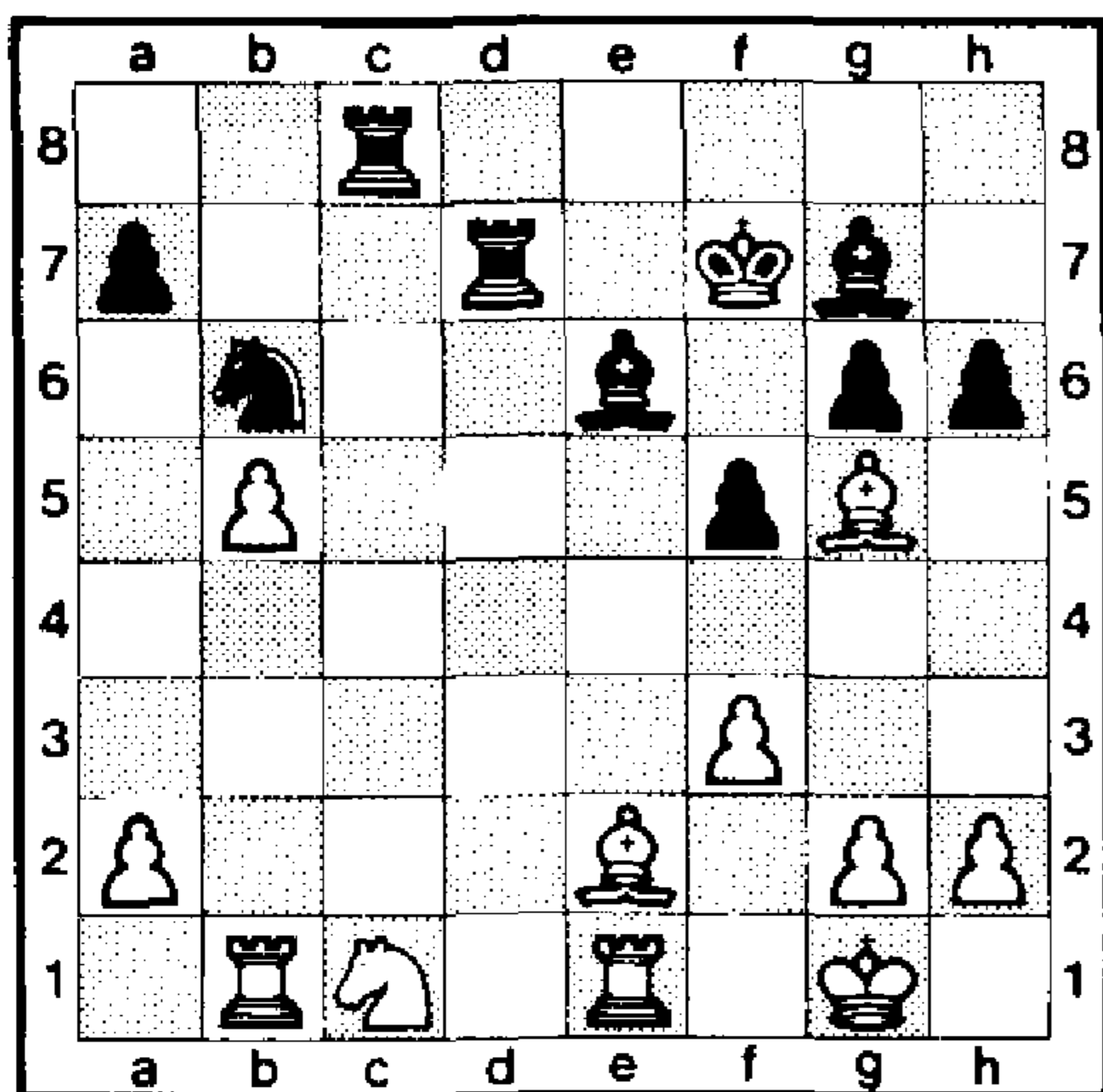
- 22. . . . Nb6**

Activating his QB and threatening . . . Rfd8 as well as the a2 pawn.

- 23. Nc1 Rfd8**
24. Bg5 Rd7
25. Re1 Kf7

Threatening . . . Rxc1 winning two pieces for the rook.

- 26. Be2 h6!**



Kasparov's moves, like those of all strong players, remind one of icebergs whose greatest danger to shipping resides in the nine-tenths hidden beneath the surface. This seemingly innocent pawn move signifies in fact the beginning of the end, as we shall see.

The first point is that 27. Be3 Nd5! 28. Kf2? (to avoid 28. Bf2 Nc3 or 28. Bd2 Rc2 29. Rd1 Bd4+ 30. Kf1 Ne3+) allows 28. . . . Nxe3 29. Kxe3 Bd4+ 30. Kf4 (30 Kd2 Bc3+ + wins a rook) 30. . . . g5+ 31. Kg3 f4 mate! The second point, revealed in the game only in a sub-variation, is that White's QB is in danger of being trapped.

- 27. Bh4 Nd5**

Threatening . . . Nc3.

- 28. Bd1**

Hoping to play this luckless bishop to b3.

- 28. . . . Bd4+!**

[It is interesting that Black could now win the exchange immediately by 28. . . . Bc3 but only at the cost of allowing White the two bishops, so Kasparov plays an even better move which does not win the exchange until both of White's bishops are off the board! The point is that, if White tries to avoid this by 29. Kh1? the hidden trap is sprung with 29. . . . g5 30. Bg3 f4 31. Nb3 Bb6, a line given by Kasparov].

- 29. Bf2 Bxf2+**
30. Kxf2 Nc3
31. Bb3 Bxb3

Not of course 31. . . . Nxb1?? 32. Bxe6+.

- 32. Rxb3 Nd1+**

Black's constant pressure has borne fruit and White is forced to concede the exchange which is practically equivalent to resignation.

- 33. Rxd1 Rxd1**
34. Nd3 Rd2+
35. Ke3

Or 35. Kg3 Rcc2 36. Ne1 (36. Nf4 g5) 36. . . . Rxa2 followed by . . . Re2 winning easily.

35. . . . Rxc2?!

According to Kasparov, 35. . . . Rxa2 would have been far simpler.

36. Ra3 Re8+
37. Kd4 Re7
38. Ne5+ Kf6
39. Nc6

Or 39. Ra6+ Re6 (Kasparov).

39. . . . Rd7 |
40. Kc4 Rc2+
41. Kb4 Rxh2
42. Ra6 Kg5
43. a4 h5
44. Rxa7 Rxa7
45. Nxa7 h4
0-1

After 46. Kc3 Re2 47. b6 Re8 or 46. b6 Rb2+ 47. Ka5 Rxb6 48. Kxb6 h3, Black's pawn queens (Kasparov).

F Gheorghiu – G Kasparov
(Olympiad, Thessaloniki 1988)

1. d4 Nf6
2. c4 g6
3. Nc3 Bg7
4. e4 d6
5. f3 0-0
6. Be3 e5
7. d5 c6
8. Qd2

Hoping to gain an important tempo if Black now tries the same gambit as in the previous game e.g. 8. . . . b5?! 9. dxc6 bxc4 10. Bxc4 Nxc6 11. Rd1 already applying pressure on the d6 pawn.

8. . . . cxd5
9. cxd5 Nbd7
10. Nge2 a6
11. Nc1

The aim of this move is not only to free his KB but to answer 11. . . . b5 with 12.

b4 Nb6 13. Nb3 intending Na5 and a later a4.

11. . . . Nh5

This time the attack on White's centre comes via . . . f5.

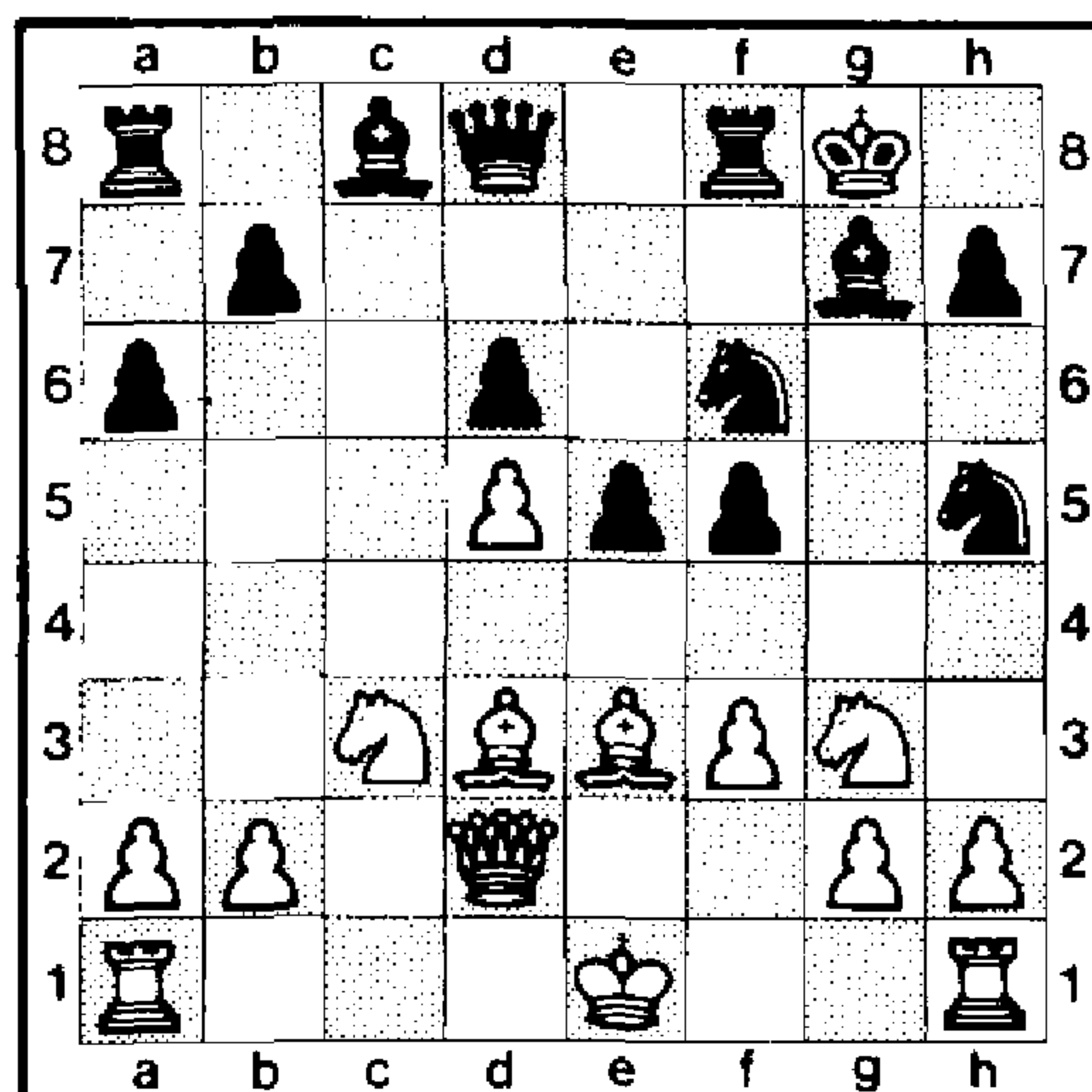
12. Bd3 f5

13. N1e2 Ndf6

Now if White castles long, Black will attack by . . . b5, . . . Bd7, . . . b4, . . . Qa5 and . . . Rfc8, whereas castling K side will lead to an attack by 14. . . . f4 15. Bf2 g5 (threatening . . . g4) 16. h3 Nd7 planning . . . Nhf6, . . . h5 and . . . g4.

14. exf5 gxf5

15. Ng3



All this is known theory, as is the continuation 15. . . . f4? 16. Nxh5 fxe3 17. Nxf6+ winning a pawn, or here 16. . . . Nxh5 17. Bf2 with advantage to White in view of his strong-point on e4. Kasparov now uses the same idea we saw in his game with Speelman: he sacrifices a pawn on e4, thus denying the square to any white pieces, then plays . . . f4 creating his own strong-point on e5.

15. . . . e4!

16. Nxf5

Or 16. fxe4 f4! 17. Bxf4 (17. Nxf5 Nxf5 18. Bf2 Bg4 transposing to the game) 17. . . . Nxf4 18. Qxf4 Nxe4 19. Qc1 (19. Qxe4 Re8) 19. . . . Nxc3 20. bxc3 Qf6 21. Ne4 Qe5 with a powerful attack (. . . Bf5 and . . . Rae8).

16. . . . Nxf5

17. fxe4

White cannot allow the catastrophic 17. Bc2 f4 18. Bd4 e3 followed by . . . Qh4+.

17. . . . f4

18. Bf2 Bg4

19. h3 Bd7

Now White can hardly castle K side in the face of an attack by . . . Be5, . . . Kh8 and . . . Rg8.

20. 0-0-0 Be5

21. Kb1 Qf6

22. Be2 Ng3

23. Bxg3 fxg3

24. Bf3 Rac8

25. Ne2 Qg6?!

According to Kasparov, 25. . . . Rc5! was even stronger e.g. 26. Rc1 (26. Nd4 Rfc8 with the idea of . . . Bxd4 and . . . Rc1+!) 26. . . . Rfc8 27. Rxc5 Rxc5, as he gives in *Informant 46*.

26. Rc1 Rxc1+

27. Qxc1

Or 27. Nxc1 Rxf3 28. gxf3 g2 29. Rg1 Bxh3 30. Ne2 Bh2 winning back the exchange.

27. . . . Rc8

28. Qe3?

He should play 28. Qd2 Qf6 when Black is a little better, according to Kasparov.

28. . . . Qf6

29. Qd2 Rc5

30. Nc1?

Time-trouble. 30. Rc1 Bxh3 31. Rxc5 dxc5 was good for Black, but the passive text move is hopeless.

30. . . . Bf4

31. Qb4 Bb5

32. Nb3 Bd3+

33. Ka1 Rc2

34. Rb1

Or 34. Qd4 Be5! 35. Qxd3 Rxb2! followed by a deadly discovered check.

34. . . . Be5

35. Nc1 Bxb2+

36. Qxb2 Qxb2+!

37. Rxb2 Rxc1+

38. Rb1 Rxb1 mate

Supplementary Material

G Milos – L Vogt

(Havana, 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 g6 3. Nc3 Bg7 4. e4 d6 5. f3 0-0 6. Be3 e5 7. Nge2 c6 8. Qd2 Nbd7 9. 0-0-0 a6 10. Kb1 b5 11. Nc1 Qe7 12. dxe5 dxe5 13. Qd6 Qxd6 14. Rxd6 Bb7 15. Nb3 Rfc8 16. Na5 Rab8 17. cxb5 axb5 18. Nxb7 Rxb7 19. Be2 Bf8 20. Rd2 Bc5 21. Bxc5 Nxc5 22. Rc1 Rbc7 23. Nd1 Ne6 24. Nf2 Nd7 25. Nd3 c5 26. Bf1 Nd4 27. Ne1 c4 28. f4 Ne6 29. fxe5 Nxe5 30. Nf3 Ng4 31. Re1 b4 32. h3 Nf6 33. Ne5 c3 34. Rf2 Kg7 35. Bd3 Nc5 36. Bc2 Re8 37. Nf3 Nfxe4 38. Rfe2 f5 39. g4 Kf6 40. gxf5 gxf5 41. Rf1 Nd2+ 42. Rxd2 cxd2 43. Nxd2 Re5 44. b3 Rce7 45. Rf4 Rd5 46. Nc4 Re1+ **0-1**

8 Black Against Other Systems

In the arena where Kasparov fights his battles, openings such as 1. f4, 1. b4, 1. b3 etc. are in fact only played occasionally. However, the average club player frequently meets these and other less common openings and, as many participants at the author's coaching sessions have affirmed, they do find problems dealing with them. It is normal to hear statements such as: 'So and so always plays a peculiar opening system, the name of which escapes me at the moment, and I'm never sure what's best to play against it.' That is why we thought it appropriate to include this chapter.

Since, as White, Kasparov exclusively uses standard opening moves (usually 1. d4, as we have pointed out), we see him as Black in our four model games facing Bird's Opening (1. f4), the Queen's Pawn Opening, the Double Fianchetto Opening and (perhaps the most commonly played of the four) the universal King's Indian Attack. Advocates of the Sokolsky (1. b4) and the Grob (1. g4) openings can breathe a sigh of relief: so far Kasparov has not been called upon to 'refute' these!

If we appear to be a little more verbose in this chapter, it is not verbal diarrhoea on our part but rather because in these particular openings the two sides tend to develop their forces quietly behind their lines, without any immediate tactical clash in the centre (e.g. 1. g3, 2. Bg2, 3. Nf3, 4. 0-0 5. d3, 6. Nbd2), which necessarily entails more explanation of general strategic plans than presentation of concrete variations.

A Bird's Opening

The Englishman Henry E Bird (1830–1908), one of the first professional chess-players of the nineteenth century 'Romantic Era', had few tournament successes. However, he is well-known on two counts: firstly because in the New York 1876 tournament he won the first Best Game Prize in chess history for his game against Mason, and secondly because of his adoption of 1. f4 which still bears his name.

Until now, Kasparov has only met this opening once and even this was in abnormal circumstances, in a simultaneous game played when he was twelve years old against an International Master, later to become a Grandmaster, Oleg Romanishin. This was in fact the only game he lost!

O Romanishin – G Kasparov

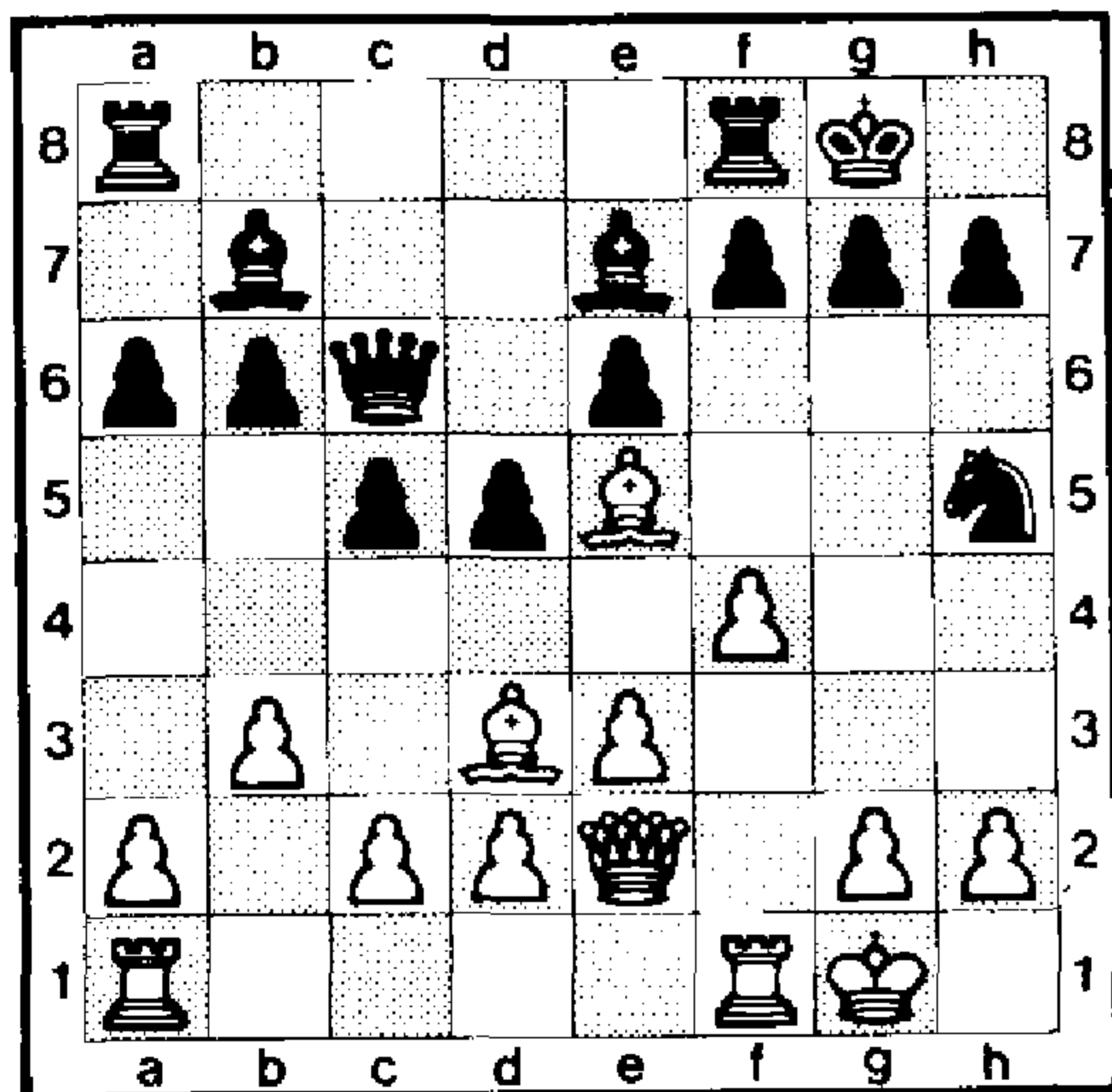
(Leningrad, 1975 – Simultaneous Exhibition)

1. f4	d5
2. Nf3	Nf6
3. e3	Bg4
4. b3	

In Bird's Opening, the development of White's QB on b2, controlling the key e5 square, plays a leading role. The historically important game **Lasker – Bauer**, played a century ago in 1889, was a successful illustration of this idea. The World Champion of 1894 to 1921 was at that time only twenty years old but already a very strong player.

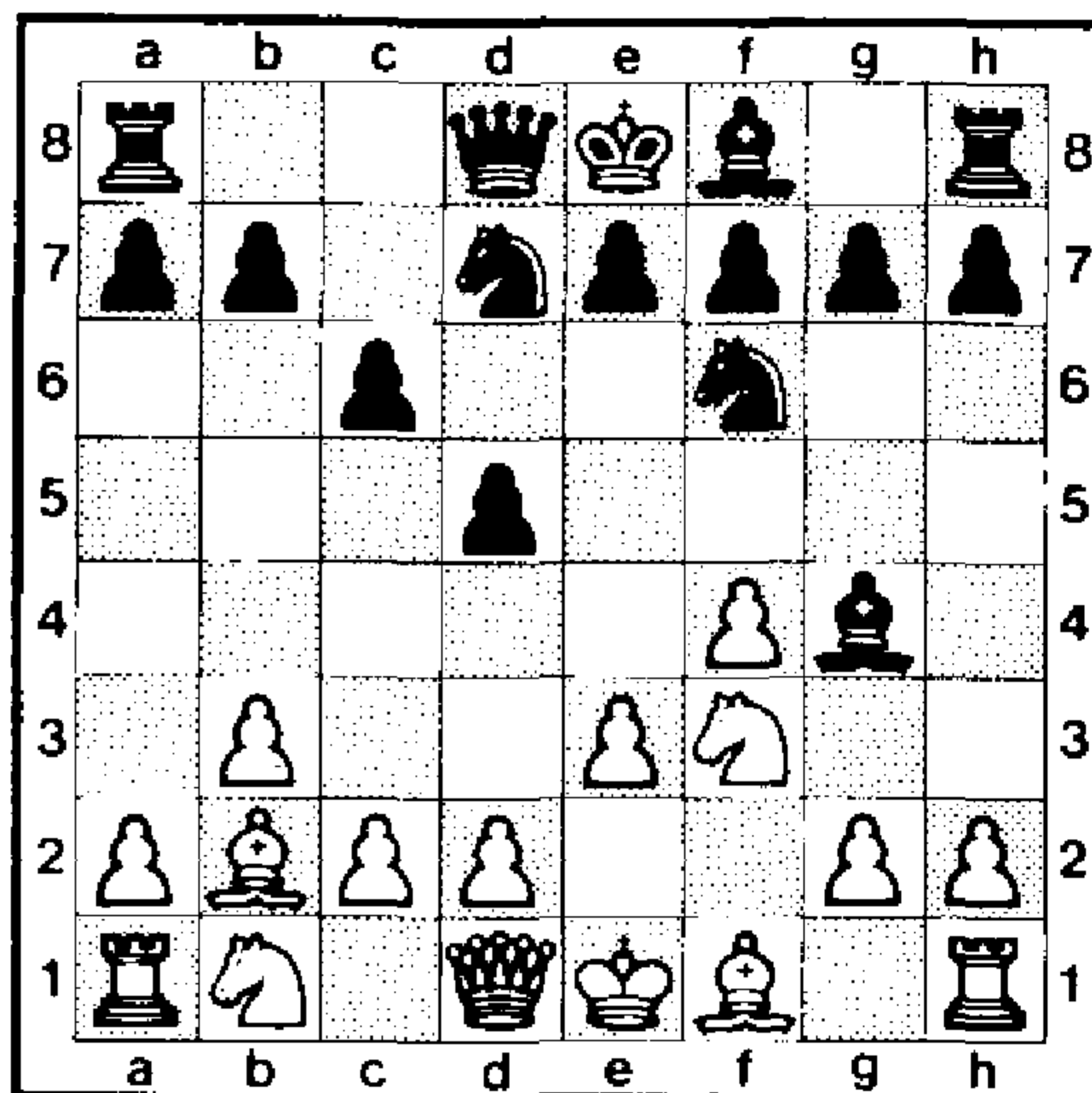
We give the game here for comparative

purposes but it is also a splendid effort, containing the famous two bishops sacrifice which was later to see many emulators. 1. f4 d5 2. e3 Nf6 3. b3 e6 4. Bb2 Be7 5. Bd3 b6 6. Nf3 Bb7 7. Nc3 Nbd7 8. 0-0 0-0 9. Ne2 c5 10. Ng3 Qc7 11. Ne5 Nxe5 12. Bxe5 Qc6 13. Qe2 a6 14. Nh5 Nxh5.



15. Bxh7+!! Kxh7 16. Qxh5+ Kg8 17. Bxg7!! Kxg7 18. Qg4+ Kh7 19. Rf3 e5. He must give up his queen to prevent mate, but White has planned to regain some material. 20. Rh3+ Qh6 21. Rxh6+ Kxh6 22. Qd7! Bf6 23. Qxb7 Kg7 24. Rf1 Rab8 25. Qd7 Rfd8 26. Qg4+Kf8 27. fxe5 Bg7 Or 27. . . . Bxe5 28. Qe6. 28. e6 Rb7 29. Qg6 f6 30. Rxf6+ Bxf6 31. Qxf6+ Ke8 32. Qh8+ Ke7 33. Qg7+1-0 Historical duels such as this form part of the 'home-work' of any aspiring master. In our model game, Kasparov reveals 'a note-worthy positional maturity for a twelve year old' (Botvinnik). He strategically gears his set-up to counter White's control over the key e5 square.

4. . . . Nbd7
5. Bb2 c6!



A position for the reader to remember. All Black's moves are played to challenge the control of e5: the purpose of . . . Bg4 is to remove White's KN, then the QN going to d7 and the queen to c7 complete the preparations for playing . . . e5 himself! All these moves are logical but why . . . c6 rather than . . . c5? The point is that, once Black has played . . . Bxf3 and White has recaptured with his bishop, if . . . c5 had been played White could increase the scope of this bishop by playing c4. Hence the importance of setting up the b7/c6/d5 barrier.

6. Be2 Qc7
7. 0-0

After this move Black can carry out the above-mentioned plan in exemplary fashion. Let us briefly examine the alternative 7. Ne5 Bxe2 8. Qxe2 e6 9. 0-0 Bd6. Now White's only means of controlling e5 is by the ugly 10. d4 when Black can immediately occupy the 'hole' created on e4 by . . . Ne4 followed by . . .

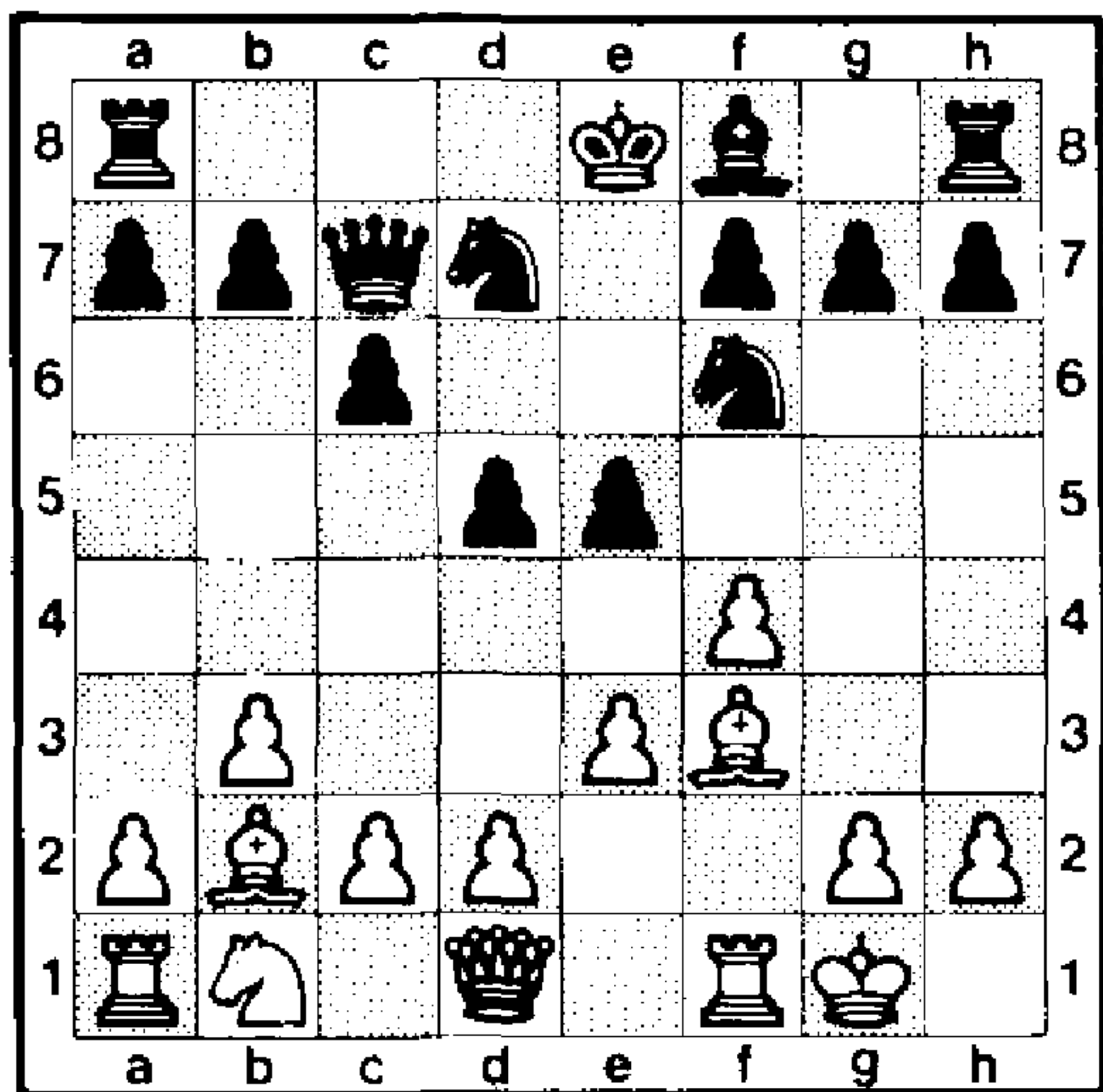
Ndf6. If here 10. Nxd7 Black cunningly answers 10... Kxd7! e.g.

(i) 11. Bxf6 gxf6 12. d3 Rag8 13. Nd2 h5 with active play on the K side. Black's king is safe enough in the centre and can always carry out 'artificial castling' by... Kc8-b8 if need be.

(ii) 11. d4 secures e5 but after 11... Ne4 12. Nd2 Nxd2 13. Qxd2 f5 followed by... Rag8 and... g5, Black stands well.

(iii) 11. d3 continues development but after 11... e5 Black cannot complain.

7.... Bxf3
8. Bxf3 e5



The opening phase is over and Black is well placed. White must now settle for small crumbs and play 9 fxe5 Nxe5 10. Nc3 Bd6 (threatening... Nxf3+ and... Bxh2+) 11. Be2 when he can perhaps maintain the equilibrium.

However, we must not forget that such a continuation is hardly appealing to a simultaneous player! As is usual in

such cases, Romanishin decides to complicate matters in the hope of provoking an error from the twelve year old. Little did he know...

9. d3? Bd6
10. g3 0-0-0
11. c4

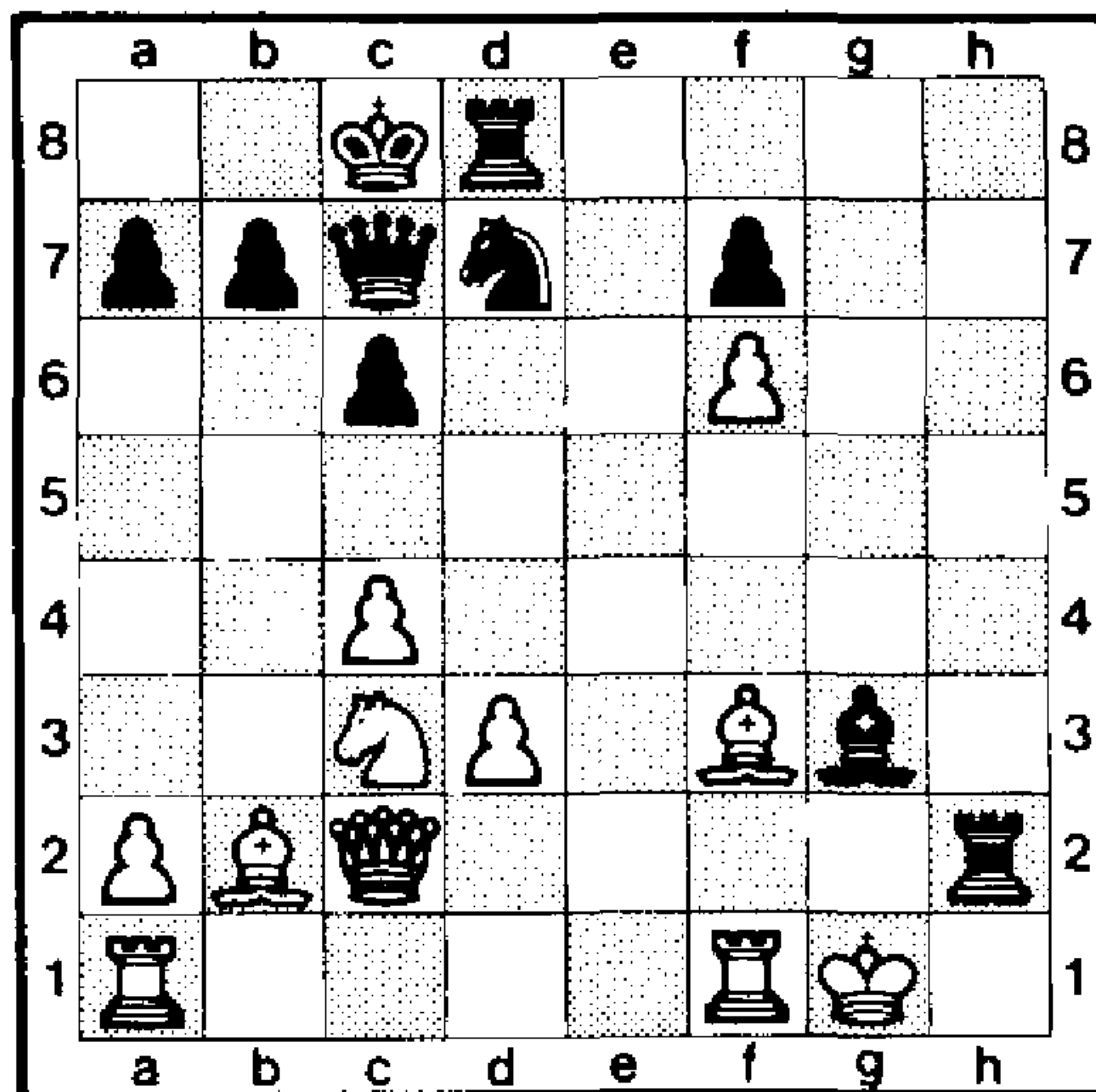
Black welcomes the opening of the 'd' file, so the more modest 11. Nd2 was preferable.

11.... dxc4
12. bxc4 h5!

In view of the ideal placing of his queen and bishop, Black can easily attack White's weakened K side by... h4 and a later... g5.

13. Qc2 h4
14. Nc3 hxg3
15. hxg3 exf4
16. exf4 g5!!

Now, after 17. fxg5 Bxg3! 18. gxf6 Rh2! Black wins e.g.



(i) 19. Bg2 Qb6+ 20. Rf2 Bxf2+ 21. Qxf2 (21. Kxh2 Qc7+ mates in a few moves) 21... Rg8!! and... Rxf2+ wins.



The Soviet grandmaster Oleg Romanishin is well known in West Germany where he has often participated in the Dortmund GM tournament.

(ii) 19. Qb3 (preventing ... Qb6+ but ...)
 19. ... Be1!! 20. Ne4 Rg8+ mating.
 So Romanishin hopes to stem the flow of Black's powerful attack by giving up the f4 pawn and trying to block the 'g' file and the h2-b8 diagonal.

17. Ne4 Nxe4
18. dxe4

Or 18. Bxh8 Nxc3 19. Bc3 Nxf1 and ... Bxf4 with two extra pawns plus the initiative.

18. ... Rhg8
19. e5 Bc5+
20. Kg2 gxf4
21. g4 Nxe5
22. Qf5+ Qd7!
23. Qxd7+

If 23. Qxe5 Rxc4+ wins.

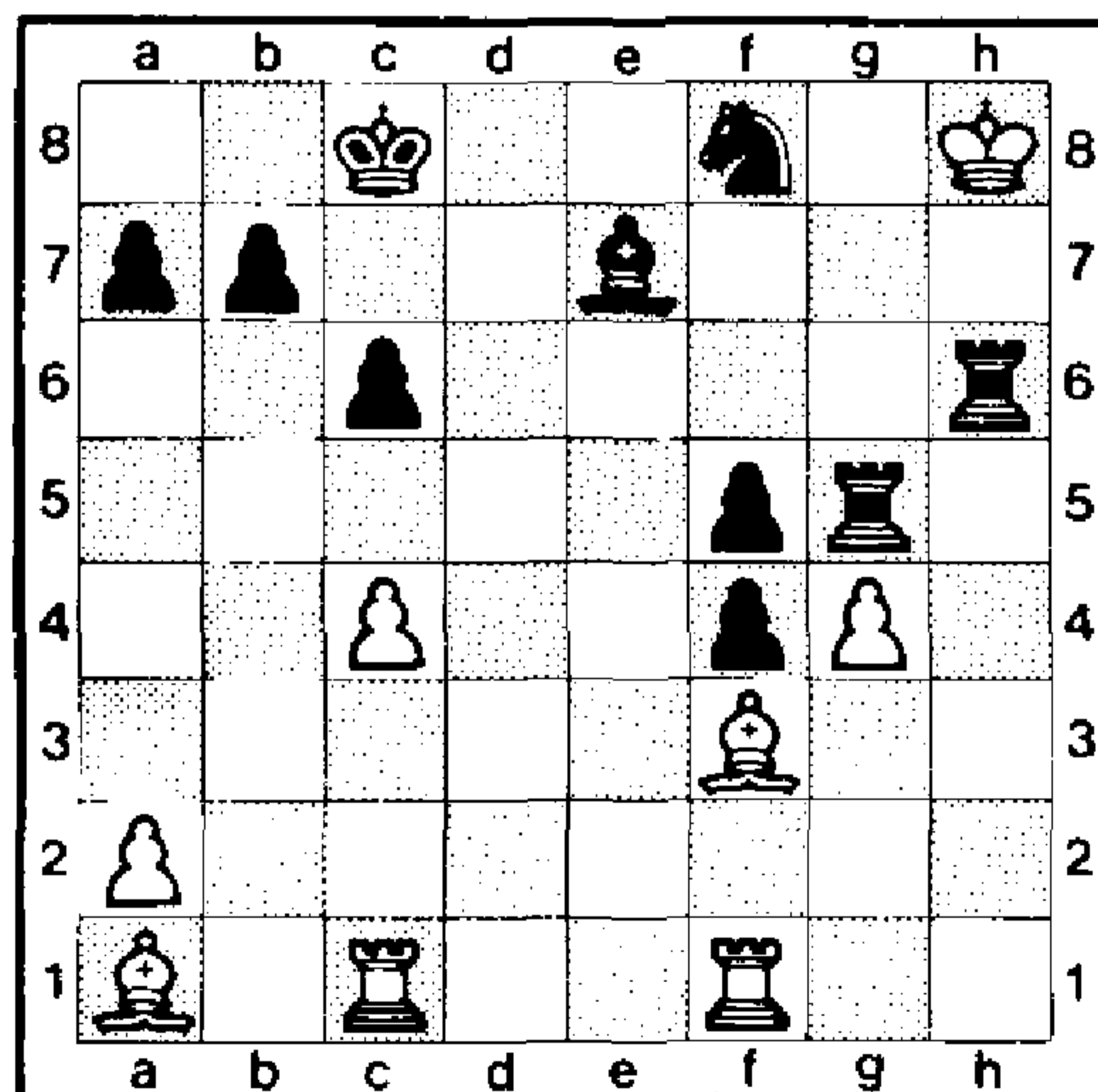
23. ... Nxd7

Now threatening ... f5 and ... fxg4.

24. Kh3 Nb6
25. Bf6 Rd3

26. Rac1 Nd7
27. Ba1 f5

Black can now win prosaically by ... fxg4+ (if 28. gxf5 Rg3+) or by a mating attack as in the game.



Final mating position

28. Kh4 Be7+
 29. Kh5 Rg5+
 30. Kh6

Or 30. Kh4 Rxc4+ etc.

30. . . . Rd6+
 31. Kh7 Nf8+
 32. Kh8 Rh6 mate

B Queen's Pawn Opening

How does one play against a system in which White advances his 'd' pawn but does not follow it up with c4? Club-players often ask me this question, especially those who are normally patient with their fellow man but in this case become annoyed when faced as Black with such a solid set-up.

At the end of 1988, in a match with the exiled Czech grandmaster Vlastimir Hort in Cologne, the World Champion provided an impressive example of an active strategy for Black in this line. The match formed part of a publicity week sponsored to the tune of 300,000 Deutschmarks and consisted of three games in which each player had one hour only to complete his moves, with the winner receiving a limousine. Kasparov duly won the match with 2½–½ points and gave us in the very first game a splendid solution to the problem: Black to play and win against the Queen's Pawn Opening.

V Hort – G Kasparov

(First Match Game, Cologne 1988)

1. d4 Nf6
 2. Nf3 g6
 3. Nc3

White is hoping to transpose into the Pirc defence after 3. . . . Bg7 4. e4 d6 but is disappointed. Sometimes 3. Bg5 is played here, as in the Supplementary Material game Torre – Kasparov.

3. . . . d5
 4. Bf4 Bg7

Not fearing 5. Nb5 Na6 followed by . . . c6 driving away the knight. For the alternative 5. Qd2 see the Supplementary Material game Yusupov – Kasparov.

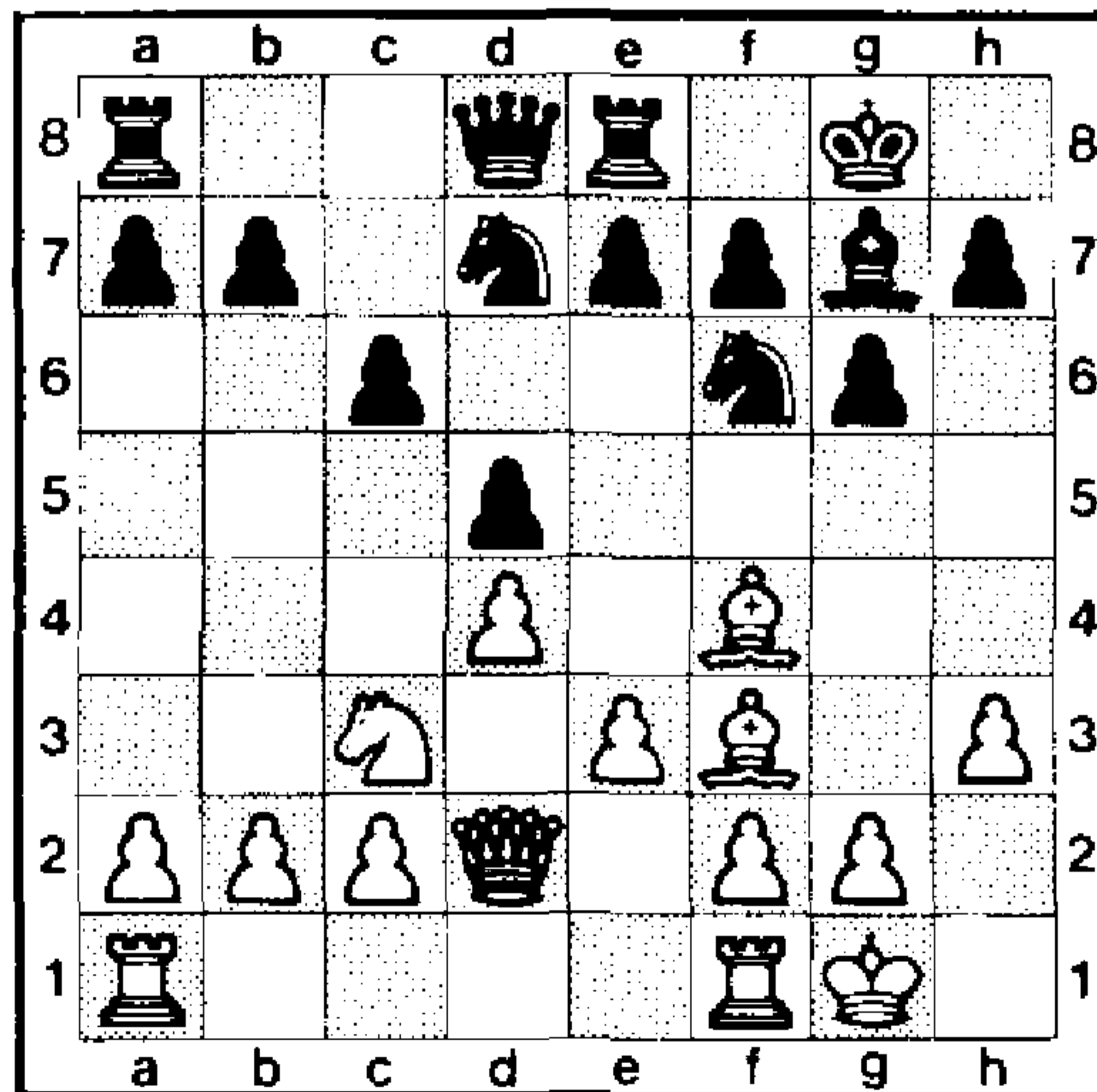
5. e3 0-0
 6. Be2 Bg4

Once again, Kasparov begins the unlikely-looking plan of taking over control of e5, using a method similar to the one tried against Romanishin. We say 'unlikely' because at the moment this square is controlled three times by White and not even once by Black! The f3 knight will first be eliminated and White can hardly prevent this by 7. Ne5? Bxe2 8. Qxe2 Nh5! 9. Bg3 (9. Bg5?? f6) 9. . . . Nxc3 10. hxg3 f6 11. Nf3 e5 when Black has a strong centre plus the two bishops.

7. h3

Perhaps White should castle here, since he can always play h3 later.

7. . . . Bxf3
 8. Bxf3 c6
 9. 0-0 Nbd7
 10. Qd2 Re8



We can now clearly see the resemblance to the Romanishin game: the f3 knight has gone, the c6/d5 set-up restricts White's KB and Black is aiming for . . . e5. This is another key position to remember.

11. Rfd1

The move 11. e4 is worth a second glance but after 11. . . . dxe4 12. Nxe4 Nxe4 13. Bxe4 e5 14. dxe5 Nxe5 Black stands well. The game move is directed against 11. . . . e5 when 12. dxe5 Nxe5 13. Bxe5 Rxe5 14. e4! and 15. exd5 exploits the pin on the 'd' file.

11. . . . Qb6!

Leaving the 'd' file and planning . . . e5 which White cannot prevent.

12. a4 a5

Not of course 12. . . . Qxb2?? 13. Rdb1

13. Ne2 e5

14. dxe5 Nxe5

15. Bxe5 Rxe5

16. Nd4 Ne4

17. Bxe4 Rxe4

18. c3

Hort has held the central position and prevented any break-through in this sector, but Black now uses his spatial advantage to launch a K side attack.

18. . . . Rae8

19. Rab1 h5

Planning . . . g5-g4. For better or for worse. White should now try 20. b4 to mix things on the Q side. Hort, already in time-trouble, opts for a passive defence with its inevitable consequences.

20. b3 Qc7

21. Nf3 Qe7

22. Qd3 g5

23. Nd2 Re6

24. Nf1 g4

25. hxg4 hxg4

26. g3?

A time-trouble error. Nor was 26. Ng3

Be5! much good, but the active 26. c4 would have still offered chances of survival e.g. 26. . . . Qh4 27. cxd5 Rh6 28. Ng3; or 26. . . . dxc4 27. bxc4.

26. . . . Qg5

With the deadly threat of . . . Qh5 and . . . Rh6 mating down the 'h' file. Perhaps Hort had originally intended to defend by 27. Nh2 Qh5 28. Qf1 Rh6 30. Qg2 but this loses the c3 pawn.

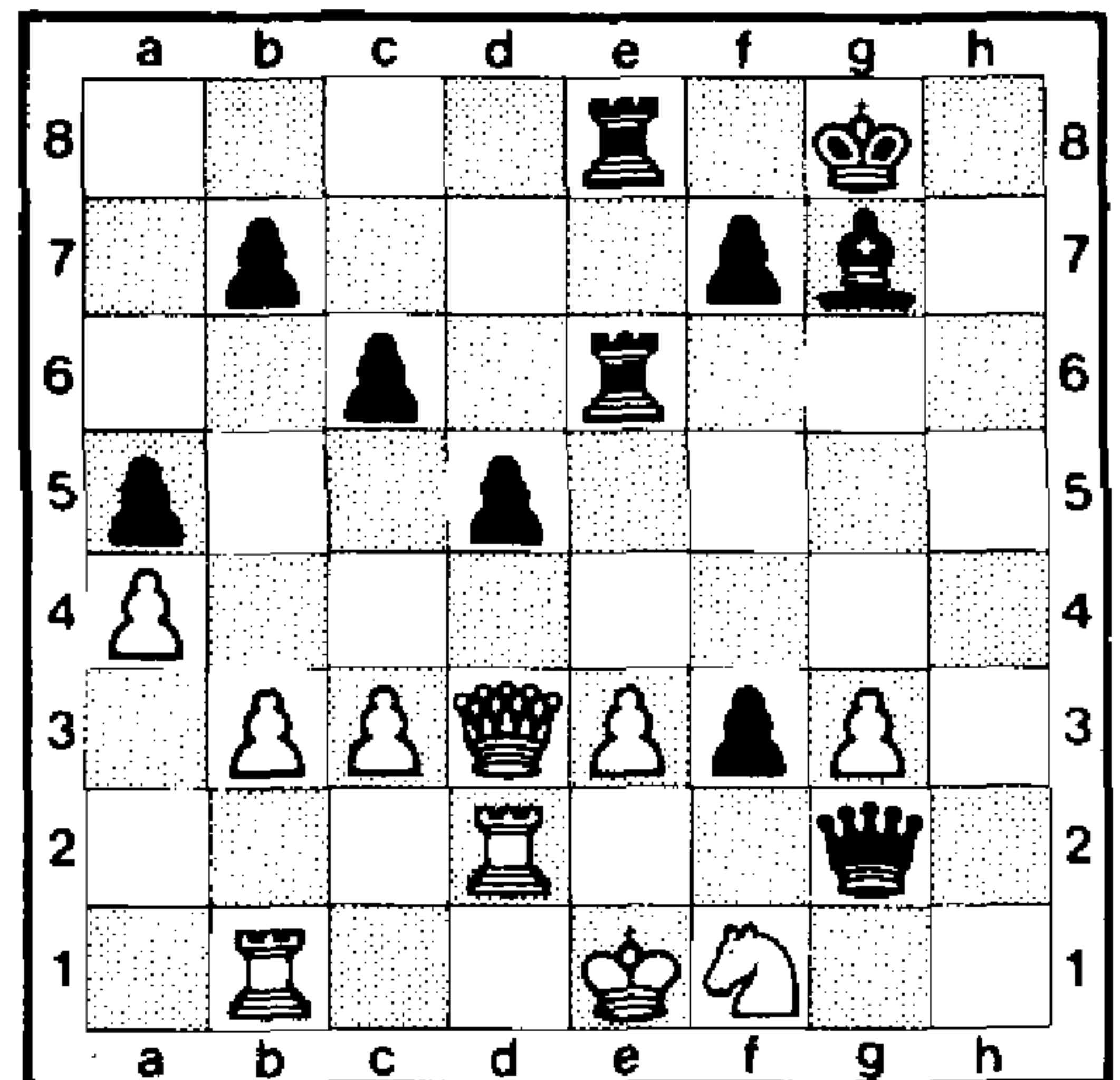
27. Kg2 Qh5

28. f4 gxf3+

29. Kf2 Qh1

30. Rd2 Qg2+

31. Ke1



31. . . . Rxe3+!

32. Qxe3

Or 32. Nxe3 Qg1+ 33. Qf1 Rxe3+ wins.

32. . . . Rxe3+

33. Nxe3 Qg1+

34. Nf1 Bxc3

35. Rbb2

The spectators in Cologne were wondering why Hort had not resigned by now against a player such as Kasparov. Perhaps he was still counting on the time



Grandmaster Vlastimil Hort.

element, but after the next move he decides to throw in the towel.

35. . . . Qg2!
0-1

There is, of course, no problem about winning for Black but this neat move immediately clinches matters. The threat is 33. . . .Qe2 mate and after 33. Kd1 Qxf1+ 34. Kc2 Bxd2 35. Kxd2 f2 when the two queens should be enough to mate White before the flag falls . . .

Supplementary Material

E Torre – G Kasparov

(Olympiad, Thessaloniki 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. Nf3 g6 3. Bg5 Bg7 4. c3 d5 5. Nbd2 Nbd7 6. e3 0-0 7. b4 c6 8. Be2 Re8 9. 0-0 e5 10. a4 h6 11. Bh4 a5 12. b5 c5 13. dxe5 Nxe5 14. Nxe5 Rxe5 15. Bxf6 Bxf6 16. Rc1 b6 17. Bg4 Bb7 18. Bf3 Qe7 19. c4 Rd8 20. Qc2 d4 21. Bxb7 Qxb7 22. exd4 Rxd4 23. Rce1 Rxe1 24.

Rxe1 Qd7 25. Nf1 h5 26. g3 h4 27. Ne3 Qe6 28. Qe2 Re4 29. gxh4 Bc3 30. Rd1 Rxh4 31. Qf3 Bd4 32. Ng2 Rh3 33. Qd5 Qf6 34. Ne3 Rf3 35. Kh1 Rxf2 36. Ng4 Qf3+37. Qxf3 Rxf3 38. Re1 Ra3 39. Re8+ Kg7 40. Rb8 Rxa4 41. Rxb6 Rxc4 42. Ra6 Rb4 **0-1**

A Yusupov – G Kasparov

(World Cup, Belfort 1988)

1. d4 Nf6 2. Nf3 g6 3. Nc3 d5 4. Bf4 Bg7 5. Qd2 Ne4 6. Nxe4 dxe4 7. Ne5 Be6 8. e3 Nd7 9. Nc4 0-0 10. Be2 Bxc4 11. Bxc4 e5 12. dxe5 Nxe5 13. Bb3 a5 14. a4 Nd7 15. 0-0-0 Nc5 16. Qxd8 Rfxd8 17. Bg5 Re8 18. Rd5 Bf8 19. Rhd1 Nxb3+ 20. cxb3 Bd6 21. Bf6 Re6 22. Bc3 b6 (Black has equalised but no more. The following pawn sacrifice is incorrect; Yusupov overestimates his chances on the 'h' file) 23. g4? Bxh2 24. Rh1 Bd6 25. Rh3 f6 26. Kd1 Rf8 27. Ke2 Rf7 28. Rh1 f5 29. gxf5 Rxf5 30. Rxf5 gxf5 31. Rh5 f4 32. exf4 Bxf4 33. Rf5 Bd6 34. Bd4 h6 35. Ke3 Kh7 36. Rf7+ Kg6 37. Rg7+ Kf5 38. Rf7+ Kg4 39. Rg7+ Kh3 40. Rh7 Kh4 41. Rg7 h5 42. f4 exf3+ 43. Kxf3 c5 44. Bc3 Kh3 45. Rf7 Be7 46. Rf5 h4 47. Be5 Bd6 48. Rf6 Rxe5 49. Rxd6 Rf5+ 50. Ke2 Rf4 51. Rxb6 Kg3 52. Rg6+ Rg4 53. Rf6 Re4+ 54. Kd3 Rf4 55. Rg6+ Rg4 56. Rc6 h3 57. Rxc5 h2 58. Rc1 Kg2 59. Rc2+ Kh3 60. Rc1 Rg3+ **0-1**

C The Double Fianchetto Opening

White players who want to play safe sometimes choose this 'double-hole' system, as it is sometimes sarcastically called. In the Hypermodern spirit, White develops his bishops on b2 and g2 before he decides the precise action to take in the centre. This of course gives

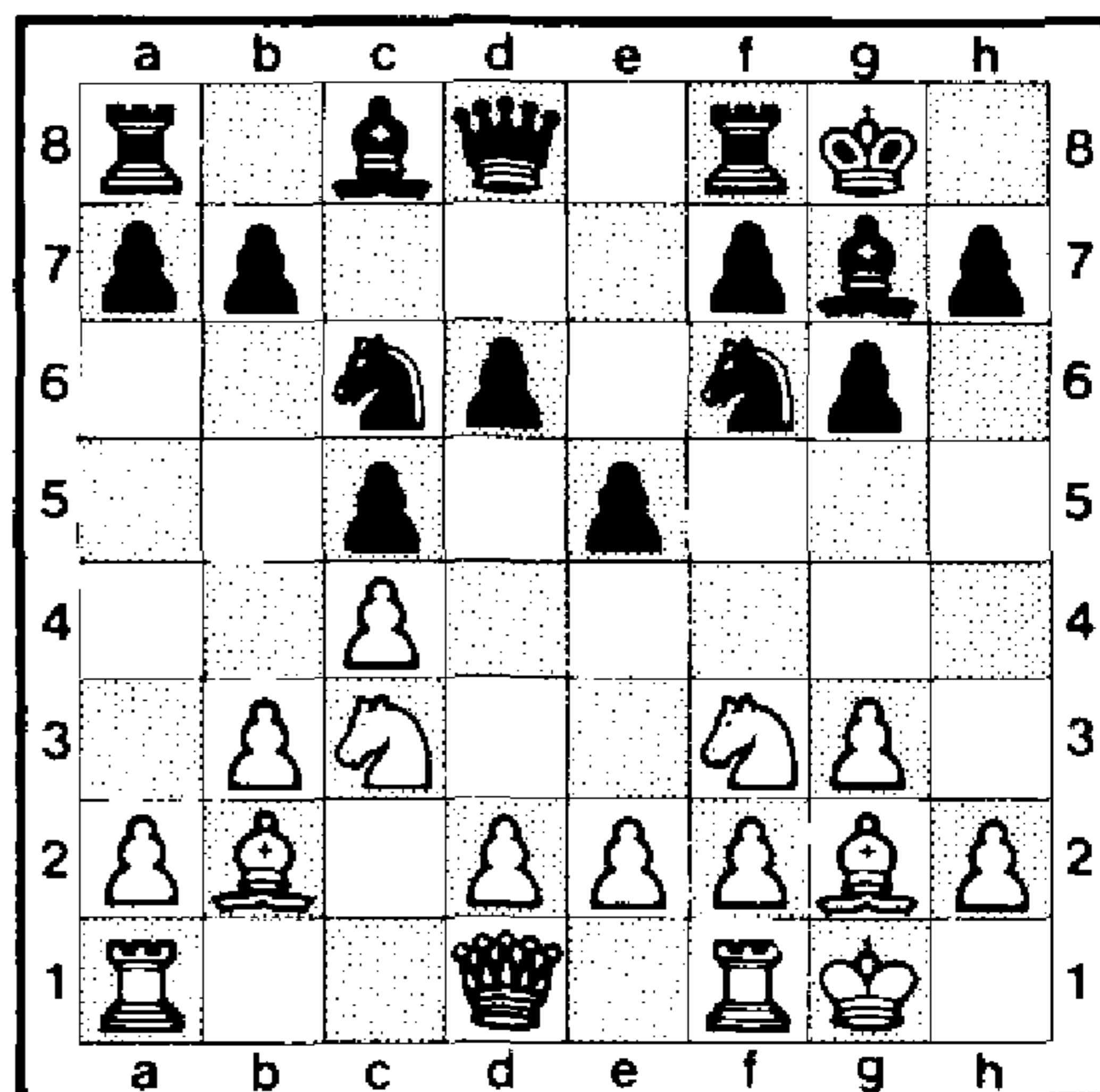
Black a free hand to choose what central pawn structure he would like. Some opt for . . . c6 and . . . d5, others for . . . e6 and . . . d5, and the King's Indian player usually goes in for . . . Nf6, . . . g6 and . . . Bg7.

For the last ten years, Kasparov has not met this system and perhaps our following impressive model game, played in the 1980 European Team Championship at Skara, is the reason. For the first time, the seventeen year old Kasparov was playing for the USSR team. In his game against England, he had to play Simon Webb, himself one of the young hopes of English chess, who decided against a career as a professional chess-player and became a computer expert instead; we seldom hear of him nowadays. [Simon has since performed creditably in correspondence chess for England.]

S Webb – G Kasparov
(Skara, 1980)

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. Nf3 | Nf6 |
| 2. g3 | g6 |
| 3. b3 | Bg7 |
| 4. Bb2 | c5 |
| 5. c4 | d6 |
| 6. Bg2 | e5 |
| 7. 0-0 | 0-0 |
| 8. Nc3 | Nc6 |

White has fianchettoed both his bishops, using only the 'c' pawn for central control, whereas Black has set up a central pawn structure *à la* Kasparov. His mentor Botvinnik used to play such a system but with his KN on e7 to leave open the option of . . . f5. The knight on f6 is more aggressively posted and supports a possible . . . e4. It is all a matter of personal choice and style, since in both cases the knight is watching the d5 'hole'.



9. e3

After 9. d3 Black plays . . . Bf5 and . . . Qd7 threatening . . . Bh3.

9. . . . Bf5

Black loses a pawn after 9. . . . e4? 10. Ng5.

10. d4(?)

The mathematician and later computer programmer, Webb, is proceeding with strict logic: as Black's knight on f6 is blocking the long black diagonal for his KB, the d4 square has one fewer black piece to control it, so White plays the move that would not have been possible against Botvinnik's system of defence. However, logic is only one element in the game of chess; creative imagination, good physical condition, nerves – all play an important part, as do psychological factors. Mainly from the latter aspect, 10. d4 was the wrong choice of move for a double-fianchetto positional player reluctant to 'mix it' in tactical complications. Safer was 10. d3 when Black continues with . . . Qd7 and . . . Bh3. [To be fair to Simon, this view somewhat misjudges his temperament; the fact that he was an excellent exponent of the

Benko System reveals that he was by no means averse to a tactical encounter, even of the Kasparov kind! In this particular instance, it seems more than likely that it was his positional judgement regarding the strength of the 'd' file that was at fault here.]

10. . . . e4

11. Ng5

After 11. Nh4 Bg4! (threatening . . . g5) forces 12. f3 exf3 weakening White's e3 pawn.

11. . . . Re8

12. dxc5

If 12. d5 Nb4 (not 12. . . . Ne5 losing the e4 pawn) followed by . . . Nd3.

12. . . . dxc5

13. Nb5

Intending Nd6

13. . . . Re7

To answer 13. Nd6 with 13. . . . Rd7.

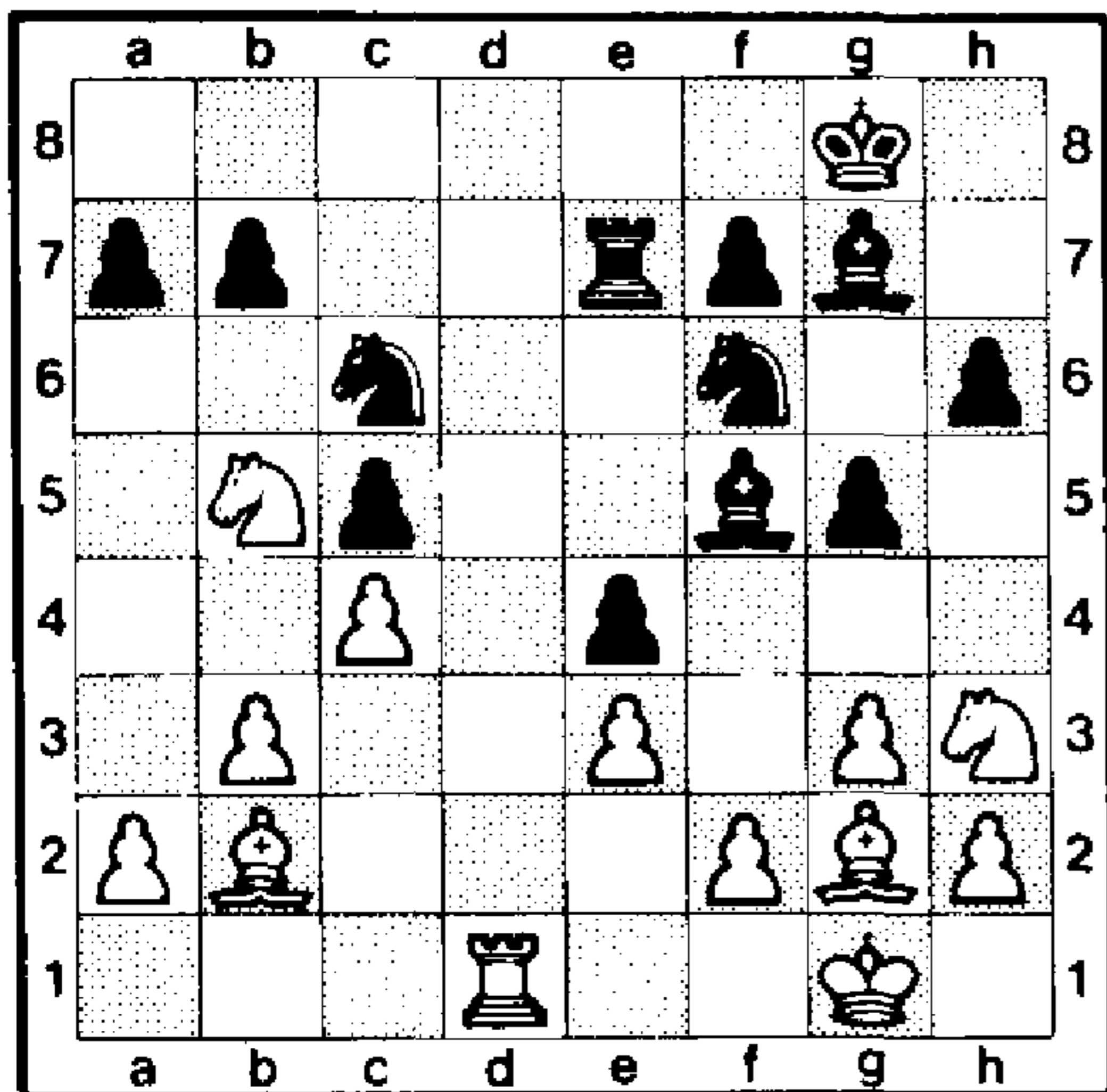
14. Qxd8+ Rxd8

15. Rad1 Rxd1

16. Rxd1 h6

17. Nh3 g5

The opening stage is over and Black stands well. Strong and weak squares



balance each other out, with both d6 and d3 inviting an enemy knight to take up residence. The 'd' file occupied at the moment by White is of little importance here, since the key entry squares d7 and d8 are not available to the white rook and, if need be, Black can always challenge the file by . . . Rd7. Perhaps one of the most important factors is that Black has a piece more in play, White's h3 knight merely spectating at the moment. The natural repositioning of this knight by Kf1, Ng1 and Ne2 is not easy to carry out, since the immediate Kf1 and Ng1 would allow . . . Ng4! winning a pawn because of the . . . Nxh2+ zwischenzug.

18. Nd6 Bg4

19. Rd2

Guarding his QB and thus threatening to regroup by Kf1 and Ng1. How does Kasparov react to this? By exchanging White's well-placed pieces and thereby exposing all the more the plight of the h3 knight.

19. . . . Ne8

20. Bxg7 Kxg7

21. Kf1 Nxd6

22. Rxd6 Nb4

23. a3

Or 23. Rd2 Rd7! 24. Rxd7 Bxd7 25. a4 (25. a3 Nc2 26. a4 Na1 winning a pawn) 25. . . . Nc2 followed by . . . Na1 against which White's pieces are helpless.

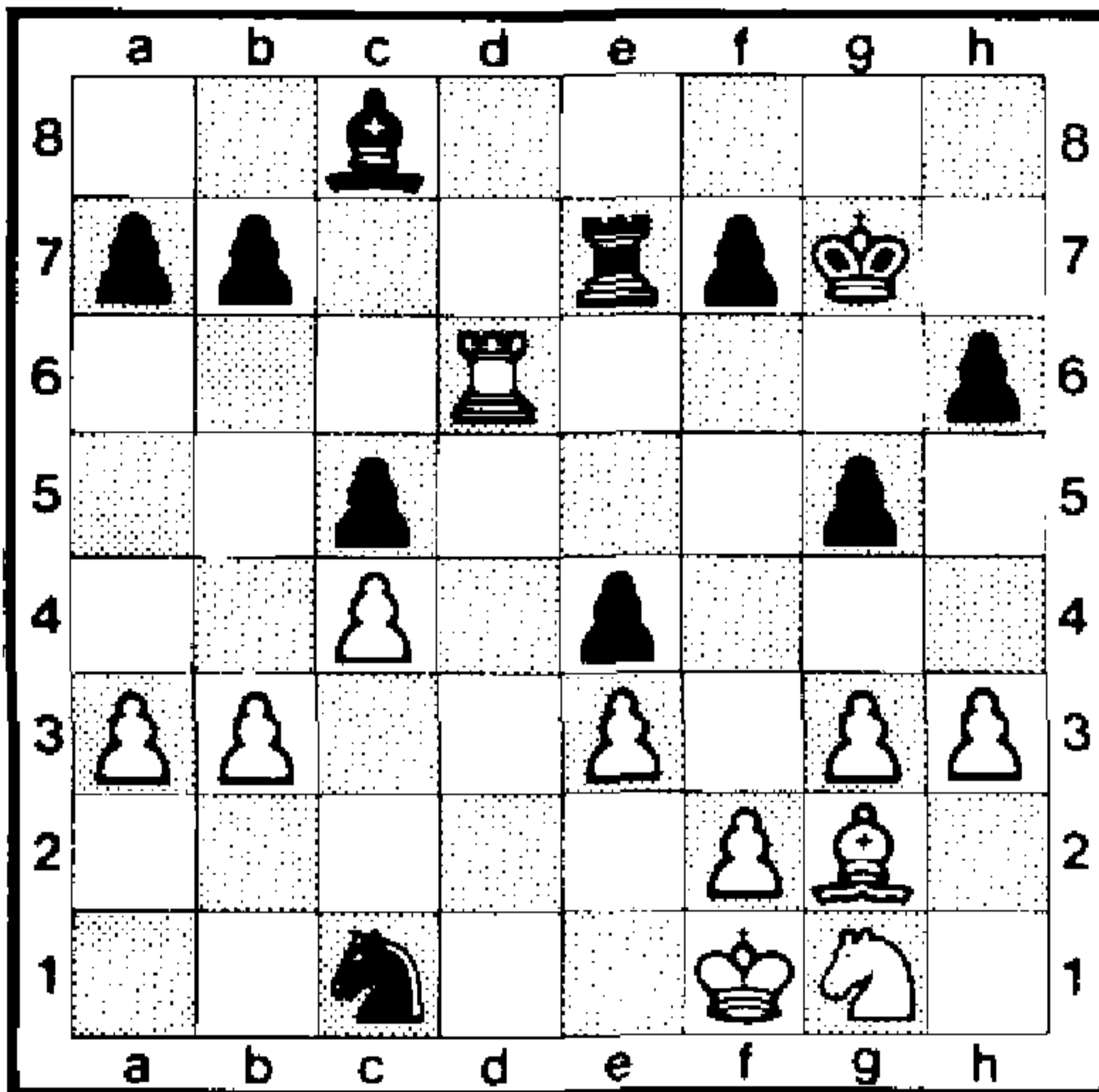
23. . . . Nd3

With the rooks on the board Black cannot go pawn-hunting with the knight, since 23. . . . Nc2 24. Rd2 Nxa3 25. Ra2 is fine for White.

24. Ng1 Nc1

25. h3 Bc8

A white pawn must fall, since 26. b4 is answered by 26. . . . Be6! 27. bxc5 (27. Bxe4 Bxc4+ loses a piece) 27. . . . Bxc4+ followed by . . . Nd3+. Nor does



26. Rd8 Be6 27. Bxe4 save White in view of 27. . . . Nxb3! winning a pawn by . . . Nd2+ after both Bd5 and Bd3.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 26. Ne2 | Nxb3 |
| 26. Nc3 | Be6 |
| 28. Bxe4 | Na5 |

He prefers to capture on c4 with the knight.

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 29. Bd5 | Nxc4 |
| 30. Bxc4 | Bxc4+ |
| 31. Ke1 | Be6 |
| 32. e4 | |

Or 32. h4 gxh4 33. gxh4 Kg6 and . . . Kh5 winning the 'h' pawn.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------|
| 32. . . . | Bxh3 |
| 33. f4 | gxf4 |
| 34. gxf4 | Rd7 |
| 35. e5 | Rxd6 |
| 36. exd6 | f6 |
| 37. Nd5 | Kf7 |
| 38. Nc7 | Bd7 |
| 0-1 | |

D The King's Indian Attack

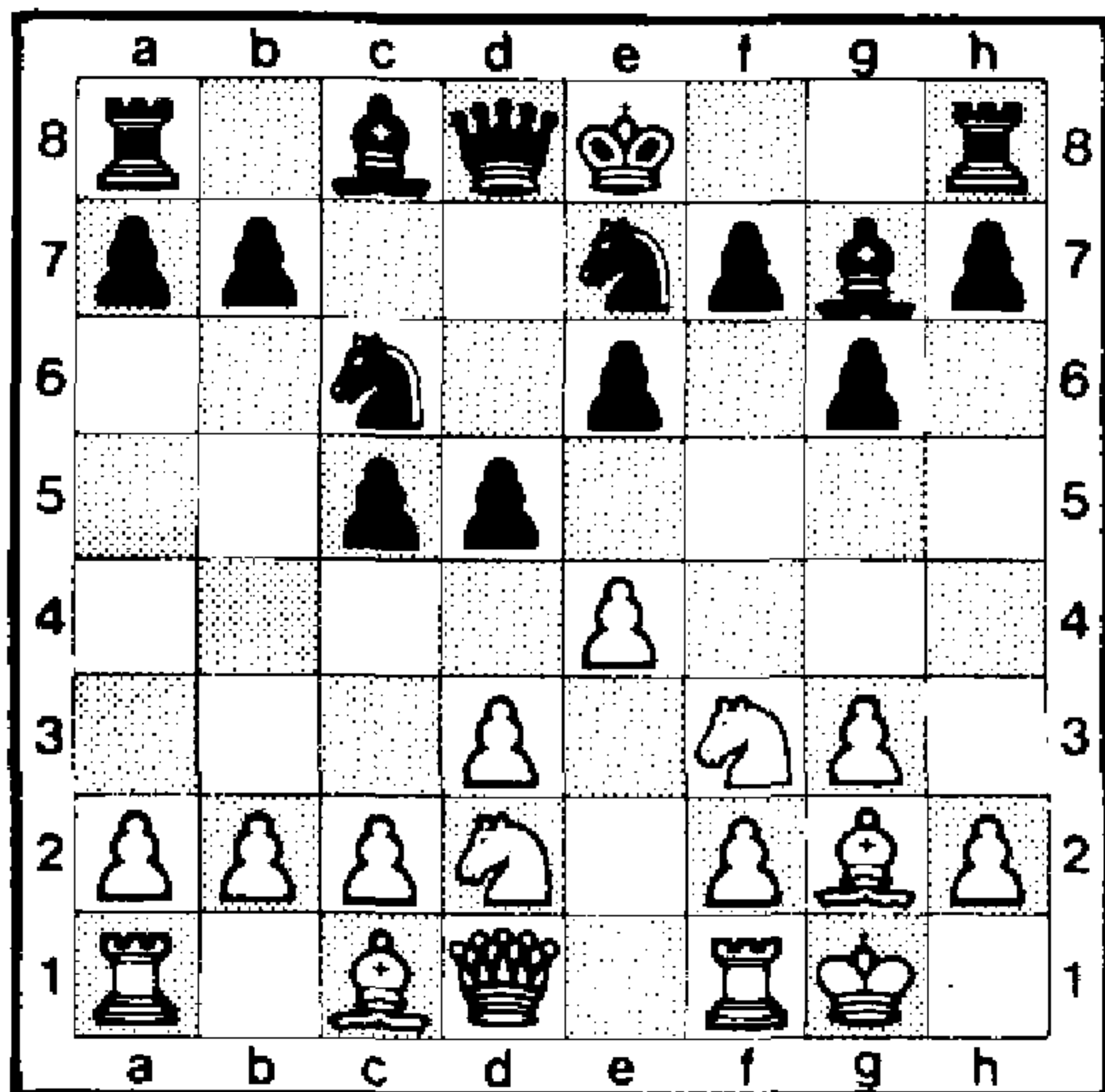
The chameleon camouflages itself by changing colour, not only to escape its enemies but also to prey on unsuspecting

insects that come within reach of its fast-moving sticky tongue. The King's Indian Attack (sometimes called 'King's Indian Reversed') reminds one of the chameleon because in principle its g3, Bg2, Nf3, d3, Nbd2, e4 set-up can be played against practically anything but then adapted to suit changing circumstances. For example, the game may begin 1. Nf3 d5 2. g3 e6 3. Bg2 Nf6 4. 0-0 Be7 with Black now expecting either 5. d4 or 5. c4, transposing into the Catalan or Reti, but suddenly meeting 5. d3 and the 'chameleon' is with him! In fact, more often than not, the opening arises after 1. e4 against the Sicilian, French or Caro-Kann Defences, as in our model game, so needs to be known by most Black players. Fortunately, there are a number of promising defences to the system, one of which we present here by courtesy of Kasparov in his game against Yugoslavia's top player.

L Ljubojevic – G Kasparov (Niksic, 1983)

- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. e4 | c5 |
| 2. Nf3 | e6 |
| 3. d3 | Nc6 |
| 4. g3 | d5 |
| 5. Nbd2 | g6 |
| 6. Bg2 | Bg7 |
| 7. 0-0 | Nge7 |

The same position can be reached from the French Defence via 1. e4 e6 2. d3 d5 3. Nd2 c5 4. g3 etc. This is another diagram to remember, since both sides have set up their optimal starting positions: White has reached the universal placing of his pieces we mentioned, and Black has laid out his game in a flexible manner which prepares him for most contingencies, as we shall see. Note the placing of the KN on e7 rather than on f6



(after Re1 and Nf1) without playing c3 which can create a possible weakness on d3, as we shall see.

8. Re1

White's standard plan of attack is to play e5 and h4, transfer his QN to g4 via f1 and h2 (or e3) and post his QB on g5 to exploit the weakness of f6. This takes time, of course, but can prove highly dangerous if Black merely attacks on the Q side by ... b5-b4, ... a5-a4, ... Ba6, without taking more specific measures to counter White's aggressive set-up. It is interesting to see how Kasparov tackles the defensive problem, beginning with his next key move.

8. . . . h6!

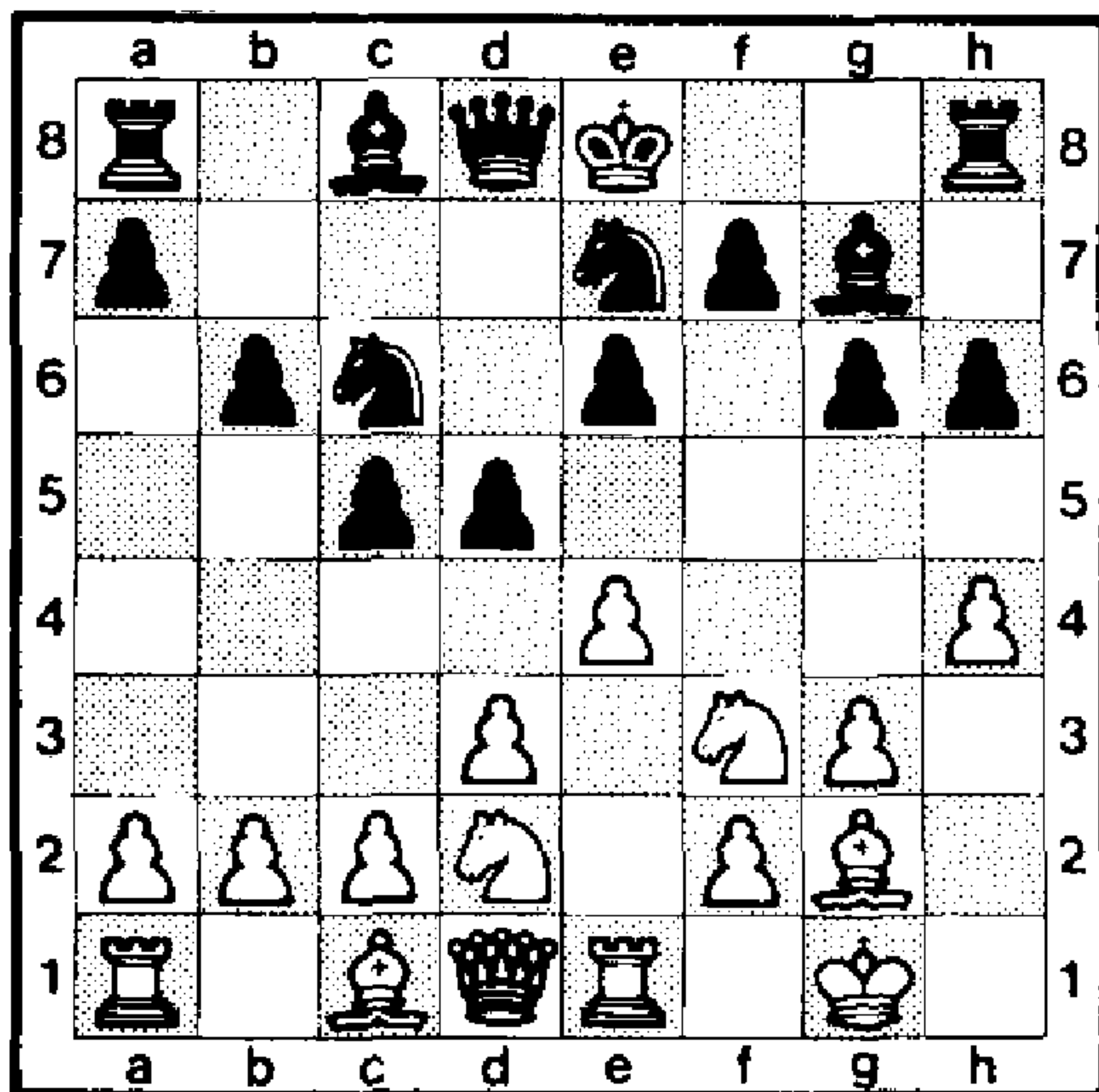
This prevents Bg5 and prepares to answer 9. e5 with 9. . . . g5! followed by ... Ng6 winning the e5 pawn. Note that ... g5 also stops White's QB going to f4 in lines such as 9. Nf1 g5, which explains White's next move.

where it would not only restrict the scope of his KB and be exposed to a later e5 but would also not form part of the subtle and effective plan that Kasparov has in mind. The g7 bishop makes it difficult for White to develop his QB



Grandmaster Ljubomir Ljubojevic, Yugoslavia's No 1 player, is among the 'unpredictables' in chess, with brilliant tournament victories closely followed by complete disasters.

9. h4 b6!



This deep move needs some explanation, since it is more than a mere aid to development. Once again, 10. e5 is prevented, but in a far less obvious way. Black then plays 10. . . . Qc7 11. Qe2 when 11. . . . c4!! exploits the pin on the f1-a6 diagonal, giving us:

- (i) 12. dxc4 Ba6 (the point) 13. a3 (or 13. b3 Nb4 14. Nf1 dxc4) 13. . . . Na5 and Black stands well.
- (ii) 12. d4 c3 (without this possibility Black's plan would be futile) 13. bxc3 Na5 14. Bb2 Bd7 followed by . . . 0-0 and . . . Rfc8 with excellent compensation for the pawn. White's QB is wretchedly placed.

10. c3

Now 10. . . . Ba6 11. Qa4! Bxd3?? fails to 12. exd5 Qxd5 (both 12. . . . Nxd5 and 12. . . . exd5 lose a piece to 13. Qxc6+) 13. Nd4 winning.

10. . . . a5

Planning to answer 11. e5 with 11. . . . a4 and 12. . . . Ba6 (Kasparov).

11. a4 Ra7!

The rook moves away from the dangerous h1-a8 diagonal and is ready to exert

pressure down the 'd' file if necessary. Note that Black is still deliberately delaying castling, so as not to give White a clear-cut object of attack.

12. Nb3?!

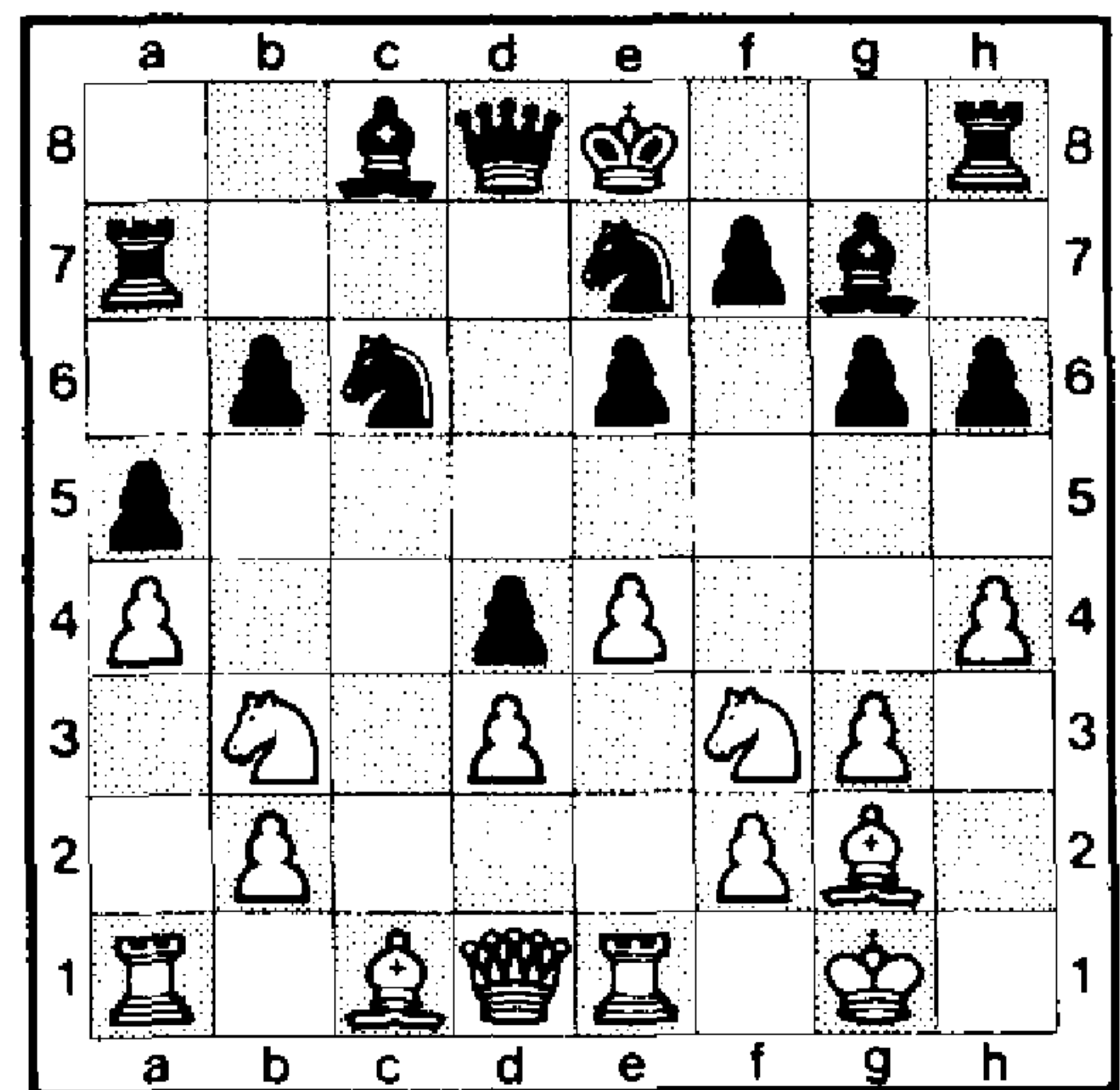
A bad idea that gradually leads to White's disadvantage. Kasparov mentions two better continuations: 12. e5 Ba6 13. Nf1 b5 and 12. exd5 exd5 13. Nf1 d4 14. c4 Bf5 with unclear play. In the second one, Black's long-term plan is . . . 0-0, . . . Nb4 (attacking d3), . . . Nec6 (preventing Ne5), . . . Re7 and . . . Rfe8.

12. . . . d4

13. cxd4

According to Kasparov, 13. e5 dxc3 14. bxc3 Rd7 15. d4 Nd5 was preferable for White, although Black has more of the play after 16. Bb2 cxd4 17. cxd4 0-0 with . . . Nb4, . . . Ba6, . . . Qa8 and . . . Rc8.

13. . . . cxd4



14. Bd2?

It is easy to find bad moves in bad positions. Kasparov gives as White's last chance 14. e5 Ba6 15. Re4 Rd7 16. Bf4. Black can then continue 16. . . . 0-0 17.

Rc1 Nb4 18. Rxd4 Nf5! 19. Rxd7 Qxd7 with very active play for the pawn which Black can always recover. We can now see how Kasparov drove home his advantage.

- 14. . . . e5
- 15. Nc1 Be6
- 16. Re2 0-0
- 17. Be1

White is hoping to manoeuvre his KN to c4 after b3 and Nd2, a good strategic concept if he had the time to carry it out.

- 17. . . . f5
- 18. Nd2

After 18. exf5 gxf5 19. Nd2 Nb4, moves like . . . e4 and . . . f4 would be in the air.

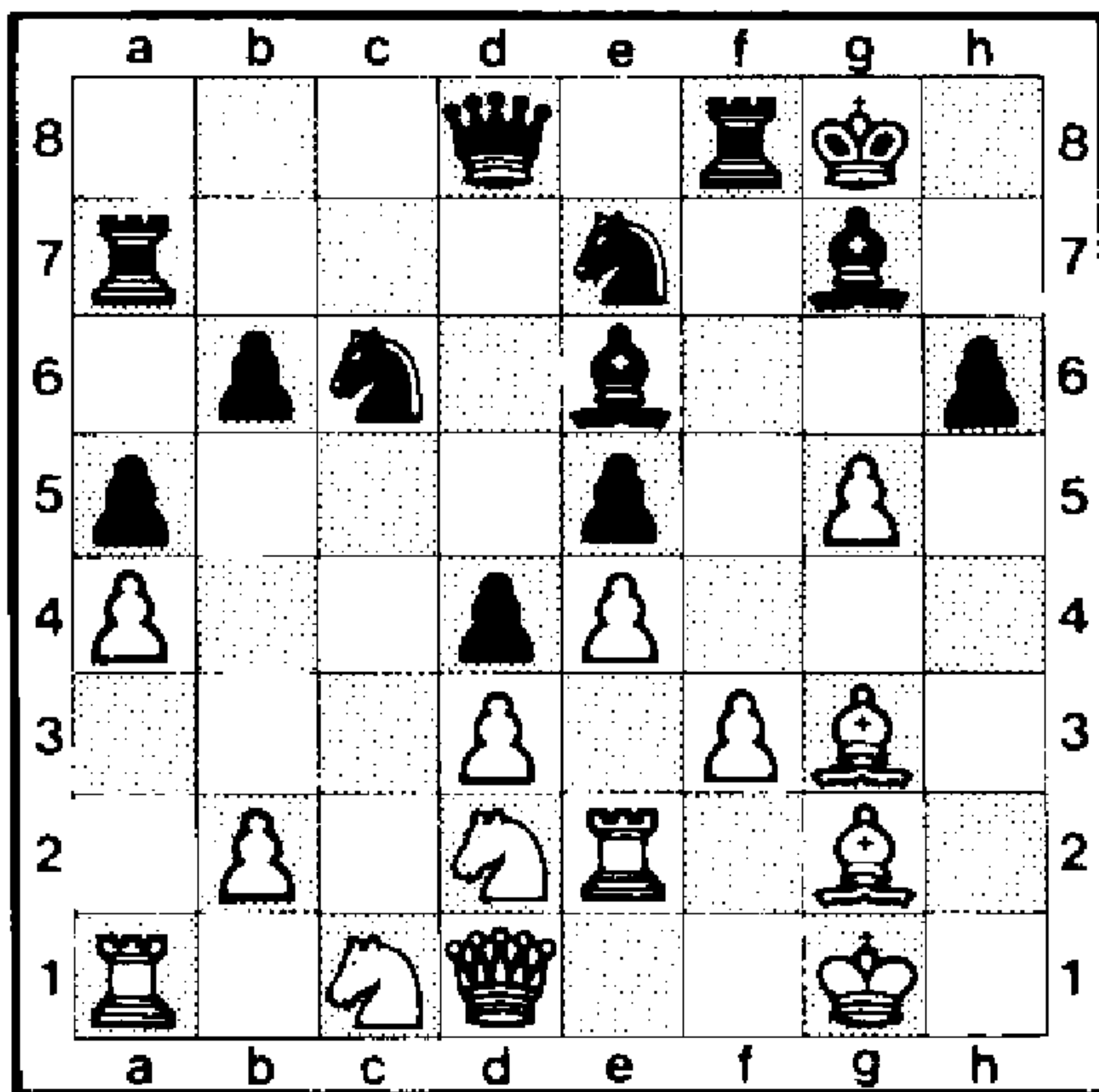
- 18. . . . f4

Threatening 19. . . . fxg3 20. fxg3 Bg4.

- 19. f3

Or 19. gxf4 exf4 20. Nf3 Ne5 with advantage to Black (Kasparov).

- 19. . . . fxg3
- 20. Bxg3 g5
- 21. hxg5



- 21. . . . Ng6!

Far stronger than 21. . . . hxg5, since Black wants to recapture on g5 with his queen, to be followed by . . . Bf6 and . . .

Rg7 (the rook on a7 again makes its presence felt!) fully exploiting the 'g' file.

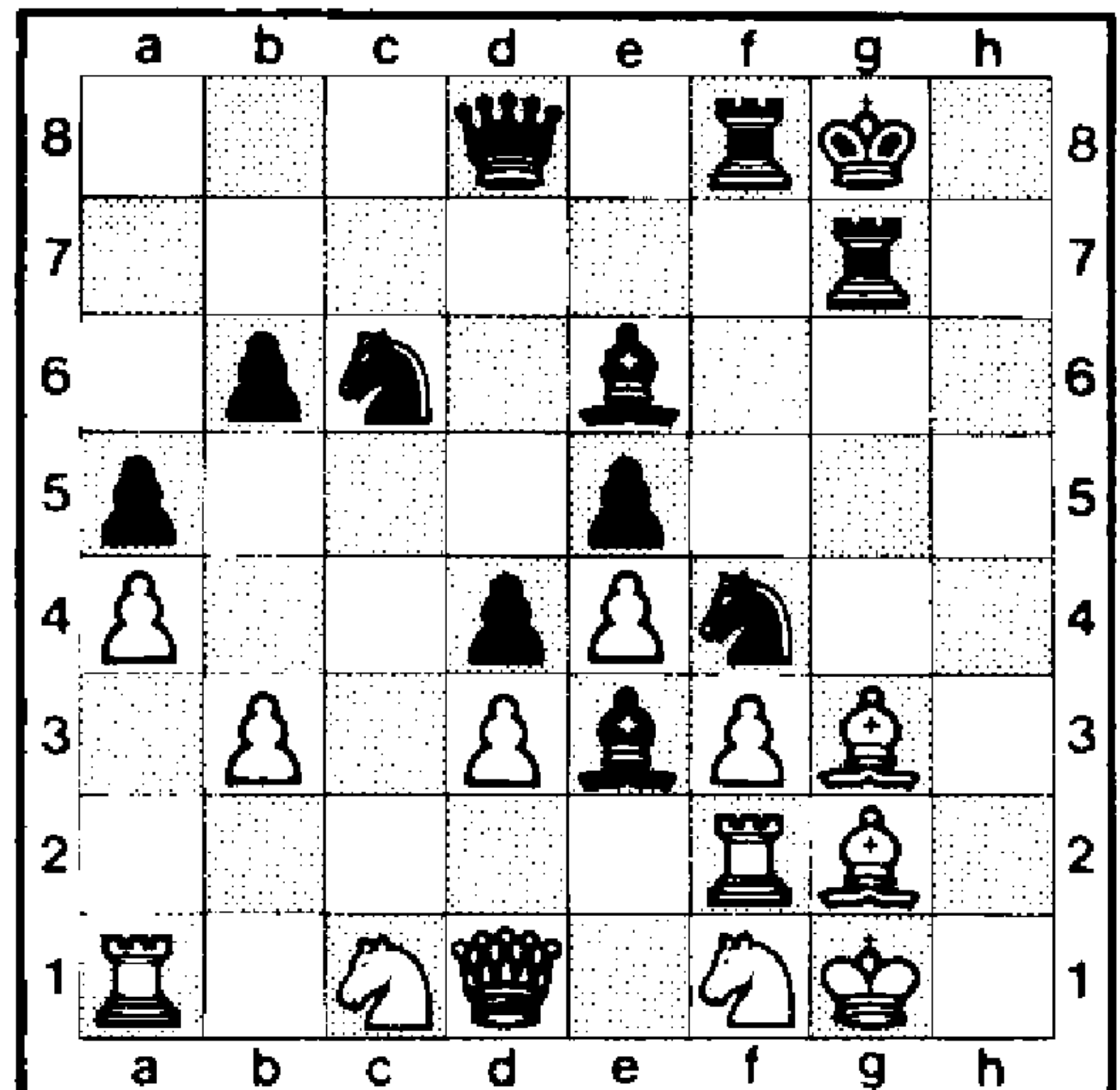
- 22. gxh6(?)

Hastens the end but perhaps this is psychologically what White wants.

- 22. . . . Bxh6
- 23. Nf1 Rg7
- 24. Rf2 Be3
- 25. b3

After 25. Nxe3 dxe3 26. Rf1 Qg5 27. Ne2 Nf4, Black's attack would be equally unstoppable. With this move White is hoping to defend along the second rank and is happy to settle for the loss of the exchange. However, Kasparov is far more interested in mate than material gain.

- 25. . . . Nf4!
- 0-1



A suitable position with which to end this book. White is tied hand and foot. After 26. Ra2 Rxc3 27. Nxc3 Qg5, the knight cannot move because of 28. . . . Qxg2 mate and 28. Kh2 Qh4+ wins. A pleasant note to finish on is the variation 26. Kh2 Rxc3! 27. Kxc3 Nh5+ 28. Kh2 Qh4+ 29. Kg1 Bxf2 mate!

Index

Adorjan	42	Gheorghiu	111
Agdestein	19	Goldin	43
Akopian	67, 85	Gunawan	68
Alenkin	93	Gurevic	39, 45, 48, 67
Andersson	14, 95		
Assmann	47	Haag	100
Astrom	84	Hjartarson	37, 42, 85
		Hort	117
Badzarani	72	Hübner	30, 31
Barbero	47	Huzman	15
Bareev	33		
Barichev	33	Ionescu	95
Barlov	15	Ivanchuk	80
Bauer	113		
Beliavsky	14, 25, 74	Jakovic	33
Botterill	100		
Buckley	85	Kaidanov	42
		Kalinin	31
Campora	10	Karolyi	25
Ceskovsky	79	Karpov	19, 35, 42, 80
Christiansen	32, 42	Khalifman	57, 59, 68
Chernin	68	Kochiev	100
Chiburdanidse	66	Korchnoi	31, 42, 99
Clemance	15	Korzubov	79
Conquest	25	Kotronias	84
		Kouatly	54
Danailov	96	Kuijpers	53
Dolmatov	25	Kupreichik	69
Ehlvest	35	Larsen	31, 71
		Lasker	113
Farago	68	Lau	57, 59, 95
Flear	32, 34	Le Blancq	100
Franke	25	Lerner	19
Franzoni	45	Levitt	53
		Ljubojevic	80
Gavrikov	69	Lobron	19
Geller	60	Lputian	68, 69
Georgiev	45	Lukacs	54

INDEX

Mainka	89	Schmidt	34
McDonald	67	Schmittdiel	95
Milos	112	Seirawan	19
Mohr	42	Shabalov	85
Mokry	34	Short	16, 48, 93
Morrison	66	Smirin	62
		Sokolov	48, 80
Natsis	55	Spassky	90
Nemet	35	Speelman	31, 48, 104
Nikolic	25, 43	Stein	72
Nogueiras	15	Sur	72
Norwood	53	Sveshnikov	93
Nunn	50, 67	Szalanczi	54
		Sznapik	68
Olafsson	34, 89		
Oll	43	Thorsteins	42
Orr	14	Timman	19
		Torre	21, 119
Pein	60	Trepp	69
Pereira	60	Turkmakov	21
Perenyi	54		
Petrosian	15	Uhlmann	67
Petursson	31, 54		
Piket	31, 35	Vaiser	60
Polugayevski	39	Van der Wiel	26
Portisch	14	Van't Hof	31
Preissman	35	Vidarsson	89
Pribyl	59	Vilela	47
Prie	90	Vladimirov	35, 48
Psakhis	90	Vogt	112
		Vukic	66
Quillan	85	Vyshmanavin	42
Rodriguez	47	Watson	68
Romanishin	60	Webb	120
		Winants	68
Saidy	15		
Sandler	54	Yudasin	79
Sarapu	79	Yuferov	99
Sariego	95	Yurtaev	92
Savchenko	54	Yusupov	60, 100, 119
Sax	41		
Scheeren	68	Zlochevsky	33

- Other Chess, Bridge and Games Books/Published by The Crowood Press Ltd:

The Backgammon Handbook, Heykin/Fischer

Beginning Bridge, Hiron

The Book of Extraordinary Chess Problems, Addison

Bridge for Improvers, Stubbings

Chess Combination as a Fine Art, Golz/Keres

Chess Mechanics of the Mind, Pflieger

Chess Openings, Basman

Chess Tactics, Littlewood

The C3 Sicilian, Lane

An Introduction to Chess, Taulbut

Spike's Chess Primer, Ellison

The Vulture and Associated Opening Systems, Bucker

Winning Endgames, Kosten

Kasparov, the World Champion, is known for his bold and imaginative style of play. Through detailed analyses of many of his most successful matches and other supplementary games, *Kasparov's Chess Openings* explains how players of every ability can build effective opening repertoires from Kasparov's adaptable opening strategies. Special emphasis is given to playing as White against the Queen's Gambit Declined and the Nimzo-Indian, and as Black with the King's Indian and Sicilian Defences. Each analysis and commentary is accompanied by full-board diagrams of every stage of development.

Otto Borik is a German International Chess Master, chess magazine editor, and author of several definitive books on chess.